

# Latin for Beginners eBook

## Latin for Beginners

The following sections of this BookRags Literature Study Guide is offprint from Gale's For Students Series: Presenting Analysis, Context, and Criticism on Commonly Studied Works: Introduction, Author Biography, Plot Summary, Characters, Themes, Style, Historical Context, Critical Overview, Criticism and Critical Essays, Media Adaptations, Topics for Further Study, Compare & Contrast, What Do I Read Next?, For Further Study, and Sources.

(c)1998-2002; (c)2002 by Gale. Gale is an imprint of The Gale Group, Inc., a division of Thomson Learning, Inc. Gale and Design and Thomson Learning are trademarks used herein under license.

The following sections, if they exist, are offprint from Beacham's Encyclopedia of Popular Fiction: "Social Concerns", "Thematic Overview", "Techniques", "Literary Precedents", "Key Questions", "Related Titles", "Adaptations", "Related Web Sites". (c)1994-2005, by Walton Beacham.

The following sections, if they exist, are offprint from Beacham's Guide to Literature for Young Adults: "About the Author", "Overview", "Setting", "Literary Qualities", "Social Sensitivity", "Topics for Discussion", "Ideas for Reports and Papers". (c)1994-2005, by Walton Beacham.

All other sections in this Literature Study Guide are owned and copyrighted by BookRags, Inc.

# Contents

<a href="#">Latin for Beginners eBook.....</a>	<a href="#">1</a>
<a href="#">Contents.....</a>	<a href="#">2</a>
<a href="#">Table of Contents.....</a>	<a href="#">14</a>
<a href="#">Page 1.....</a>	<a href="#">20</a>
<a href="#">Page 2.....</a>	<a href="#">22</a>
<a href="#">Page 3.....</a>	<a href="#">24</a>
<a href="#">Page 4.....</a>	<a href="#">25</a>
<a href="#">Page 5.....</a>	<a href="#">27</a>
<a href="#">Page 6.....</a>	<a href="#">29</a>
<a href="#">Page 7.....</a>	<a href="#">31</a>
<a href="#">Page 8.....</a>	<a href="#">33</a>
<a href="#">Page 9.....</a>	<a href="#">35</a>
<a href="#">Page 10.....</a>	<a href="#">37</a>
<a href="#">Page 11.....</a>	<a href="#">39</a>
<a href="#">Page 12.....</a>	<a href="#">41</a>
<a href="#">Page 13.....</a>	<a href="#">43</a>
<a href="#">Page 14.....</a>	<a href="#">45</a>
<a href="#">Page 15.....</a>	<a href="#">47</a>
<a href="#">Page 16.....</a>	<a href="#">49</a>
<a href="#">Page 17.....</a>	<a href="#">51</a>
<a href="#">Page 18.....</a>	<a href="#">53</a>
<a href="#">Page 19.....</a>	<a href="#">55</a>
<a href="#">Page 20.....</a>	<a href="#">57</a>
<a href="#">Page 21.....</a>	<a href="#">59</a>
<a href="#">Page 22.....</a>	<a href="#">61</a>

<a href="#">Page 23.....</a>	<a href="#">63</a>
<a href="#">Page 24.....</a>	<a href="#">65</a>
<a href="#">Page 25.....</a>	<a href="#">67</a>
<a href="#">Page 26.....</a>	<a href="#">69</a>
<a href="#">Page 27.....</a>	<a href="#">71</a>
<a href="#">Page 28.....</a>	<a href="#">73</a>
<a href="#">Page 29.....</a>	<a href="#">75</a>
<a href="#">Page 30.....</a>	<a href="#">77</a>
<a href="#">Page 31.....</a>	<a href="#">79</a>
<a href="#">Page 32.....</a>	<a href="#">81</a>
<a href="#">Page 33.....</a>	<a href="#">83</a>
<a href="#">Page 34.....</a>	<a href="#">85</a>
<a href="#">Page 35.....</a>	<a href="#">87</a>
<a href="#">Page 36.....</a>	<a href="#">89</a>
<a href="#">Page 37.....</a>	<a href="#">91</a>
<a href="#">Page 38.....</a>	<a href="#">93</a>
<a href="#">Page 39.....</a>	<a href="#">95</a>
<a href="#">Page 40.....</a>	<a href="#">97</a>
<a href="#">Page 41.....</a>	<a href="#">99</a>
<a href="#">Page 42.....</a>	<a href="#">101</a>
<a href="#">Page 43.....</a>	<a href="#">103</a>
<a href="#">Page 44.....</a>	<a href="#">105</a>
<a href="#">Page 45.....</a>	<a href="#">107</a>
<a href="#">Page 46.....</a>	<a href="#">109</a>
<a href="#">Page 47.....</a>	<a href="#">111</a>

<a href="#">Page 48.....</a>	<a href="#">113</a>
<a href="#">Page 49.....</a>	<a href="#">115</a>
<a href="#">Page 50.....</a>	<a href="#">117</a>
<a href="#">Page 51.....</a>	<a href="#">119</a>
<a href="#">Page 52.....</a>	<a href="#">121</a>
<a href="#">Page 53.....</a>	<a href="#">123</a>
<a href="#">Page 54.....</a>	<a href="#">125</a>
<a href="#">Page 55.....</a>	<a href="#">127</a>
<a href="#">Page 56.....</a>	<a href="#">129</a>
<a href="#">Page 57.....</a>	<a href="#">131</a>
<a href="#">Page 58.....</a>	<a href="#">133</a>
<a href="#">Page 59.....</a>	<a href="#">135</a>
<a href="#">Page 60.....</a>	<a href="#">137</a>
<a href="#">Page 61.....</a>	<a href="#">139</a>
<a href="#">Page 62.....</a>	<a href="#">141</a>
<a href="#">Page 63.....</a>	<a href="#">143</a>
<a href="#">Page 64.....</a>	<a href="#">145</a>
<a href="#">Page 65.....</a>	<a href="#">147</a>
<a href="#">Page 66.....</a>	<a href="#">149</a>
<a href="#">Page 67.....</a>	<a href="#">151</a>
<a href="#">Page 68.....</a>	<a href="#">153</a>
<a href="#">Page 69.....</a>	<a href="#">155</a>
<a href="#">Page 70.....</a>	<a href="#">157</a>
<a href="#">Page 71.....</a>	<a href="#">159</a>
<a href="#">Page 72.....</a>	<a href="#">161</a>
<a href="#">Page 73.....</a>	<a href="#">163</a>

<a href="#">Page 74.....</a>	<a href="#">165</a>
<a href="#">Page 75.....</a>	<a href="#">167</a>
<a href="#">Page 76.....</a>	<a href="#">169</a>
<a href="#">Page 77.....</a>	<a href="#">171</a>
<a href="#">Page 78.....</a>	<a href="#">173</a>
<a href="#">Page 79.....</a>	<a href="#">175</a>
<a href="#">Page 80.....</a>	<a href="#">177</a>
<a href="#">Page 81.....</a>	<a href="#">179</a>
<a href="#">Page 82.....</a>	<a href="#">181</a>
<a href="#">Page 83.....</a>	<a href="#">183</a>
<a href="#">Page 84.....</a>	<a href="#">185</a>
<a href="#">Page 85.....</a>	<a href="#">187</a>
<a href="#">Page 86.....</a>	<a href="#">189</a>
<a href="#">Page 87.....</a>	<a href="#">191</a>
<a href="#">Page 88.....</a>	<a href="#">193</a>
<a href="#">Page 89.....</a>	<a href="#">195</a>
<a href="#">Page 90.....</a>	<a href="#">197</a>
<a href="#">Page 91.....</a>	<a href="#">199</a>
<a href="#">Page 92.....</a>	<a href="#">201</a>
<a href="#">Page 93.....</a>	<a href="#">203</a>
<a href="#">Page 94.....</a>	<a href="#">205</a>
<a href="#">Page 95.....</a>	<a href="#">207</a>
<a href="#">Page 96.....</a>	<a href="#">209</a>
<a href="#">Page 97.....</a>	<a href="#">211</a>
<a href="#">Page 98.....</a>	<a href="#">213</a>
<a href="#">Page 99.....</a>	<a href="#">215</a>

<a href="#">Page 100.....</a>	<a href="#">217</a>
<a href="#">Page 101.....</a>	<a href="#">219</a>
<a href="#">Page 102.....</a>	<a href="#">221</a>
<a href="#">Page 103.....</a>	<a href="#">223</a>
<a href="#">Page 104.....</a>	<a href="#">225</a>
<a href="#">Page 105.....</a>	<a href="#">227</a>
<a href="#">Page 106.....</a>	<a href="#">229</a>
<a href="#">Page 107.....</a>	<a href="#">231</a>
<a href="#">Page 108.....</a>	<a href="#">233</a>
<a href="#">Page 109.....</a>	<a href="#">235</a>
<a href="#">Page 110.....</a>	<a href="#">237</a>
<a href="#">Page 111.....</a>	<a href="#">239</a>
<a href="#">Page 112.....</a>	<a href="#">241</a>
<a href="#">Page 113.....</a>	<a href="#">243</a>
<a href="#">Page 114.....</a>	<a href="#">245</a>
<a href="#">Page 115.....</a>	<a href="#">247</a>
<a href="#">Page 116.....</a>	<a href="#">249</a>
<a href="#">Page 117.....</a>	<a href="#">251</a>
<a href="#">Page 118.....</a>	<a href="#">253</a>
<a href="#">Page 119.....</a>	<a href="#">255</a>
<a href="#">Page 120.....</a>	<a href="#">258</a>
<a href="#">Page 121.....</a>	<a href="#">261</a>
<a href="#">Page 122.....</a>	<a href="#">263</a>
<a href="#">Page 123.....</a>	<a href="#">265</a>
<a href="#">Page 124.....</a>	<a href="#">267</a>
<a href="#">Page 125.....</a>	<a href="#">269</a>

<a href="#">Page 126.....</a>	<a href="#">271</a>
<a href="#">Page 127.....</a>	<a href="#">273</a>
<a href="#">Page 128.....</a>	<a href="#">275</a>
<a href="#">Page 129.....</a>	<a href="#">277</a>
<a href="#">Page 130.....</a>	<a href="#">279</a>
<a href="#">Page 131.....</a>	<a href="#">281</a>
<a href="#">Page 132.....</a>	<a href="#">284</a>
<a href="#">Page 133.....</a>	<a href="#">286</a>
<a href="#">Page 134.....</a>	<a href="#">288</a>
<a href="#">Page 135.....</a>	<a href="#">290</a>
<a href="#">Page 136.....</a>	<a href="#">293</a>
<a href="#">Page 137.....</a>	<a href="#">296</a>
<a href="#">Page 138.....</a>	<a href="#">298</a>
<a href="#">Page 139.....</a>	<a href="#">300</a>
<a href="#">Page 140.....</a>	<a href="#">302</a>
<a href="#">Page 141.....</a>	<a href="#">304</a>
<a href="#">Page 142.....</a>	<a href="#">306</a>
<a href="#">Page 143.....</a>	<a href="#">308</a>
<a href="#">Page 144.....</a>	<a href="#">310</a>
<a href="#">Page 145.....</a>	<a href="#">312</a>
<a href="#">Page 146.....</a>	<a href="#">314</a>
<a href="#">Page 147.....</a>	<a href="#">317</a>
<a href="#">Page 148.....</a>	<a href="#">319</a>
<a href="#">Page 149.....</a>	<a href="#">321</a>
<a href="#">Page 150.....</a>	<a href="#">323</a>
<a href="#">Page 151.....</a>	<a href="#">325</a>

<a href="#">Page 152.....</a>	<a href="#">327</a>
<a href="#">Page 153.....</a>	<a href="#">329</a>
<a href="#">Page 154.....</a>	<a href="#">331</a>
<a href="#">Page 155.....</a>	<a href="#">333</a>
<a href="#">Page 156.....</a>	<a href="#">335</a>
<a href="#">Page 157.....</a>	<a href="#">337</a>
<a href="#">Page 158.....</a>	<a href="#">339</a>
<a href="#">Page 159.....</a>	<a href="#">341</a>
<a href="#">Page 160.....</a>	<a href="#">343</a>
<a href="#">Page 161.....</a>	<a href="#">345</a>
<a href="#">Page 162.....</a>	<a href="#">347</a>
<a href="#">Page 163.....</a>	<a href="#">349</a>
<a href="#">Page 164.....</a>	<a href="#">351</a>
<a href="#">Page 165.....</a>	<a href="#">353</a>
<a href="#">Page 166.....</a>	<a href="#">355</a>
<a href="#">Page 167.....</a>	<a href="#">357</a>
<a href="#">Page 168.....</a>	<a href="#">359</a>
<a href="#">Page 169.....</a>	<a href="#">361</a>
<a href="#">Page 170.....</a>	<a href="#">363</a>
<a href="#">Page 171.....</a>	<a href="#">366</a>
<a href="#">Page 172.....</a>	<a href="#">368</a>
<a href="#">Page 173.....</a>	<a href="#">370</a>
<a href="#">Page 174.....</a>	<a href="#">372</a>
<a href="#">Page 176.....</a>	<a href="#">377</a>
<a href="#">Page 177.....</a>	<a href="#">379</a>
<a href="#">Page 179.....</a>	<a href="#">383</a>



<a href="#">Page 180.....</a>	<a href="#">386</a>
<a href="#">Page 183.....</a>	<a href="#">389</a>
<a href="#">Page 184.....</a>	<a href="#">391</a>
<a href="#">Page 185.....</a>	<a href="#">393</a>
<a href="#">Page 186.....</a>	<a href="#">395</a>
<a href="#">Page 187.....</a>	<a href="#">397</a>
<a href="#">Page 188.....</a>	<a href="#">399</a>
<a href="#">Page 189.....</a>	<a href="#">401</a>
<a href="#">Page 190.....</a>	<a href="#">402</a>
<a href="#">Page 191.....</a>	<a href="#">403</a>
<a href="#">Page 192.....</a>	<a href="#">405</a>
<a href="#">Page 194.....</a>	<a href="#">409</a>
<a href="#">Page 195.....</a>	<a href="#">411</a>
<a href="#">Page 196.....</a>	<a href="#">413</a>
<a href="#">Page 197.....</a>	<a href="#">416</a>
<a href="#">Page 198.....</a>	<a href="#">418</a>
<a href="#">Page 199.....</a>	<a href="#">421</a>
<a href="#">Page 200.....</a>	<a href="#">423</a>
<a href="#">Page 201.....</a>	<a href="#">425</a>
<a href="#">Page 202.....</a>	<a href="#">427</a>
<a href="#">Page 204.....</a>	<a href="#">430</a>
<a href="#">Page 206.....</a>	<a href="#">433</a>
<a href="#">Page 207.....</a>	<a href="#">434</a>
<a href="#">Page 208.....</a>	<a href="#">436</a>
<a href="#">Page 209.....</a>	<a href="#">438</a>
<a href="#">Page 210.....</a>	<a href="#">440</a>

<a href="#">Page 211.....</a>	<a href="#">442</a>
<a href="#">Page 212.....</a>	<a href="#">443</a>
<a href="#">Page 213.....</a>	<a href="#">445</a>
<a href="#">Page 214.....</a>	<a href="#">447</a>
<a href="#">Page 215.....</a>	<a href="#">448</a>
<a href="#">Page 216.....</a>	<a href="#">450</a>
<a href="#">Page 217.....</a>	<a href="#">452</a>
<a href="#">Page 218.....</a>	<a href="#">454</a>
<a href="#">Page 219.....</a>	<a href="#">456</a>
<a href="#">Page 220.....</a>	<a href="#">458</a>
<a href="#">Page 221.....</a>	<a href="#">461</a>
<a href="#">Page 222.....</a>	<a href="#">464</a>
<a href="#">Page 223.....</a>	<a href="#">466</a>
<a href="#">Page 224.....</a>	<a href="#">468</a>
<a href="#">Page 225.....</a>	<a href="#">470</a>
<a href="#">Page 226.....</a>	<a href="#">473</a>
<a href="#">Page 227.....</a>	<a href="#">476</a>
<a href="#">Page 228.....</a>	<a href="#">478</a>
<a href="#">Page 229.....</a>	<a href="#">480</a>
<a href="#">Page 230.....</a>	<a href="#">483</a>
<a href="#">Page 231.....</a>	<a href="#">485</a>
<a href="#">Page 232.....</a>	<a href="#">487</a>
<a href="#">Page 233.....</a>	<a href="#">489</a>
<a href="#">Page 234.....</a>	<a href="#">492</a>
<a href="#">Page 235.....</a>	<a href="#">494</a>

<a href="#">Page 236.....</a>	<a href="#">496</a>
<a href="#">Page 237.....</a>	<a href="#">498</a>
<a href="#">Page 238.....</a>	<a href="#">500</a>
<a href="#">Page 239.....</a>	<a href="#">502</a>
<a href="#">Page 240.....</a>	<a href="#">504</a>
<a href="#">Page 241.....</a>	<a href="#">506</a>
<a href="#">Page 242.....</a>	<a href="#">508</a>
<a href="#">Page 243.....</a>	<a href="#">510</a>
<a href="#">Page 244.....</a>	<a href="#">512</a>
<a href="#">Page 245.....</a>	<a href="#">514</a>
<a href="#">Page 246.....</a>	<a href="#">516</a>
<a href="#">Page 247.....</a>	<a href="#">518</a>
<a href="#">Page 248.....</a>	<a href="#">520</a>
<a href="#">Page 249.....</a>	<a href="#">522</a>
<a href="#">Page 250.....</a>	<a href="#">524</a>
<a href="#">Page 251.....</a>	<a href="#">526</a>
<a href="#">Page 252.....</a>	<a href="#">528</a>
<a href="#">Page 253.....</a>	<a href="#">530</a>
<a href="#">Page 254.....</a>	<a href="#">532</a>
<a href="#">Page 255.....</a>	<a href="#">534</a>
<a href="#">Page 256.....</a>	<a href="#">536</a>
<a href="#">Page 257.....</a>	<a href="#">538</a>

<a href="#">Page 258.....</a>	<a href="#">540</a>
<a href="#">Page 259.....</a>	<a href="#">542</a>
<a href="#">Page 260.....</a>	<a href="#">544</a>
<a href="#">Page 261.....</a>	<a href="#">546</a>
<a href="#">Page 262.....</a>	<a href="#">548</a>
<a href="#">Page 263.....</a>	<a href="#">550</a>
<a href="#">Page 264.....</a>	<a href="#">552</a>
<a href="#">Page 265.....</a>	<a href="#">554</a>
<a href="#">Page 266.....</a>	<a href="#">556</a>
<a href="#">Page 267.....</a>	<a href="#">558</a>
<a href="#">Page 268.....</a>	<a href="#">560</a>
<a href="#">Page 269.....</a>	<a href="#">562</a>
<a href="#">Page 270.....</a>	<a href="#">564</a>
<a href="#">Page 271.....</a>	<a href="#">566</a>
<a href="#">Page 272.....</a>	<a href="#">568</a>
<a href="#">Page 273.....</a>	<a href="#">570</a>
<a href="#">Page 274.....</a>	<a href="#">572</a>
<a href="#">Page 275.....</a>	<a href="#">574</a>
<a href="#">Page 276.....</a>	<a href="#">576</a>
<a href="#">Page 277.....</a>	<a href="#">579</a>
<a href="#">Page 278.....</a>	<a href="#">582</a>
<a href="#">Page 279.....</a>	<a href="#">585</a>
<a href="#">Page 280.....</a>	<a href="#">588</a>

<a href="#">Page 205.....</a>	<a href="#">591</a>
<a href="#">Page 203.....</a>	<a href="#">592</a>
<a href="#">Page 193.....</a>	<a href="#">593</a>
<a href="#">Page 182.....</a>	<a href="#">594</a>
<a href="#">Page 181.....</a>	<a href="#">595</a>
<a href="#">Page 178.....</a>	<a href="#">596</a>
<a href="#">Page 175.....</a>	<a href="#">597</a>

# Table of Contents

Section	Page
Start of eBook	1
PART III. CONSTRUCTIONS	1
APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES	1
APPENDIX II. RULES OF SYNTAX	1
261-264	
APPENDIX III. REVIEWS 265-282	1
INDEX 344-348	2
TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION	2
PART I	4
THE ALPHABET	4
SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS[1]	4
SYLLABLES	6
QUANTITY	7
ACCENT	8
HOW TO READ LATIN	8
PART II	9
LESSON I	9
LESSON II	11
LESSON III	12
LESSON IV	14
LESSON V	15
LESSON VI	17
JULIA AND GALBA	19
LESSON VII	19
LESSON VIII	21
LESSON IX	24
GALBA AND MARCUS	25
LESSON X	25
LESSON XI	27
LESSON XII	28
GERMANIA	29
LESSON XIII	29
MARCUS AND CORNELIUS	31
THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE	31
PRONOUNS	
LESSON XV	33
LESSON XVI	34
EXAMPLES	35

LESSON XVII	36
EXAMPLES	37
CORNELIUS AND MARCUS	37
THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS	39
LESSON XIX	40
LESSON XX	42
LESSON XXI	43
LESSON XXII	45
LESSON XXIII	46
LESSON XXIV	47
LESSON XXV	48
LESSON XXVI	49
LESSON XXVII	51
LESSON XXVIII	53
LESSON XXIX	54
LESSON XXX	56
LESSON XXXI	58
THE BOYS TITUS, MARCUS, AND QUINTUS	60
LESSON XXXII	60
LESSON XXXIII	62
LESSON XXXIV	64
LESSON XXXV	65
LESSON XXXVI	67
LESSON XXXVII	70
LESSON XXXVIII	72
LESSON XXXIX	75
CLASS I	76
LESSON XL	77
CLASS II	77
MASCULINES AND FEMININES	77
LESSON XLI	78
LESSON XLII	79
LESSON XLIII	80
LESSON XLIV	82
LESSON XLV	84
CLASS I	85
CLASS II	85
CLASS III	85
LESSON XLVI	86
PARADIGMS	87
LESSON XLVII	87
LESSON XLVIII	90
LESSON XLIX	92
LESSON L	94
LESSON LI	96



LESSON LII	97
LESSON LIII	100
LESSON LIV	102
LESSON LV	103
LESSON LVI	104
EXAMPLES	105
LESSON LVII	106
LESSON LVIII	108
LESSON LIX	110
LESSON LX	111
PART III	113
INTRODUCTORY NOTE	113
LESSON LXI	113
LESSON LXII	115
LESSON LXIII	116
LESSON LXIV	119
EXAMPLES	120
LESSON LXV	121
LESSON LXVI	122
LESSON LXVII	125
LESSON LXVIII	127
LESSON LXIX	129
LESSON LXX	131
LESSON LXXI	133
PARADIGM OF THE GERUND	133
LESSON LXXII	135
LESSON LXXIII	138
LESSON LXXIV	141
LESSON LXXV	142
LESSON LXXVI	143
LESSON LXXVII	145
LESSON LXXVIII	146
LESSON LXXIX	147
READING MATTER	148
THE LABORS OF HERCULES	150
LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYAE	150
HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION	151
LVI. SLAYING THE LERNE'AN HYDRA	152
LVII. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR	152
	153
THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF	153





DIOME'DES	
LX. THE BELT OF HIPPOL'YTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS	154
THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CER'BERUS	154
LXI. PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPE'II	154
LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM	155
	156
LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME : PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER	157
LXV. A DAY AT POMPEII	158
LXVI. LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON	159
SCENE IN SCHOOL : AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION	160
LXVII. PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION	160
LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS	161
LXIX. PUBLIUS JOINS CAESAR'S ARMY IN GAUL	163
HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED	163
LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS	164
LXXI. THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED	166
LXXII. PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY : ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS	166
LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY	168
LXXIV. THE CITY IS TAKEN : THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED	169
	170
LXXVI. THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR	172
APPENDIX I	174
NOUNS	174
CLASSIFICATION	175
ADJECTIVES	178
PRONOUNS	182
REGULAR VERBS	185
IRREGULAR VERBS	193
APPENDIX II	196
APPENDIX III	200
I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND	200

GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII	
II. REVIEW OF LESSONS IX-XVII	202
III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII- XXVI	204
IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII- XXXVI	205
V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII- XLIV	207
VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV-LII	209
VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII-LX	212
VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI- LXIX	215
SPECIAL VOCABULARIES	216
LESSON IV, Sec. 39	216
LESSON VI, Sec. 56	217
LESSON VIII, Sec. 69	217
LESSON X, Sec. 82	218
LESSON XII, Sec. 90	218
LESSON XIV, Sec. 99	219
LESSON XVII, Sec. 117	219
LESSON XX, Sec. 136	220
LESSON XXII, Sec. 146	220
LESSON XXVIII, Sec. 171	220
LESSON XXX, Sec. 182	221
LESSON XXXII, Sec. 193	221
LESSON XXXVI, Sec. 211	222
LESSON XXXIX, Sec. 234	223
LESSON XLI, Sec. 239	223
LESSON XLIV, Sec. 249	224
LESSON XLVI, Sec. 261	224
LESSON XLVIII, Sec. 276	225
LESSON L, Sec. 288	226
LESSON LII, Sec. 298	226
LESSON LIV, Sec. 310	227
LESSON LVI, Sec. 318	228
LESSON LVIII, Sec. 332	228
LESSON LX, Sec. 341	229
A	230
B	233
C	233
D	238
E	240
F	242
G	243
H	244



I	244
L	247
M	249
N	251
O	252
P	253
Q	258
R	258
S	260
T	263
U	264
V	265
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	266
A	266
B	267
C	268
D	268
E	269
F	269
G	270
H	270
I	271
J	271
K	271
L	271
M	272
N	272
O	272
P	273
Q	273
R	273
S	273
T	274
U	275
V	275
W	275
Y	276
Z	276
INDEX	276



# Page 1

## PART III. CONSTRUCTIONS

LXI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—Inflection of the Present—*Indicative and Subjunctive Compared* 148-152

LXII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE 152-153

LXIII. INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE—*Sequence of Tenses* 153-155

LXIV. INFLECTION OF THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE—*Substantive Clauses of Purpose* 156-159

LXV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF possum—*Verbs of Fearing* 160-161

LXVI. THE PARTICIPLES—Tenses and Declension 161-164

LXVII. THE IRREGULAR VERBS volo, nolo, malo—*Ablative Absolute* 164-166

LXVIII. THE IRREGULAR VERB fio—*Subjunctive of Result* 167-168

LXIX. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—*Predicate Accusative* 169-171

LXX. CONSTRUCTIONS WITH cum—*Ablative of Specification* 171-173

LXXI. VOCABULARY REVIEW—*Gerund and Gerundive—Predicate Genitive* 173-177

LXXII. THE IRREGULAR VERB eo—*Indirect Statements* 177-180

LXXIII. VOCABULARY REVIEW—THE IRREGULAR VERB fero—*Dative with Compounds* 181-183

LXXIV. VOCABULARY REVIEW—*Subjunctive in Indirect Questions* 183-185

LXXV. VOCABULARY REVIEW—*Dative of Purpose or End for Which* 185-186

LXXVI. VOCABULARY REVIEW—*Genitive and Ablative of Quality or Description* 186-188



LXXVII. REVIEW OF AGREEMENT—*Review of the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative* 189-190

LXXVIII. REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE 191-192

LXXIX. REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS 192-193

## **READING MATTER**

INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS 194-195

THE LABORS OF HERCULES 196-203

P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY 204-215

## **APPENDIXES AND VOCABULARIES**

APPENDIX I. TABLES OF DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC. 226-260

## **APPENDIX II. RULES OF SYNTAX 261-264**

## **APPENDIX III. REVIEWS 265-282**



## Page 2

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES 283-298

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 299-331

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 332-343

## INDEX 344-348

### LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

## TO THE STUDENT—BY WAY OF INTRODUCTION

What is Latin? If you will look at the map of Italy on the opposite page, you will find near the middle of the peninsula and facing the west coast a district called Latium,[1] and Rome its capital. The Latin language, meaning the language of Latium, was spoken by the ancient Romans and other inhabitants of Latium, and Latin was the name applied to it after the armies of Rome had carried the knowledge of her language far beyond its original boundaries. As the English of to-day is not quite the same as that spoken two or three hundred years ago, so Latin was not always the same at all times, but changed more or less in the course of centuries. The sort of Latin you are going to learn was in use about two thousand years ago. And that period has been selected because the language was then at its best and the greatest works of Roman literature were being produced. This period, because of its supreme excellence, is called the Golden Age of Roman letters.

[Footnote 1: Pronounce *La:'shi-um.*]

The Spread of Latin. For some centuries after Rome was founded, the Romans were a feeble and insignificant people, their territory was limited to Latium, and their existence constantly threatened by warlike neighbors. But after the third century before Christ, Rome's power grew rapidly. She conquered all Italy, then reached out for the lands across the sea and beyond the Alps, and finally ruled over the whole ancient world. The empire thus established lasted for more than four hundred years. The importance of Latin increased with the growth of Roman power, and what had been a dialect spoken by a single tribe became the universal language. Gradually the language changed somewhat, developing differently in different countries. In Italy it has become Italian, in Spain Spanish, and in France French. All these nations, therefore, are speaking a modernized form of Latin.

The Romans and the Greeks. In their career of conquest the Romans came into conflict with the Greeks. The Greeks were inferior to the Romans in military power, but far superior to them in culture. They excelled in art, literature, music, science, and philosophy. Of all these pursuits the Romans were ignorant until contact with Greece

revealed to them the value of education and filled them with the thirst for knowledge. And so it came about that while Rome conquered Greece by force of arms, Greece conquered Rome by force of her intellectual superiority and became her schoolmaster.

## Page 3

It was soon the established custom for young Romans to go to Athens and to other centers of Greek learning to finish their training, and the knowledge of the Greek language among the educated classes became universal. At the same time many cultured Greeks—poets, artists, orators, and philosophers—flocked to Rome, opened schools, and taught their arts. Indeed, the preeminence of Greek culture became so great that Rome almost lost her ambition to be original, and her writers vied with each other in their efforts to reproduce in Latin what was choicest in Greek literature. As a consequence of all this, the civilization and national life of Rome became largely Grecian, and to Greece she owed her literature and her art.

Rome and the Modern World. After conquering the world, Rome impressed her language, laws, customs of living, and modes of thinking upon the subject nations, and they became Roman; and the world has remained largely Roman ever since. Latin continued to live, and the knowledge of Latin was the only light of learning that burned steadily through the dark ages that followed the downfall of the Roman Empire. Latin was the common language of scholars and remained so even down to the days of Shakespeare. Even yet it is more nearly than any other tongue the universal language of the learned. The life of to-day is much nearer the life of ancient Rome than the lapse of centuries would lead one to suppose. You and I are Romans still in many ways, and if Caesar and Cicero should appear among us, we should not find them, except for dress and language, much unlike men of to-day.

Latin and English. Do you know that more than half of the words in the English dictionary are Latin, and that you are speaking more or less Latin every day? How has this come about? In the year 1066 William the Conqueror invaded England with an army of Normans. The Normans spoke French—which, you remember, is descended from Latin—and spread their language to a considerable extent over England, and so Norman-French played an important part in the formation of English and forms a large proportion of our vocabulary. Furthermore, great numbers of almost pure Latin words have been brought into English through the writings of scholars, and every new scientific discovery is marked by the addition of new terms of Latin derivation. Hence, while the simpler and commoner words of our mother tongue are Anglo-Saxon, and Anglo-Saxon forms the staple of our colloquial language, yet in the realms of literature, and especially in poetry, words of Latin derivation are very abundant. Also in the learned professions, as in law, medicine, and engineering, a knowledge of Latin is necessary for the successful interpretation of technical and scientific terms.



## Page 4

Why study Latin? The foregoing paragraphs make it clear why Latin forms so important a part of modern education. We have seen that our civilization rests upon that of Greece and Rome, and that we must look to the past if we would understand the present. It is obvious, too, that the knowledge of Latin not only leads to a more exact and effective use of our own language, but that it is of vital importance and of great practical value to any one preparing for a literary or professional career. To this it may be added that the study of Latin throws a flood of light upon the structure of language in general and lays an excellent foundation for all grammatical study. Finally, it has been abundantly proved that there is no more effective means of strengthening the mind than by the earnest pursuit of this branch of learning.

Review Questions. Whence does Latin get its name? Where is Latium? Where is Rome? Was Latin always the same? What sort of Latin are we to study? Describe the growth of Rome's power and the spread of Latin. What can you say of the origin of Italian, French, and Spanish? How did the ancient Greeks and Romans compare? How did Greece influence Rome? How did Rome influence the world? In what sense are we Romans still? What did Latin have to do with the formation of English? What proportion of English words are of Latin origin, and what kind of words are they? Why should we study Latin?

## PART I

### THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

### THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English except that it has no *w* and no *j*.
2. The vowels, as in English, are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The other letters are consonants.
3. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the value of a consonant and is called *I consonant*.

Thus in *Iu:-li-us* the first *i* is a consonant, the second a vowel.

### SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS[1]

[Footnote 1: N.B. The sounds of the letters are best learned by hearing them correctly pronounced. The matter in this section is, therefore, intended for reference rather than for assignment as a lesson. As a first step it is suggested that the teacher pronounce the examples in class, the pupils following.]

4. Latin was not pronounced like English. The Romans at the beginning of the Christian era pronounced their language substantially as described below.

5. The vowels have the following sounds:

VOWELS[2] LATIN EXAMPLES



## Page 5

a: as in *father* ha:c, sta:s  
 a like the first a in *aha'*,  
 never as in *hat* a'-mat, ca-na:s  
 e: as in *they* te:'-la, me:'-ta  
 e as in *met* te'-net, mer'-ce:s  
 i: as in *machine* ser'-ti:, pra:'-ti:  
 i as in *bit* si'-tis, bi'-bi:  
 o: as in *holy* Ro:'-ma, o:'-ris  
 o as in *wholly*, never as in  
*hot* mo'-do, bo'-no:s  
 u: as in *rude*, or as oo in  
*boot* u:'-mor, tu:'-ber  
 u as in *full*, or as oo in  
*foot* ut, tu:'-tus

NOTE. It is to be observed that there is a decided difference in sound, except in the case of a, between the long and the short vowels. It is not merely a matter of *quantity* but also of *quality*.

[Footnote 2: Long vowels are marked ^, short ones ... ]

[Transcriber's Note: In this version of the text, long vowels are shown as a:, e:, i: ... and short vowels are unmarked, as described in the introductory notes.]

6. In *diphthongs* (two-vowel sounds) both vowels are heard in a single syllable.

### DIPHTHONGS LATIN EXAMPLES

ae\ as *\_ai\_* in *\_aisle\_* tae'-dae  
 au\ as *ou* in *out* gau'-det  
 ei\ as *\_ei\_* in *\_eight\_* dein'-de  
 eu\ as *e'[oo]* (a short e  
 followed by a short u in  
 one syllable) seu  
 oe\ like *\_oi\_* in *\_toil\_* foe'-dus  
 ui\ like *[oo]'i* (a short u  
 followed by a short i in one  
 syllable. Cf. English *we*) cui, huic

NOTE. Give all the vowels and diphthongs their proper sounds and do not slur over them in unaccented syllables, as is done in English.

7. Consonants are pronounced as in English, except that



## CONSONANTS LATIN EXAMPLES

*c* is always like *\_c\_* in *\_cat\_*,  
never as in *\_cent\_* *ca'-do:*, *ci'-bus*, *ce: '-na*

*g* is always like *g* in *get*,  
never as in *gem* *ge'-mo:*, *gig'-no:*

*i* consonant is always like  
*\_y\_* in *\_yes\_* *iam*, *io'-cus*

*n* before *c*, *qu*, or *g* is  
like *ng* in *sing* (compare  
the sound of *n* in *anchor*) *an'-co-ra* (*ang'-ko-ra*)

*qu*, *gu*, and sometimes *su*  
before a vowel have the sound  
of *\_qw\_*, *gw\_*, and *\_sw\_*. Here  
*\_u\_* has the value of consonant  
*\_v\_* and is not counted a vowel in *-quit*, *qui:*, *lin'-gua*,  
*san'-guis*,



## Page 6

*sua:'de-o:*

s\ is like s in sea, never

as in ease ro'-sa, is

t\ is always like \_t\_ in

\_native\_, never as in \_nation\_ ra'-ti-o:, na: '-ti-o:

v\ is like w in wine, never

as in vine vi: '-num, vir

x\ has the value of two

consonants (\_cs\_ or \_gs\_) and

is like \_x\_ in \_extract\_, not

as in \_exact\_ ex'-tra:, ex-a:c'-tus

bs\ is like ps and bt\ like

\_pt\_ urbs, ob-ti'-ne-o:

ch\, ph\, and th\ are like

c, p, t pul'-cher, Phoe'-be:,

the-a: '-trum

a. In combinations of consonants give each its distinct sound. Doubled consonants should be pronounced with a slight pause between the two sounds. Thus pronounce *tt* as in *rat-trap*, not as in *rattle*; *pp* as in *hop-pole*, not as in *upper*. Examples, *mit'-to:*\, *Ap'pi-us*\, *bel'-lum*\.

## SYLLABLES

\_8.\_ A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. Thus *aes-ta: '-te*\ has three syllables, *au-di-en'-dus*\ has four.

a. Two vowels with a consonant between them never make one syllable, as is so often the case in English. Compare English *inside* with Latin *i:n-si: '-de*.

9. Words are divided into syllables as follows:

1. A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second. Thus *a-ma: '-bi-lis*\, *me-mo'-ri-a*\, *in-te'-re-a:*\, *a'-best*\, *pe-re: '-git*\.[3]

[Footnote 3: In writing and printing it is customary to divide the parts of a compound, as *inter-ea:*\, *ab-est*\, *sub-a:ctus*\, *per-e:git*\, contrary to the correct phonetic rule.]

2. Combinations of two or more consonants:

a. A consonant followed by *l* or *r* goes with the *l* or *r*. Thus *pu: '-bli-cus*\, *a'-gri:*\.



EXCEPTION. Prepositional compounds of this nature, as also *ll* and *rr*, follow rule *b*. Thus *ab'-lu-o:\*, *ab-rum'-po:\*, *il'-le\*, *fer'-rum\*.

*b*. In all other combinations of consonants the first consonant goes with the preceding vowel.[4] Thus *mag'-nus\*, *e-ges'-ta:s\*, *vic-to: '-ri-a\*, *hos'-pes\*, *an'-nus\*, *su-ba:c'-tus\*.

[Footnote 4: The combination *nct* is divided *nc-t*, as *fu:nc-tus*, *sa:nc-tus*.]

3. The last syllable of a word is called the *ul'-ti-ma*; the one next to the last, the *pe-nult'*; the one before the penult, the *an'-te-pe-nult'*.

## 10. EXERCISE

Divide the words in the following passage into syllables and pronounce them, placing the accent as indicated:



## Page 7

Va:'de ad formi:'cam, O: pi'ger, et co:nsi:'dera: vi'a:s e'ius et di'sce sapie'ntiam: quae cum no:n ha'beat du'cem nec praecepto:'rem nec pri:'ncipem, pa'rat in aesta:'te ci'bum si'bi et co'ngregat in me'sse quod co'medat.

[[Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise: which, having no guide, overseer, or ruler, provideth her meat in the summer and gathereth her food in the harvest.]]

## QUANTITY

11. The quantity of a vowel or a syllable is the time it takes to pronounce it. Correct pronunciation and accent depend upon the proper observance of quantity.

12. Quantity of Vowels. Vowels are either long (^) or short. In this book the long vowels are marked. Unmarked vowels are to be considered short.

[Transcriber's Note: The wording of Sec. 12 is as in the original, except that the macron (long-vowel symbol) has been replaced with a caret ("hat"), and the breve (short-vowel symbol) has been omitted.]

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or *h*; as *po-e:'-tal*,  
*tra'-ho:\*.

2. A vowel is short before *nt* and *nd*, before final *m* or *t*, and, except in words of one syllable, before final *l* or *r*. Thus *a'-mantl*, *a-man'-dus\*, *a-ma:'-bam\*, *a-ma:'-bat\*, *a'-ni-ma\*, *a'-mor\*.

3. A vowel is long before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*. Thus  
*i:n'-fe-ro:\*, *re'-ge:ns\*, *sa:n'-xi:\*, *sa:nc'-tus\*.

4. Diphthongs are always long, and are not marked.

13. Quantity of Syllables. Syllables are either long or short, and their quantity must be carefully distinguished from that of vowels.

1. A syllable is short,

a. If it ends in a short vowel; as *a'-mo:\*, *pi'-gril\*.

NOTE. In final syllables the short vowel may be followed by a final consonant. Thus the word *me-mo'-ri-am\* contains four short syllables. In the first three a short vowel ends the syllable, in the last the short vowel is followed by a final consonant.

2. A syllable is long,



a. If it contains a long vowel or a diphthong, as *cu:’-ro:l*,  
*poe’-nae\*, *aes-ta:’-tel*.

b. If it ends in a consonant which is followed by another  
consonant, as *cor’-pus\*, *mag’-nus\*.

NOTE. The vowel in a long syllable may be either long or short, and should be pronounced accordingly. Thus in *ter’-ral*, *in’-ter\*, the first syllable is long, but the vowel in each case is short and should be given the short sound. In words like *saxum\* the first syllable is long because *\_x\_* has the value of two consonants (*\_cs\_* or *\_gs\_*).

3. In determining quantity *h* is not counted a consonant.





## Page 8

NOTE. Give about twice as much time to the long syllables as to the short ones. It takes about as long to pronounce a short vowel plus a consonant as it does to pronounce a long vowel or a diphthong, and so these quantities are considered equally long. For example, it takes about as long to say *cur'-ro:\* as it does *cu:'-ro:\*, and so each of these first syllables is long. Compare *mol'-lis\* and *mo:'-lis\*, *a:-mis'-si:\* and *a:-mi'-si:\*.

## ACCENT

14. Words of two syllables are accented on the first, as *me:n'-sa\*, *Cae'-sar\*.

15. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if the penult is long. If the penult is short, accent the antepenult. Thus *mo-ne:'-mus\*, *re'-gi-tur\*, *a-gri'-co-la\*, *a-man'-dus\*.

NOTE. Observe that the position of the accent is determined by the length of the *syllable* and not by the length of the vowel in the syllable. (Cf. Sec. 13.2, Note.)

16. Certain little words called *enclit'ics*[5] which have no separate existence, are added to and pronounced with a preceding word. The most common are */-que\*, *and; /-ve\*, *or; and /-ne\*, the question sign. The syllable before an enclitic takes the accent, regardless of its quantity. Thus *populus'que\*, *dea'que\*, *re:gna've\*, *audit'ne\*.

[Footnote 5: Enclitic means *leaning back*, and that is, as you see, just what these little words do. They cannot stand alone and so they lean back for support upon the preceding word.]

## HOW TO READ LATIN

17. To read Latin well is not so difficult, if you begin right. Correct habits of reading should be formed now. Notice the quantities carefully, especially the quantity of the penult, to insure your getting the accent on the right syllable. (Cf. Sec. 15.) Give every vowel its proper sound and every syllable its proper length. Then bear in mind that we should read Latin as we read English, in phrases rather than in separate words. Group together words that are closely connected in thought. No good reader halts at the end of each word.

18. Read the stanzas of the following poem by Longfellow, one at a time, first the English and then the Latin version. The syllables inclosed in parentheses are to be slurred or omitted to secure smoothness of meter.

EXCELSIOR [[HIGHER]]! [6]



The shades of night were falling fast,  
As through an Alpine village passed  
A youth, who bore, 'mid snow and ice,  
A banner with the strange device,

Excelsior! Cade: bant noctis umbrae, dum  
Ibat per vi: cum Alpicum  
Gelu: nivequ(e) adole: sce: ns,  
Ve: xillum cum signo: fere: ns,

Excelsior!



## Page 9

His brow was sad; his eye beneath,  
Flashed like a falchion from its sheath,  
And like a silver clarion rung  
The accents of that unknown tongue,

Excelsior! Fro:ns tri:stis, micat oculus  
Velut e: va:gi:na: gladius;  
Sonantque simile:s tubae  
Accentu:s lingu(ae) incognitae,

Excelsior! In happy homes he saw the light  
Of household fires gleam warm and bright;  
Above, the spectral glaciers shone,  
And from his lips escaped a groan,

Excelsior! In domibus videt cla:ra:s  
Foco:rum lu:ce:s calida:s;  
Relucet glacie:s a:cris,  
Et rumpit gemitu:s labri:s,

Excelsior! "Try not the Pass!" the old man said;  
"Dark lowers the tempest overhead,  
The roaring torrent is deep and wide!"  
And loud that clarion voice replied,

Excelsior! Di:cit senex, "Ne: tra:nsea:s!  
Supra: nigre:scit tempesta:s;  
La:tus et altus est torre:ns."  
Cla:ra ve:nit vo:x responde:ns,

Excelsior! At break of day, as heavenward  
The pious monks of Saint Bernard  
Uttered the oft-repeated prayer,  
A voice cried through the startled air,

Excelsior! Iam lu:ce:sce:bat, et fra:tre:s  
Sa:ncti: Bernardi: vigile:s  
O:ra:bant prece:s solita:s,  
Cum vo:x cla:ma:vit per aura:s,

Excelsior! A traveler, by the faithful hound,  
Half-buried in the snow was found,  
Still grasping in his hand of ice



That banner with the strange device,

Excelsior! Se:mi-sepultus via:tor  
Can(e) a: fi:do: reperi:tur,  
Compre:nde:ns pugno: gelido:  
Illud ve:xillum cum signo:,

Excelsior! There in the twilight cold and gray,  
Lifeless, but beautiful, he lay,  
And from the sky, serene and far,  
A voice fell, like a falling star,

Excelsior! Iacet corpus exanimum  
Sed lu:ce fri:gida: pulchrum;  
Et caelo: procul exie:ns  
Cadit vo:x, ut Stella cade:ns,

Excelsior!

[Footnote 6: Translation by C. W. Goodchild in *Praeco Latinus*,  
October, 1898.]

## PART II

### WORDS AND FORMS

## LESSON I

### FIRST PRINCIPLES

19. Subject and Predicate.

1. Latin, like English, expresses thoughts by means of sentences.

A sentence is a combination of words that expresses a thought, and in its simplest form is the statement of a single fact. Thus,

## Page 10

*Galba is a farmer*  
Galba est agricola  
*The sailor fights*  
Nauta pugnat

In each of these sentences there are two parts:

### SUBJECT PREDICATE

*Galba is a farmer*  
Galba  
*The sailor fights*  
Nauta pugnat

2. The subject is that person, place, or thing about which something is said, and is therefore a *noun* or some word which can serve the same purpose.

a. Pronouns, as their name implies (*pro*, “instead of,” and *noun*), often take the place of nouns, usually to save repeating the same noun, as, *Galba is a farmer; he is a sturdy fellow*.

3. The predicate is that which is said about the subject, and consists of a verb with or without modifiers.

a. A verb is a word which asserts something (usually an act) concerning a person, place, or thing.

20. The Object. In the two sentences, *The boy hit the ball* and *The ball hit the boy*, the same words are used, but the meaning is different, and depends upon the order of the words. The *doer of the act, that about which something is said, is, as we have seen above, the subject*. *That to which something is done is the direct object of the verb*. *The boy hit the ball* is therefore analyzed as follows:

### SUBJECT      PREDICATE

/-----\

*The boy    hit the ball*

(verb) (direct object)

a. A verb whose action passes over to the object directly, as in the sentence above, is called a *transitive verb*. A verb which does not admit of a direct object is called *intransitive*, as, *I walk, he comes*.

21. The Copula. The verb *to be* in its different forms—*are, is, was, etc.*—does not tell us anything about the subject; neither does it govern an object. It simply connects the



subject with the word or words in the predicate that possess a distinct meaning. Hence it is called the *copula*, that is, *\_the joiner\_ or \_link\_*.

22. In the following sentences pronounce the Latin and name the *nouns, verbs, subjects, objects, predicates, copulas*:

1. America est patria mea  
*America is fatherland my*
2. Agricola filiam amat  
*(The) farmer (his) daughter loves*
3. Filia est Iulia  
*(His) daughter is Julia*
4. Iulia et agricola sunt in insula  
*Julia and (the) farmer are on (the) island*
5. Iulia aquam portat  
*Julia water carries*
6. Rosam in comis habet  
*(A) rose in (her) hair (she) has*
7. Iulia est puella pulchra  
*Julia is (a) girl pretty*



## Page 11

8. Domina filiam pulchram habet  
(The) lady (a) daughter beautiful has

a. The sentences above show that Latin does not express some words which are necessary in English. First of all, *Latin has no article /the\ or /a\*; thus *agricola* may mean *the farmer, a farmer*, or simply *farmer*. Then, too, the personal pronouns, *I, you, he, she, etc.*, and the possessive pronouns, *my, your, his, her, etc.*, are not expressed if the meaning of the sentence is clear without them.

## LESSON II

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (Continued)

23. Inflection. Words may change their forms to indicate some change in sense or use, as, *is, are; was, were; who, whose, whom; farmer, farmer's; woman, women*. This is called *inflection*. The inflection of a noun, adjective, or pronoun is called its *declension*, that of a verb its *conjugation*.

24. Number. Latin, like English, has two numbers, singular and plural. In English we usually form the plural by adding *\_s\_* or *\_es\_* to the singular. So Latin changes the singular to the plural by changing the ending of the word. Compare

Naut-a pugnat  
The sailor fights  
Naut-ae pugnant  
The sailors fight

25. RULE. Nouns that end in *-a* in the singular end in *-ae* in the plural.

26. Learn the following nouns so that you can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English. Write the plural of each.

agri'cola, *farmer* (agriculture)[1] aqua, *water* (aquarium) causa, *cause, reason* do'mina, *lady of the house, mistress* (dominate) filia, *daughter* (filial) fortu'na, *fortune* fuga, *flight* (fugitive) iniu'ria, *wrong, injury* luna, *moon* (lunar) nauta, *sailor* (nautical) puel'la, *girl* silva, *forest* (silvan) terra, *land* (terrace)

[Footnote 1: The words in parentheses are English words related to the Latin. When the words are practically identical, as *causal*, *\_cause\_*, no comparison is needed.]

27. Compare again the sentences



Nauta pugna-t  
*The sailor fights*  
Nautae pugna-nt  
*The sailors fight*

In the first sentence the verb *pugna-t* is in the third person singular, in the second sentence *pugna-nt* is in the third person plural.

28. RULE. Agreement of Verb. *A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject.*

29. RULE. *In the conjugation of the Latin verb the third person singular active ends in -t, the third person plural in -nt. The endings which show the person and number of the verb are called /personal endings\.*





## Page 12

30. Learn the following verbs and write the plural of each. The personal pronouns *he, she, it, etc.*, which are necessary in the inflection of the English verb, are not needed in the Latin, because the personal endings take their place. Of course, if the verb's subject is expressed we do not translate the personal ending by a pronoun; thus *nauta pugnat* is translated *\_the sailor fights\_, not \_the sailor he fights\_.*

*ama-t* he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love (amity, amiable) *labo:'ra-t* " " " labors, is laboring, does labor *nu:ntia-t*[2] " " " announces, is announcing, does announce *porta-t* " " " carries, is carrying, does carry (porter) *pugna-t* " " " fights, is fighting, does fight (pugnacious)

[Footnote 2: The *u* in *nu:ntio:* is long by exception.  
(Cf. Sec. 12.2.)]

### 31. EXERCISES

I. 1. The daughter loves, the daughters love. 2. The sailor is carrying, the sailors carry. 3. The farmer does labor, the farmers labor. 4. The girl is announcing, the girls do announce. 5. The ladies are carrying, the lady carries.

II. 1. *Nauta pugnat, nautae pugnant.* 2. *Puella amat, puellae amant.* 3. *Agricola portat, agricolae portant.* 4. *Filia laborat, filiae laborant.* 5. *Nauta nuntiat, nautae nuntiant.* 6. *Dominae amant, domina amat.*

[Illustration: DOMINA]

## LESSON III

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

32. Declension of Nouns. We learned above (Secs. 19, 20) the difference between the subject and object, and that in English they may be distinguished by the order of the words. Sometimes, however, the order is such that we are left in doubt. For example, the sentence *The lady her daughter loves* might mean either that the lady loves her daughter, or that the daughter loves the lady.

1. If the sentence were in Latin, no doubt could arise, because the subject and the object are distinguished, not by the order of the words, but by the endings of the words themselves. Compare the following sentences:

*Domina filiam amat*  
*Filiam domina amat*  
*Amat filiam domina*



Domina amat filiam  
*The lady loves her daughter*

Filia dominam amat  
Dominam filia amat  
Amat dominam filia  
Filia amat dominam  
*The daughter loves the lady*

a. Observe that in each case the subject of the sentence ends in -a and the object in -am. The *form* of the noun shows how it is used in the sentence, and the order of the words has no effect on the essential meaning.<sup>2</sup> As stated above (Sec. 23), this change of ending is called *declension*, and each different ending produces what is called a case. When we decline a noun, we give all its different cases,

# Page 13

or changes of endings. In English we have three cases,—nominative, possessive, and objective; but, in nouns, the nominative and objective have the same form, and only the possessive case shows a change of ending, by adding 's or the apostrophe. The interrogative pronoun, however, has the fuller declension, *who? whose? whom?*

33. The following table shows a comparison between English and Latin declension forms, and should be thoroughly memorized:

ENGLISH CASES			LATIN CASES		
+---+-----+-----+-----+-----					
-----+					
	Declension	Name of case	Declension of	Name of case	
	of <i>who?</i>	and use	<i>domina\</i>	and use	
			and translation		
+---+-----+-----+-----+-----					
-----+					
	<i>Who?</i>	Nominative--	<i>do'min-a</i>	Nominative--	
<i>S</i>		case of the	<i>_the lady_</i>	case of the	
<i>I</i>		subject		subject	
<i>N</i>					
<i>G</i>	<i>Whose?</i>	Possessive--	<i>domin-ae</i>	Genitive--	
<i>U</i>		case of the	<i>_the lady's_</i>	case of the	
<i>L</i>		possessor	<i>_of the lady_</i>	possessor	
<i>A</i>					
<i>R</i>	<i>Whom?</i>	Objective--	<i>domin-am</i>	Accusative--	
		case of the	<i>_the lady_</i>	case of the	
		object		direct object	
+---+-----+-----+-----+-----					
-----+					
	<i>Who?</i>	Nominative--	<i>domin-ae</i>	Nominative--	
		case of the	<i>_the ladies_</i>	case of the	
<i>P</i>		subject		subject	
<i>L</i>					
<i>U</i>	<i>Whose?</i>	Possessive--	<i>domin-a:'rum</i>	Genitive--	
<i>R</i>		case of the	<i>_the ladies'_</i>	case of the	
<i>A</i>		possessor	<i>_of the ladies_</i>	possessor	
<i>L</i>					
	<i>Whom?</i>	Objective--	<i>domin-a:s</i>	Accusative--	
		case of the	<i>_the ladies_</i>	case of the	
		object		direct object	



+--+-----+-----+-----+-----  
-----+

When the nominative singular of a noun ends in -a, observe that

- a. The nominative plural ends in -ae.
- b. The genitive singular ends in -ae and the genitive plural in -a:rum.
- c. The accusative singular ends in -am and the accusative plural in -a:s.
- d. The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending.



# Page 14

## 34. EXERCISE

Pronounce the following words and give their general meaning. Then give the number and case, and the use of each form. Where the same form stands for more than one case, give all the possible cases and uses.

1. Silva, silvas, silvam. 2. Fugam, fugae, fuga. 3. Terrarum, terrae, terras. 4. Aquas, causam, lunas. 5. Filiae, fortunae, lunae. 6. Iniurias, agricolarum, aquarum. 7. Iniuriarum, agricolae, puellas. 8. Nautam, agricolas, nautas. 9. Agricolam, puellam, silvarum.

## LESSON IV

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

[See Transcriber's Note at beginning of text.]

#### NOUNS

*dea*\, *\_goddess\_ (deity)*

*Dia:*'na, *\_Diana\_*

*fera*\, *a wild beast (fierce)*

*La:*to:'na, *Latona*

*sagit*'ta\, *\_arrow\_*

#### VERBS

*est*\, *\_he (she, it) is\_*; *sunt*\, *they are*

*necat*\, *\_he (she, it) kills, is killing, does kill\_*

#### CONJUNCTION[A]

*et*\, *\_and\_*

#### PRONOUNS

*quis*\, *interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., \_who?\_*

*cuius*\ (pronounced *c[oo]i'y[oo]s*, two syllables), *interrog.*

*pronoun, gen. sing., whose?*

[Footnote A: A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.]

35. We learned from the table (Sec. 33) that the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative correspond, in general, to the nominative, possessive, and objective in



English, and that they are used in the same way. This will be made even clearer by the following sentence:

Filia agricolae nautam amat,  
*the farmer's daughter (or the daughter of the farmer)*  
*loves the sailor*

What is the subject? the direct object? What case is used for the subject? for the direct object? What word denotes the possessor? In what case is it?

36. RULE. Nominative Subject. *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative and answers the question Who? or What?*

37. RULE. Accusative Object. *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative and answers the question Whom? or What?*

38. RULE. Genitive of the Possessor. *The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the Genitive and answers the question Whose?*

[Illustration: DIANA SAGITTAS PORTAT ET FERAS NECAT]

### 39. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. 1. Diana est dea. 2. Latona est dea. 3. Diana et Latona sunt deae. 4. Diana est dea lunae. 5. Diana est filia Latonae. 6. Latona Dianam amat. 7. Diana est dea silvarum. 8. Diana silvam amat. 9. Diana sagittas portat. 10. Diana feras silvae necat. 11. Ferae terrarum pugnant.

For the order of words imitate the Latin above.



## Page 15

II. 1. The daughter of Latona does love the forests. 2. Latona's daughter carries arrows. 3. The farmers' daughters do labor. 4. The farmer's daughter loves the waters of the forest. 5. The sailor is announcing the girls' flight. 6. The girls announce the sailors' wrongs. 7. The farmer's daughter labors. 8. Diana's arrows are killing the wild beasts of the land.

### 40. CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin. The answers may be found in the exercises preceding.

1. Quis est Diana? 2. Cuius filia est Diana? 3. Quis Dianam amat? 4. Quis silvam amat? 5. Quis sagittas portat? 6. Cuius filiae laborant?

## LESSON V

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

#### NOUNS

coro:'nal, *\_wreath, garland, crown\_*

fa:'bula, *\_story\_ (fable)*

pecu:'nia\, *money (pecuniary)*

pugna\, *\_battle\_ (pugnacious)*

victo:'ria\, *victory*

#### VERBS

dat\, *\_he (she, it) gives\_*

na:rrat, *\_he (she, it) tells\_ (narrate)*

#### CONJUNCTION[A]

quia\ or quod\, *because*

cui\ (*pronounced \_c[oo]i\_, one syllable*), *interrog. pronoun, dat.*

*sing., \_to whom?\_ \_for whom?\_*

[Footnote A: A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.]

41. The Dative Case. In addition to the relationships between words expressed by the nominative, genitive (possessive), and accusative (objective) cases, there are other relationships, to express which in English we use such words as *from, with, by, to, for, in, at*.<sup>[1]</sup>

[Footnote 1: Words like *to*, *for*, *by*, *from*, *in*, *etc.*, which define the relationship between words, are called *prepositions*.]

Latin, too, makes frequent use of such prepositions; but often it expresses these relations without them by means of case forms which English does not possess. One of the cases found in the Latin declension and lacking in English is called the *dative*.

42. When the nominative singular ends in -a, the dative singular ends in -ae and the dative plural in -i:s.

NOTE. Observe that the *genitive singular*, the *dative singular*, and the *nominative plural* all have the same ending, -ae; but the uses of the three cases are entirely different. The general meaning of the sentence usually makes clear which case is intended.

a. Form the dative singular and plural of the following nouns:  
*fuga*\, *causa*\, *fortuna*\, *terra*\, *aqua*\, *puella*\, *agricola*\,  
*nauta*\, *domina*\.

43. The Dative Relation. The dative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *to*, *towards*, *for*.





## Page 16

These prepositions are often used in English in expressions of motion, such as *She went to town*, *He ran towards the horse*, *Columbus sailed for America*. In such cases the dative is not used in Latin, as *motion through space* is foreign to the dative relation. But the dative is used to denote that *to* or *towards which* a benefit, injury, purpose, feeling, or quality is directed, or that *for which* something serves or exists.

a. What dative relations do you discover in the following?

The teacher gave a prize to John because he replied so promptly to all her questions—a good example for the rest of us. It is a pleasure to us to hear him recite. Latin is easy for him, but it is very hard for me. Some are fitted for one thing and others for another.

44. The Indirect Object. Examine the sentence

Nauta fugam nuntiat,  
*the sailor announces the flight*

Here the verb, *nuntiat*, governs the direct object, *fugam*, in the accusative case. If, however, we wish to mention the persons *to whom the sailor announces the flight*, as, *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers*, the verb will have two objects:

1. Its direct object, *flight* (*fugam*)
2. Its indirect object, *farmers*

According to the preceding section, *to the farmers* is a relation covered by the dative case, and we are prepared for the following rule:

45. RULE. Dative Indirect Object. *The indirect object of a verb is in the Dative.*

a. The indirect object usually stands before the direct object.

46. We may now complete the translation of the sentence *The sailor announces the flight to the farmers*, and we have

Nauta agricolis fugam nuntiat

47. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

*Point out the direct and indirect objects and the genitive of the possessor.*

I. 1. Quis nautis pecuniam dat? 2. Filiae agricolae nautis pecuniam dant. 3. Quis fortunam pugnae nuntiat? 4. Galba agricolis fortunam pugnae nuntiat. 5. Cui domina fabulam narrat? 6. Filiae agricolae domina fabulam narrat. 7. Quis Dianae coronam



dat? 8. Puella Dianae coronam dat quia Dianam amat. 9. Dea lunae sagittas portat et feras silvarum necat. 10. Cuius victoriam Galba nuntiat? 11. Nautae victoriam Galba nuntiat.

Imitate the word order of the preceding exercise.

II. 1. To whom do the girls give a wreath? 2. The girls give a wreath to Julia, because Julia loves wreaths. 3. The sailors tell the ladies[2] a story, because the ladies love stories. 4. The farmer gives his (Sec. 22.a) daughter water. 5. Galba announces the cause of the battle to the sailor. 6. The goddess of the moon loves the waters of the forest. 7. Whose wreath is Latona carrying? Diana's.



# Page 17

[Footnote 2: Observe that in English the indirect object often stands without a preposition *to* to mark it, especially when it precedes the direct object.]

## LESSON VI

### FIRST PRINCIPLES (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

ADJECTIVES *bona*\, *\_good\_* *gra:ta*\, *pleasing* *magna*\, *\_large, great\_* *mala*\, *bad, wicked* *parva*\, *\_small, little\_* *pulchra*\, *beautiful, pretty* *so:la*\, *\_alone\_*

NOUNS

*ancil'la*, *\_maidservant\_*

*Iu:lia*, *\_Julia\_*

ADVERBS[A]

*cu:r*\, *\_why\_*

*no:n*\, *not*

PRONOUNS

*mea*\, *\_my\_*; *tua*\, *thy, your* (possesives)

*quid*\, *interrog. pronoun, nom. and acc. sing., \_what?\_*

*/-ne*\, the question sign, an enclitic (Sec. 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as *amat*\, *\_he loves\_, but* *amat'ne*? *does he love?* *est*\, *\_he is\_*; *estne*? *is he?* Of course */-ne* is not used when the sentence contains *quis*\, *cu:r*\, or some other interrogative word.

[Footnote A: An *adverb* is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, She sings *sweetly*; she is *very* talented; she began to sing *very early*.]

48. The Ablative Case. Another case, lacking in English but found in the fuller Latin declension, is the *ab'la-tive*.

49. When the nominative singular ends in -a, the ablative singular ends in -a: and the ablative plural in -i:s.

a. Observe that the final -a of the nominative is short, while the final -a: of the ablative is long, as,



Nom. filia

Abl. filia:

b. Observe that the ablative plural is like the dative plural.

c. Form the ablative singular and plural of the following nouns:

*fugal*, *causal*, *fortunal*, *terra*, *aqua*, *puella*, *agricola*,  
*nauta*, *dominal*.

50. The Ablative Relation. The ablative case is used to express the relations conveyed in English by the prepositions *from*, *with*, *by*, *at*, *in*. It denotes

1. That from which something is separated, from which it starts, or of which it is deprived—generally translated by *from*.
2. That with which something is associated or by means of which it is done—translated by *with* or *by*.
3. The place where or the time when something happens—translated by *in* or *at*.

a. What ablative relations do you discover in the following?

## Page 18

In our class there are twenty boys and girls. Daily at eight o'clock they come from home with their books, and while they are at school they read with ease the books written by the Romans. By patience and perseverance all things in this world can be overcome.

51. Prepositions. While, as stated above (Sec. 41), many relations expressed in English by prepositions are in Latin expressed by case forms, still prepositions are of frequent occurrence, but only with the accusative or ablative.

52. RULE. Object of a Preposition. *A noun governed by a preposition must be in the Accusative or Ablative case.*

53. Prepositions denoting the ablative relations *from, with, in, on*, are naturally followed by the ablative case. Among these are

a:[1] or ab, *from, away from* de:, *from, down from* e:[1] or ex, *from, out from, out of* cum, *with in, in, on*

[Footnote 1: a:\ and e:\ are used only before words beginning with a consonant; ab\ and ex\ are used before either vowels or consonants.]

1. *Translate into Latin, using prepositions.* In the water, on the land, down from the forest, with the fortune, out of the forests, from the victory, out of the waters, with the sailors, down from the moon.

54. Adjectives. Examine the sentence

Puella parva bonam deam amat,  
*the little girl loves the good goddess*

In this sentence *parva* (*little*) and *bonam* (*good*) are not nouns, but are descriptive words expressing quality. Such words are called *adjectives*,[2] and they are said to belong to the noun which they describe.

[Footnote 2: *Pick out the adjectives in the following:* "When I was a little boy, I remember that one cold winter's morning I was accosted by a smiling man with an ax on his shoulder. 'My pretty boy,' said he, 'has your father a grindstone?' 'Yes, sir,' said I. 'You are a fine little fellow,' said he. 'Will you let me grind my ax on it?'" ]

You can tell by its ending to which noun an adjective belongs. The ending of *parva* shows that it belongs to *puella*, and the ending of *bonam* that it belongs to *deam*. Words that belong together are said to agree, and the belonging-together is called *agreement*. Observe that *the adjective and its noun agree in number and case*.

55. Examine the sentences



Puella est parva,

*the girl is little*

Puella parva bonam deam amat,

*the little girl loves the good goddess*

In the first sentence the adjective *parva* is separated from its noun by the verb and stands in the predicate. It is therefore called a *\_predicate adjective\_*. In the second sentence the adjectives *parva* and *bonam* are closely attached to the nouns *puella* and *deam* respectively, and are called *\_attributive adjectives\_*.



## Page 19

a. Pick out the attributive and the predicate adjectives in the following:

Do you think Latin is hard? Hard studies make strong brains. Lazy students dislike hard studies. We are not lazy.

### 56. DIALOGUE

## JULIA AND GALBA

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 283.

I. Quis, Galba, est Diana?

G. Diana, Iulia, est pulchra dea lunae et silvarum.

I. Cuius filia, Galba, est Diana?

G. Latonae filia, Iulia, est Diana.

I. Quid Diana portat?

G. Sagittas Diana portat.

I. Cur Diana sagittas portat?

G. Diana sagittas portat, Iulia, quod malas feras silvae magnae necat.

I. Amatne Latona filiam?

G. Amat, et filia Latonam amat.

I. Quid filia tua parva portat?

G. Coronas pulchras filia mea parva portat.

I. Cui filia tua coronas pulchras dat?

G. Dianae coronas dat.

I. Quis est cum filia tua? Estne sola?

G. Sola non est; filia mea parva est cum ancilla mea.

a. When a person is called or addressed, the case used is called the *voc'ative* (Latin *vocare*, "to call"). *In form the vocative is regularly like the nominative.* In English the name of the person addressed usually stands first in the sentence. *The Latin vocative rarely stands first.* Point out five examples of the vocative in this dialogue. b. Observe that questions answered by *yes* or *no* in English are answered in Latin by repeating the verb. Thus, if you wished to answer in Latin the question *Is the sailor fighting?* *Pugnatne nauta?* you would say *Pugnat*, *he is fighting*, or *Non pugnat*, *he is not fighting*.

## LESSON VII

### THE FIRST OR \_A: \_-DECLENSION

[Special Vocabulary]



#### NOUNS

*casa*, -ae\, f., *\_cottage\_*

*ce:na*, -ae, f., *\_dinner\_*

*galli:'na*, -ae\, f., *hen, chicken*

*i:n'sula*, ae\, f., *\_island\_ (pen-insula)*

#### ADVERBS

*de-in'del*, *\_then, in the next place\_*

*ubi\*, *where*

#### PREPOSITION

*ad\*, *\_to\_, with acc. to express motion toward*

#### PRONOUN

*quem\*, *interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., \_whom?\_*

#### VERBS

*ha'bitat*, *he (she, it) lives, is living, does live (inhabit)*

*laudat\*, *\_he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise\_ (laud)*

*parat\*, *he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare*

*vocat\*, *\_he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites,*

*is inviting, does invite\_ (vocation)*

57. In the preceding lessons we have now gone over all the cases, singular and plural, of nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a. All Latin nouns whose nominative singular ends in -a belong to the First Declension. It is also called the A-Declension because of the prominent part which the vowel *a* plays in the formation of the cases. We have also learned what relations are expressed by each case. These results are summarized in the following table:



# Page 20

+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
-----+			
CASE	NOUN	TRANSLATION	USE AND GENERAL MEANING
		OF EACH CASE	
+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
-----+			
		SINGULAR	
+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
-----+			
Nom.	do'min-a	<i>the lady</i>	The subject
Gen.	domin-ae	<i>of the lady,</i>	The possessor
		<i>or the lady's</i>	of something
Dat.	domin-ae	<i>to or for</i>	<i>Expressing the relation /</i>
/	/	<i>the lady</i>	<i>to or for,</i>
			especially the
			indirect object
Acc.	domin-am	<i>the lady</i>	The direct object
Abl.	domin-a:	<i>from, with, by,</i>	<i>Separation (from_),</i>
		<i>in, the lady_</i>	association or means
			( <i>with, by</i> ), place
			where or time when
		( <i>in, at</i> )	
+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
-----+			
		PLURAL	
+-----+-----+-----+-----+			
-----+			
Nom.	domin-ae	<i>the ladies</i>	
Gen.	domin-a:'rum	<i>of the ladies,</i>	
		<i>or the ladies'</i>	
Dat.	domin-i:s	<i>to or for</i>	<i>The same as</i>
/	/	<i>the ladies</i>	the singular
Acc.	domin-a:s	<i>the ladies</i>	



| Abl. | domin-i:s | *from, with, by,* |  
 | | | *in, the ladies* | |  
 +-----+-----+-----+-----+  
 -----+

58. The Base. That part of a word which remains unchanged in inflection and to which the terminations are added is called the base.

## Page 21

Thus, in the declension above, domin- is the base and -a is the termination of the nominative singular.

59. Write the declension of the following nouns, separating the base from the termination by a hyphen. Also give them orally.

*pugna\, terra\, luna\, ancil'la\, coro'na\, in'sula\, silva\*

60. Gender. In English, names of living beings are either masculine or feminine, and names of things without life are neuter. This is called *natural gender*. Yet in English there are some names of things to which we refer as if they were feminine; as, "Have you seen my yacht? *She* is a beauty." And there are some names of living beings to which we refer as if they were neuter; as, "Is the baby here? No, the nurse has taken *it* home." Some words, then, have a gender quite apart from sex or real gender, and this is called *grammatical gender*.

Latin, like English, has three genders. Names of males are usually masculine and of females feminine, but *names of things have grammatical gender and may be either masculine, feminine, or neuter*. Thus we have in Latin the three words, *lapis\, \_a stone\_*; *rupes\, a cliff*, and *saxum\, \_a rock\_*. *Lapis\* is *masculine*, *rupes\* *feminine*, and *saxum\* *neuter*. The gender can usually be determined by the ending of the word, and *must always be learned*, for without knowing the gender it is impossible to write correct Latin.

61. Gender of First-Declension Nouns. Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. Thus *silva\* is *feminine*, but *nauta\, sailor*, and *agricola\, \_farmer\_*, are *masculine*.

### 62. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

I. 1. Agricola cum filia in casa habitat. 2. Bona filia agricolae cenam parat. 3. Cena est grata agricolae[1] et agricola bonam filiam laudat. 4. Deinde filia agricolae gallinas ad cenam vocat. 5. Gallinae filiam agricolae amant. 6. Malae filiae bonas cenas non parant. 7. Filia agricolae est grata dominae. 8. Domina in insula magna habitat. 9. Domina bonae puellae parvae pecuniam dat.

II. 1. Where does the farmer live? 2. The farmer lives in the small cottage. 3. Who lives with the farmer? 4. (His) little daughter lives with the farmer. 5. (His) daughter is getting (parat) a good dinner for the farmer. 6. The farmer praises the good dinner. 7. The daughter's good dinner is pleasing to the farmer.

[Footnote 1: Note that the relation expressed by the dative case covers that *to which a feeling is directed*. (Cf. Sec. 43.)]

[Illustration]

What Latin words are suggested by this picture?

### 63. CONVERSATION

Answer the questions in Latin.

1. Quis cum agricola in casa habitat? 2. Quid bona filia agricolae parat? 3. Quem agricola laudat? 4. Vocatne filia agricolae gallinas ad cenam? 5. Cuius filia est grata dominae? 6. Cui domina pecuniam dat?

## LESSON VIII



## Page 22

### FIRST DECLENSION (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

#### NOUNS

*Italia*, -ae\, f., *\_Italy\_*

*Sicilia*, -ae\, f., *\_Sicily\_*

*tuba*, -ae\, f., *trumpet* (tube)

*via*, -ae\, f., *\_way, road, street\_* (viaduct)

ADJECTIVES *alta*\, *\_high, deep\_* (altitude) *cla:ra*\, *clear, bright; famous* *la:ta*\, *\_wide\_* (latitude) *longa*\, *long* (longitude) *nova*\, *\_new\_* (novelty)

\_64.\_ We have for some time now been using adjectives and nouns together and you have noticed an agreement between them in *\_case\_* and in *\_number\_* (Sec. 54). They agree also in *\_gender\_*. In the phrase *silva magna*\, we have a feminine adjective in -a agreeing with a feminine noun in -a.

65. RULE. Agreement of Adjectives. *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

66. Feminine adjectives in -a are declined like feminine nouns in -a, and you should learn to decline them together as follows:

#### NOUN ADJECTIVE

*domina* (BASE *domin-*), *bona* (BASE *bon-*),

f., *lady good*

#### SINGULAR

Nom. *do'mina*

Gen. *dominae*

Dat. *dominae*

Acc. *dominam*

Abl. *domina:*

#### TERMINATIONS

*bona* -a

*bonae* -ae

*bonae* -ae

*bonam* -am

*bona:* -a:

#### PLURAL

Nom. *dominae* *bonae* -ae

Gen. *domina:'rum* *bona:'rum* -a:rum

Dat. *domini:s* *boni:s* -i:s

Acc. *domina:s* *bona:s* -a:s

Abl. *domini:s* *boni:s* -i:s



a. In the same way decline together *puella mala*, *\_the bad girl\_*; *ancil'la parva*, *the little maid*; *fortu'na magna*, *\_great fortune\_*.

67. The words *dea*, *\_goddess\_*, and *filia*, *daughter*, take the ending -a:bus instead of -i:s in the *dative and ablative plural*. Note the *dative and ablative plural* in the following declension:

dea bona (BASES de- bon-)

SINGULAR	PLURAL
----------	--------

Nom. dea bona	deae bonae
Gen. deae bonae	dea:'rum bona:'rum
Dat. deae bonae	dea:'bus boni:s
Acc. deam bonam	dea:s bona:s
Abl. dea: bona:	dea'bus boni:s

a. In the same way decline together *filia parva*.

68. Latin Word Order. The order of words in English and in Latin sentences is not the same.

In English we arrange words in a fairly fixed order. Thus, in the sentence *My daughter is getting dinner for the farmers*, we cannot alter the order of the words without spoiling the sentence. We can, however, throw emphasis on different words by speaking them with more force. Try the effect of reading the sentence by putting special force on *my*, *daughter*, *dinner*, *farmers*.

In Latin, where the office of the word in the sentence is shown by its *ending* (cf. Sec. 32.1), and not by its *position*, the order of words is more free, and position is used to secure the same effect that in English is secured by emphasis of voice. To a limited extent we can alter the order of words in English, too, for the same purpose. Compare the sentences

## Page 23

*I saw a game of football at Chicago last November* (normal order)

*Last November\ I saw a game of football at Chicago\_*

*\_At Chicago, last November, I saw a game of /football\*

1. In a Latin sentence the most emphatic place is the *first*; next in importance is the *last*; the weakest point is the *middle*. Generally the *subject* is the most important word, and is placed *first*; usually the *verb* is the next in importance, and is placed *last*. The other words of the sentence stand between these two in the order of their importance. Hence the normal order of words—that is, where no unusual emphasis is expressed—is as follows:

*subject—modifiers of the subject—indirect object—  
direct object—adverb—verb*

Changes from the normal order are frequent, and are due to the desire for throwing emphasis upon some word or phrase. *Notice the order of the Latin words when you are translating, and imitate it when you are turning English into Latin.*

2. Possessive pronouns and modifying genitives normally stand after their nouns. When placed before their nouns they are emphatic, as

*filia mea, my daughter;  
mea filia, my\ daughter\_;  
casa Galbae, \_Galba's cottage\_;  
Galbae casa, \_/Galba's\ cottage\_.*

Notice the variety of emphasis produced by writing the following sentence in different ways:

*Filia mea agricolis cenam parat* (normal order)

*Mea filia agricolis parat cenam* (*meal and cenam\* emphatic)

*Agricolis filia mea cenam parat* (*agricolis\* emphatic)

3. An adjective placed before its noun is more emphatic than when it follows. When great emphasis is desired, the adjective is separated from its noun by other words.

*Filia mea casam parvam non amat* (*parvam\ not emphatic*)

*Filia mea parvam casam non amat* (*parvam\ more emphatic*)

*Parvam filia mea casam non amat* (*parvam\ very emphatic*)

4. Interrogative words usually stand first, the same as in English.



5. The copula (as est\, sunt\ ) is of so little importance that it frequently does not stand last, but may be placed wherever it sounds well.

#### 69. EXERCISE

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 284.

*Note the order of the words in these sentences and pick out those that are emphatic.*

1. Longae non sunt tuae viae. 2. Suntne tubae novae in mea casa? Non sunt. 3. Quis lata in silva habitat? Diana, lunae clarae pulchra dea, lata in silva habitat. 4. Nautae altas et latas amant aquas. 5. Quid ancilla tua portat? Ancilla mea tubam novam portat. 6. Ubi sunt Lesbia et Iulia? In tua casa est Lesbia et Iulia est in mea. 7. Estne Italia lata terra? Longa est Italia, non lata. 8. Cui Galba agricola fabulam novam narrat? Filiabus dominae clarae fabulam novam narrat. 9. Clara est insula Sicilia. 10. Quem laudat Latona? Latona laudat filiam.





# Page 24

\* \* \* \* \*

First Review of Vocabulary and Grammar, Secs. 502-505

\* \* \* \* \*

## LESSON IX

### THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

[Special Vocabulary]

#### NOUNS

*bellum*, -i:\, n., *\_war\_* (*re-bel*)  
*co:nstantia*, -ae\, f., *firmness, constancy, steadiness*  
*dominus*, -i:, m., *master, lord* (*dominate*)  
*equus*, -i:\, m., *\_horse\_* (*equine*)  
*fru:mentum*, -i:\, n., *grain*  
*le:ga:tus*, -i:\, m., *\_lieutenant, ambassador\_* (*legate*)  
*Ma:rcus*, -i:\, m., *Marcus, Mark*  
*mu:rus*, -i:\, m., *\_wall\_* (*mural*)  
*oppida:nus*, -i:\, m., *townsman*  
*oppidum*, -i:\, n., *\_town\_*  
*pi:lum*, -i:\, n., *spear* (*pile driver*)  
*servus*, -i:\, m., *\_slave, servant\_*  
*Sextus*, -i:, m., *\_Sextus\_*

#### VERBS

*cu:rat\*, *\_he (she, it) cares for\_, with acc.*  
*properat\*, *he (she, it) hastens*

70. Latin nouns are divided into five declensions.

The declension to which a noun belongs is shown by the ending of the genitive singular. This should always be learned along with the nominative and the gender.

71. The nominative singular of nouns of the Second or O-Declension ends in -us, -er, -ir, or -um. The genitive singular ends in -i:.

72. Gender. Nouns in -um are neuter. The others are regularly masculine.

73. Declension of nouns in -us and -um. Masculines in -us and neuters in -um are declined as follows:



dominus (BASE domin-), pi:lum (BASE pi:l-),  
m., *master* n., *spear*

#### TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS

##### SINGULAR

Nom. do'minus[1] -us pi:lum -um  
Gen. domini: -i: pi:li: -i:  
Dat. domino: -o: pi:lo: -o:  
Acc. dominum -um pi:lum -um  
Abl. domino: -o: pi:lo: -o:  
Voc. domine -e pi:lum -um

##### PLURAL

Nom. domini: -i: pi:la -a  
Gen. domino:'rum -o:rum pi:lo:'rum -o:rum  
Dat. domini:s -i:s pi:li:s -i:s  
Acc. domino:s -o:s pi:la -a  
Abl. domini:s -i:s pi:li:s -i:s

[Footnote 1: Compare the declension of *domina* and of *dominus*.]

a. Observe that the masculines and the neuters have the same terminations excepting in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The vocative singular of words of the second declension in -us ends in -e, as *domine*, *O master*; *serve*, *O slave*.  
This is the most important exception to the rule in Sec. 56.a.



## Page 25

74. Write side by side the declension of *dominal*, *dominus*, and *pilum*. A comparison of the forms will lead to the following rules, which are of great importance because they apply to all five declensions:

a. The vocative, with a single exception (see Sec. 73.b), is like the nominative. That is, the vocative singular is like the nominative singular, and the vocative plural is like the nominative plural.

b. The nominative, accusative, and vocative of neuter nouns are alike, and in the plural end in -a.

c. The accusative singular of masculines and feminines ends in -m and the accusative plural in -s.

d. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

e. Final -i and -o are always *long*; final -a is *short*, except in the ablative singular of the first declension.

75. Observe the sentences

Lesbia est bona,  
*Lesbia is good*  
Lesbia est ancilla,  
*Lesbia is a maidservant*

We have learned (Sec. 55) that *bona*, when used, as here, in the predicate to describe the subject, is called a *\_predicate adjective\_*. Similarly a *\_noun\_*, as *ancilla*, used in the predicate to define the subject is called a *predicate noun*.

76. RULE. Predicate Noun. A *predicate noun* agrees in case with the subject of the verb.

[Illustration: PILA]

77. DIALOGUE

## GALBA AND MARCUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

G. Quis, Marce, est legatus cum pilo et tuba?

M. Legatus, Galba, est Sextus.

G. Ubi Sextus habitat?[2]



M. In oppido Sextus cum filiabus habitat.

G. Amantne oppidani Sextum?

M. Amant oppidani Sextum et laudant, quod magna cum constantia pugnat.

G. Ubi, Marce, est ancilla tua? Cur non cenam parat?

M. Ancilla mea, Galba, equo legati aquam et frumentum dat.

G. Cur non servus Sexti equum domini curat?

M. Sextus et servus ad murum oppidi properant. Oppidani bellum parant.[3]

[Footnote 2: *habitat* is here translated *\_does live\_*. Note the *\_three\_* possible translations of the Latin present tense:

*habitat*

*he lives*

*he is living*

*he does live*

Always choose the translation which makes the best sense.]

[Footnote 3: Observe that the verb *parat* means *not only \_to prepare\_ but also \_to prepare for\_, and governs the accusative case.*]

[Illustration: LEGATUS CUM PILO ET TUBA]

## 78. CONVERSATION

Translate the questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Ubi filiae Sexti habitant? 2. Quem oppidani amant et laudant? 3. Quid ancilla equo legati dat? 4. Cuius equum ancilla curat? 5. Quis ad murum cum Sexto properat? 6. Quid oppidani parant?

## LESSON X



## Page 26

### SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *ami:cus*, -i:\, m., *\_friend\_* (*amicable*) *Germa:nia*, -ae\, f., *Germany* *patria*, -ae\, f., *\_fatherland\_* *populus*, -i:\, m., *people* *Rhe:nus*, -i:\, m., *\_the Rhine\_* *vi:cus*, -i:\, m., *village*

79. We have been freely using feminine adjectives, like *bona*\, *in agreement with feminine nouns of the first declension and declined like them*. *\_Masculine\_ adjectives of this class are declined like dominus*\, and *neuters like pilum*. The adjective and noun, masculine and neuter, are therefore declined as follows:

#### MASCULINE NOUN AND ADJECTIVE ADJECTIVE

*dominus bonus, the good master*

BASES *domin-* *bon-*

#### NEUTER NOUN AND ADJECTIVE

*pi:lum bonum, the good spear*

BASES *pi:l-* *bon-*

#### TERMINATIONS TERMINATIONS

##### SINGULAR

Nom. *do'minus bonus -us pi:lum bonum -um*

Gen. *domini: boni: -i: pi:li: boni: -i:*

Dat. *domino: bono: -o: pi:lo: bono: -o:*

Acc. *dominum bonum -um pi:lum bonum -um*

Abl. *domino: bono: -o: pi:lo: bono: -o:*

Voc. *domine bone -e pi:lum bonum -um*

##### PLURAL

Nom. *domini: boni: -i: pi:la bona -a*

Gen. *domino:'rum bono:'rum -o:rum pi:lo:'rum bono:'rum -o:rum*

Dat. *domini:s boni:s -is pi:li:s boni:s -i:s*

Acc. *domino:s bono:s -o:s pi:la bona -a*

Abl. *domini:s boni:s -i:s pi:li:s boni:s -i:s*

Decline together *bellum longum*\, *equus parvus*\, *servus malus*\, *murus altus*\, *frumentum novum*\.

80. Observe the sentences



Lesbia ancilla est bona,  
*Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*  
Filia Lesbiae ancillae est bona,  
*the daughter of Lesbia, the maidservant, is good*  
Servus Lesbiam ancillam amat,  
*the slave loves Lesbia, the maidservant*

In these sentences *ancilla*\, *ancillae*\, and *ancillam*\ denote the class of persons to which *Lesbia* belongs and explain who she is. Nouns so related that the second is only another name for the first and explains it are said to be in apposition, and are always in the same case.

81. RULE. Apposition. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.

## 82. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Patria servi boni, vicus servorum bonorum, bone popule. 2. Populus oppidi magni, in oppido magno, in oppidis magnis. 3. Cum pilis longis, ad pila longa, ad muros latos. 4. Legate male, amici legati mali, cena grata domino bono. 5. Frumentum equorum parvorum, domine bone, ad legatos claros. 6. Rhenus est in Germania, patria mea. 7. Sextus legatus pilum longum portat. 8. Oppidani boni Sexto legato clara pecuniam dant. 9. Mali servi equum bonum Marci domini necant. 10. Galba agricola et Iulia filia bona laborant. 11. Marcus nauta in insula Sicilia habitat.

## Page 27

II. 1. Wicked slave, who is your friend? Why does he not praise Galba, your master? 2. My friend is from (ex) a village of Germany, my fatherland. 3. My friend does not love the people of Italy. 4. Who is caring for<sup>[1]</sup> the good horse of Galba, the farmer? 5. Mark, where is Lesbia, the maidservant? 6. She is hastening<sup>[1]</sup> to the little cottage<sup>[2]</sup> of Julia, the farmer's daughter.

[Footnote 1: See footnote 1, p. 33. Remember that *curat* is transitive and governs a direct object.]

[Footnote 2: Not the dative. (Cf. Sec. 43.)]

## LESSON XI

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *arma*, *armo:rum*, *n.*, *plur.*, *\_arms\_*, especially defensive weapons *fa:ma*, *-ae*, *f.*, *rumor*; reputation, fame *galea*, *-ae*, *f.*, *\_helmet\_* *praeda*, *-ae*, *f.*, *booty*, *spoils* (predatory) *te:lum*, *-i*, *n.*, *\_weapon of offense, spear\_*

#### ADJECTIVES

*du:rus*, *-a*, *-um*, *hard*, *rough*; *unfeeling*, *cruel*; *severe*, *toilsome* (durable)

*Ro:ma:nus*, *-a*, *-um*, *\_Roman\_*. As a noun, *Ro:ma:nus*, *-i*, *m.*, *a Roman*

83. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the three genders as follows:

#### MASCULINE FEMININE NEUTER SINGULAR

Nom. *bonus bona bonum*  
Gen. *boni: bonae boni:*  
Dat. *bono: bonae bono:*  
Acc. *bonum bonam bonum*  
Abl. *bono: bona: bono:*  
Voc. *bone bona bonum*

#### PLURAL

Nom. *boni: bonae bona*  
Gen. *bono:rum bona:rum bono:rum*  
Dat. *boni:s boni:s boni:s*



Acc. bono:s      bona:s      bona  
Abl. boni:s      boni:s      boni:s

a. Write the declension and give it orally *across the page*, thus giving the three genders for each case.

b. Decline *gratus*, -a, -um\; *malus*, -a, -um\; *altus*, -a, -um\; *parvus*, -a, -um\.

84. Thus far the adjectives have had the same terminations as the nouns. However, the agreement between the adjective and its noun does *not* mean that they must have the same termination. If the adjective and the noun belong to different declensions, the terminations will, in many cases, not be the same. For example, *nauta*\, *\_sailor\_*, is *masculine and belongs to the first declension*. The masculine form of the adjective *bonus*\ is of the second declension. Consequently, *a good sailor* is *nauta bonus*\. So, *\_the wicked farmer\_* is *agricola malus*\. Learn the following declensions:

85. *nauta bonus* (bases *naut-* *bon-*), m., *the good sailor*





## Page 28

### SINGULAR

Nom. nauta	bonus
Gen. nautae	boni:
Dat. nautae	bono:
Acc. nautam	bonum
Abl. nauta:	bono:
Voc. nauta	bone

### PLURAL

Nom. nautae	boni:
Gen. nauta:rum	bono:rum
Dat. nauti:s	boni:s
Acc. nauta:s	bono:s
Abl. nauti:s	boni:s
Voc. nautae	boni:

### 86. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Est[1] in vico nauta bonus. 2. Sextus est amicus nautae boni. 3. Sextus nautae bono galeam dat. 4. Populus Romanus nautam bonum laudat. 5. Sextus cum nauta bono praedam portat. 6. Ubi, nauta bone, sunt anna et tela legati Romani? 7. Nautae boni ad bellum properant. 8. Fama nautarum bonorum est clara. 9. Pugnae sunt gratae nautis bonis. 10. Oppidani nautas bonos curant. 11. Cur, nautae boni, mali agricolae ad Rhenum properant? 12. Mali agricolae cum bonis nautis pugnant.

II. 1. The wicked farmer is hastening to the village with (his) booty. 2. The reputation of the wicked farmer is not good. 3. Why does Galba's daughter give arms and weapons to the wicked farmer? 4. Lesbia invites the good sailor to dinner. 5. Why is Lesbia with the good sailor hastening from the cottage? 6. Sextus, where is my helmet? 7. The good sailors are hastening to the toilsome battle. 8. The horses of the wicked farmers are small. 9. The Roman people give money to the good sailors. 10. Friends care for the good sailors. 11. Whose friends are fighting with the wicked farmers?

[Footnote 1: *Est*], beginning a declarative sentence, *there is.*]

[Illustration: GALEAE]

## LESSON XII

NOUNS IN *-IUS* AND *-IUM*



## [Special Vocabulary]

## NOUNS

*fi:lius, fi:li:\, m., \_son\_ (filial)*

*fluvi:us, fluvi:\, m., \_river\_ (fluent)*

*gladius, gladi:\, m., sword (gladiator)*

*praesidium, praesi'di:\, n., \_garrison, guard, protection\_*

*proelium, proeli:\, n., battle*

## ADJECTIVES

*fi:nitimus, -a, -um\, \_bordering upon, neighboring, near to\_.*

*As a noun, fi:nitimi:, -o:rum\, m., plur., neighbors*

*Germa:nus, -a, -um\, \_German\_. As a noun, Germa:nus, -i:\, m.,  
a German*

*multus, -a, -um\, \_much\_; plur., \_many\_*

## ADVERB

*saepe\, \_often\_*

87. Nouns of the second declension in -ius and -ium end in -i: in the genitive singular, *not* in -ii:, and the accent rests on the penult; as, *fi:li:\ from fi:lius\ (son), praesi'di:\ from praesi'dium\ (garrison).*

88. Proper names of persons in -ius, and *fi:lius\, end in -i: in the vocative singular, \_not\_ in -e, and the accent rests on the penult; as, Vergi'li:\, O Vergil; fi:li:\, \_O son.\_*

a. Observe that in these words the vocative and the genitive are alike.

## Page 29

89. praesidium (base praesidi-), fi:lius (base fi:li-),  
n., *garrison* m., *son*

### SINGULAR

Nom. praesidium	fi:lius
Gen. praesi'di:	fi:li:
Dat. praesidio:	fi:lio:
Acc. praesidium	fi:lium
Abl. praesidio:	fi:lio:
Voc. praesidium	fi:li:

The plural is regular. Note that the -i- of the base is lost only in the genitive singular, and in the vocative of words like *filius*.

Decline together *praesidium parvum*\; *filius bonus*\; *fluvius longus*\, *\_the long river\_*;  
*proelium clarum*\, *the famous battle*.

### 90. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 285.

I. 1. Frumentum bonae terrae, gladi mali, belli longi. 2. Constantia magna, praesidia magna, clare Vergili. 3. Male serve, O clarum oppidum, male fili, filii mali, fili mali. 4. Fluvi longi, fluvii longi, fluviorum longorum, fama praesi'di magni. 5. Cum gladiis parvis, cum deabus claris, ad nautas claros. 6. Multorum proeliorum, praedae magnae, ad proelia dura.

## GERMANIA

II. Germania, patria Germanorum, est clara terra. In Germania sunt fluvii multi. Rhenus magnus et latus fluvius Germaniae est. In silvis latis Germaniae sunt ferae multae. Multi Germanii in oppidis magnis et in vicis parvis habitant et multi sunt agricolae boni. Bella Germanorum sunt magna et clara. Populus Germaniae bellum et proelia amat et saepe cum finitimis pugnat. Fluvius Rhenus est finitimus oppidis[1] multis et claris.

[Footnote 1: Dative with *finitimus*\. (See Sec. 43.)]

## LESSON XIII

SECOND DECLENSION (*Continued*)



[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS

*ager, agri:\, m., \_field\_ (acre)*

*co:pia, -ae\, f., plenty, abundance (copious); plur., troops, forces*

*Corne:lius, Corne:'li:\, m., \_Cornelius\_*

*lo:ri:'ca, -ae\, f., coat of mail, corselet*

*praemium, praemi:\, n., \_reward, prize\_ (premium)*

*puer, pueri:\, m., boy (puerile)*

*Ro:ma, -ae\, f., \_Rome\_*

*scu:tum, -i:\, n., shield (escutcheon)*

*vir, viri:\, m., \_man, hero\_ (virile)*

ADJECTIVES

*legio:na:rius, -a, -um\,[A] \_legionary, belonging to the legion\_.*

*As a noun, legio:na:rii:, -o:rum\, m., plur., legionary soldiers*

*li:ber, li:bera, li:berum\, \_free\_ (liberty) As a noun. li:beri:, -o:rum\,*

*m., plur., children (lit. the freeborn)*

*pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum\, \_pretty, beautiful\_*

PREPOSITION

*apud\, \_among\_, with acc.*

CONJUNCTION

*sed\, \_but\_*

## Page 30

[Footnote A: The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in -ius ends in -ii: and the vocative in -ie; not in -i:, as in nouns.]

91. Declension of Nouns in *-er* and *-ir*. In early Latin all the masculine nouns of the second declension ended in -os. This -os later became -us in words like *servus*, and was dropped entirely in words with bases ending in -r, like *puer*, boy; *ager*, field; and *vir*, man. These words are therefore declined as follows:

92. *puer*, m., boy *ager*, m., field *vir*, m., man  
 BASE *puer-* BASE *agr-* BASE *vir-*

SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS	
Nom. <i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	—
Gen. <i>pueri:</i>	<i>agri:</i>	<i>viri:</i>	-i:
Dat. <i>puero:</i>	<i>agro:</i>	<i>viro:</i>	-o:
Acc. <i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	-um
Abl. <i>puero:</i>	<i>agro:</i>	<i>viro:</i>	-o:
PLURAL			
Nom. <i>pueri:</i>	<i>agri:</i>	<i>viri:</i>	-i:
Gen. <i>puero:rum</i>	<i>agro:rum</i>	<i>viro:rum</i>	-o:rum
Dat. <i>pueri:s</i>	<i>agri:s</i>	<i>viri:s</i>	-i:s
Acc. <i>puero:s</i>	<i>agro:s</i>	<i>viro:s</i>	-o:s
Abl. <i>pueri:s</i>	<i>agri:s</i>	<i>viri:s</i>	-i:s

a. The vocative case of these words is like the nominative, following the general rule (Sec. 74.a).

b. The declension differs from that of *servus* only in the nominative and vocative singular.

c. Note that in *puer* the *e* remains all the way through, while in *ager* it is present only in the nominative. In *puer* the *e* belongs to the base, but in *ager* (base *agr-*) it does not, and was inserted in the nominative to make it easier to pronounce. Most words in -er are declined like *ager*. *The genitive shows whether you are to follow puer or ager.*

93. Masculine adjectives in -er of the second declension are declined like nouns in -er. A few of them are declined like *puer*, but most of them like *ager*. *The feminine and neuter nominatives show which form to follow, thus,*



MASC. FEM. NEUT.

liber libera liberum (*free*)

is like *puer*\

*pulcher pulchra pulchrum* (*\_pretty\_*)

is like *ager*\

For the full declension in the three genders, see Sec. 469.\_b.\_ c.

94. Decline together the words *vir liber*\, *terra libera*\, *frumentum liberum*\, *puer pulcher*\, *puella pulchra*\, *oppidum pulchrum*\

95. ITALIA[1]

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

Magna est Italiae fama, patriae Romanorum, et clara est Roma, domina orbis terrarum.

[2] Tiberim,[3] fluvium Romanum, quis non laudat et pulchros fluvio finitimos agros?

Altos muros, longa et dura bella, claras victorias quis non laudat? Pulchra est terra

Italia. Agri boni agricolis praemia dant magna, et equi agricolarum copiam frumenti ad

oppida et vicos portant. In agris populi Romani laborant multi servi. Viae Italiae sunt

longae et latae. Finitima Italiae est insula Sicilia.

## Page 31

[Footnote 1: In this selection note especially the emphasis as shown by the order of the words.]

[Footnote 2: *orbis terrarum*\, *\_of the world\_*.]

[Footnote 3: *Tiberim*\, *\_the Tiber\_*, *accusative case*.]

### 96. DIALOGUE

## MARCUS AND CORNELIUS

C. Ubi est, Marce, filius tuus? Estne in pulchra terra Italia?

M. Non est, Corneli, in Italia. Ad fluvium Rhenum properat cum copiis Romanis quia est[4] fama Novi belli cum Germanis. Liber Germaniae populus Romanos Non amat.

C. Estne filius tuus copiarum Romanarum legatus?

M. Legatus non est, sed est apud legionarios.

C. Quae[5] arma portat[6]?

M. Scutum magnum et lorica duram et galeam pulchram portat.

C. Quae tela portat?

M. Gladium et pilum longum portat.

C. Amatne legatus filium tuum?

M. Amat, et saepe filio meo praemia pulchra et praedam multam dat.

C. Ubi est terra Germanorum?

M. Terra Germanorum, Corneli est finitima Rheno, fluvio magno et alto.

[Footnote 4: *est*\, *before its subject*, *\_there is\_*; *so sunt*\, *there are*.]

[Footnote 5: *Quae*\, *\_what kind of\_*, *an interrogative adjective pronoun*.]

[Footnote 6: What are the three possible translations of the present tense?]

[Illustration: LEGIONARIUS]

### LESSON XIV

## THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

[Special Vocabulary]



## NOUNS

*auxilium*, *auxi'li:l\*, *n.*, *\_help, aid\_ (auxiliary)*  
*castrum*, *-i:l\*, *n.*, *fort* (castle); plur., *camp* (lit. *forts*)  
*cibus*, *-i:l\*, *m.*, *\_food\_*  
*co:nsilium*, *co:nsi'li:l\*, *n.*, *plan* (counsel)  
*di:ligentia*, *-ael\*, *f.*, *\_diligence, industry\_*  
*magister*, *magistri:*, *m.*, *\_master, teacher\_[A]*

ADJECTIVES *aeger*, *aegra*, *aegrum\*, *\_sick\_* *cre:ber*, *cre:bra*, *cre:brum\*, *frequent miser*, *misera*, *miserum\*, *\_wretched, unfortunate\_ (miser)*

[Footnote A: Observe that *dominus\*, as distinguished from *magister\*, means *\_master\_ in the sense of \_owner\_.*]

97. Observe the sentences

*This is my shield*  
*This shield is mine*

In the first sentence *my* is a possessive adjective; in the second *mine* is a possessive pronoun, for it takes the place of a noun, *this shield is mine* being equivalent to *this shield is my shield*. Similarly, in Latin the possessives are sometimes *adjectives* and sometimes *pronouns*.

98. The possessives *my*, *mine*, *your*, *yours*, *etc.* are declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions.





## Page 32

### SINGULAR

1st Pers. meus, mea, meum *my, mine*

2d Pers. tuus, tua, tuum *your, yours*

3d Pers. suus, sua, suum *his (own), her (own), its (own)*

### PLURAL

1st Pers. noster, nostra, nostrum *our, ours*

2d Pers. vester, vestra, vestrum *your, yours*

3d Pers. suus, sua, suum *their (own), theirs*

NOTE. *Meus* has the irregular vocative singular masculine *mi:*, as *mi: fili:*, *\_O my son\_*.

a. The possessives agree with the name of the *thing* possessed in gender, number, and case. Compare the English and Latin in

*Sextus is calling /his\ boy Sextus* } suum puerum vocat  
*Julia is calling /her\ boy Iulia* }

Observe that *suum* agrees with *puerum*, and is unaffected by the gender of *Sextus* or *Julia*.

b. When *your, yours*, refers to *one* person, use *tuus*; when to *\_more than one\_*, *vester*; as,

*Lesbia, your wreaths are pretty*  
 Coronae tuae, Lesbia, sunt pulchrae  
*Girls, your wreaths are pretty*  
 Coronae vestrae, puellae, sunt pulchrae

c. *Suus* is a *\_reflexive\_* possessive, that is, it usually stands in the predicate and regularly refers back to the *\_subject\_*. Thus, *Vir suos servos vocat* means *The man calls his (own) slaves*. Here *his* (*suos*) refers to *man* (*vir*), and could not refer to any one else. d. Possessives are used much less frequently than in English, being omitted whenever the meaning is clear without them. (Cf. Sec. 22.a.) This is especially true of *suus*, *-a*, *-um*, which, when inserted, is more or less emphatic, like our *\_his own, her own\_, etc.*

### \_99.\_ EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

1. Marcus amico Sexto consilium suum nuntiat 2. Est copia frumenti in agris nostris.  
 3. Amici mei bonam cenam ancillae vestrae laudant 4. Tua lorica, mi fili, est dura. 5.  
 Scuta nostra et tela, mi amice, in castris Romanis sunt. 6. Suntne viri patriae tuae



liberi? Sunt. 7. Ubi, Corneli, est tua galea pulchra? 8. Mea galea, Sexte, est in casa mea. 9. Pilum longum est tuum, sed gladius est meus. 10. Iulia gallinas suas pulchras amat et gallinae dominam suam amant. 11. Nostra castra sunt vestra. 12. Est copia praedae in castris vestris. 13. Amici tui miseris et aegris cibum et pecuniam saepe dant.

II. 1. Our teacher praises Mark's industry. 2. My son Sextus is carrying his booty to the Roman camp.[1] 3. Your good girls are giving aid to the sick and wretched.[2] 4. There are [3] frequent battles in our villages. 5. My son, where is the lieutenant's food? 6. The camp is mine, but the weapons are yours.



## Page 33

[Footnote 1: Not the dative. Why?]

[Footnote 2: Here the adjectives *sick* and *wretched* are used like nouns.]

[Footnote 3: Where should *sunt* stand? Cf. I. 2 above.]

[Illustration: AGRICOLA ARAT]

## LESSON XV

### THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *WITH*

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *carrus*, -i:\, m., *cart, wagon* inopia, -ae\, f., *want, lack*; the opposite of *co:pia*  
studium, studi:\, n., *zeal, eagerness* (study)

#### ADJECTIVES

*arma:tus*, -a, -um\, *armed*

*i:nfi:rmi*, -a, -um\, *weak, feeble* (infirm)

*vali'dus*, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy*

#### VERB

*ma:tu:rat*\, *he (she, it) hastens.* Cf. *properat*

#### ADVERB

*iam*\, *already, now*

*-que*\, conjunction, *and*; an enclitic (cf. Sec. 16) and always added to the *second* of two words to be connected, as *arma tela'que*, *arms and weapons*.

100. Of the various relations denoted by the ablative case (Sec. 50) there is none more important than that expressed in English by the preposition *with*. This little word is not so simple as it looks. It does not always convey the same meaning, nor is it always to be translated by *cum*. This will become clear from the following sentences:

a. Mark is feeble *with* (for or because of) want of food b. Diana kills the beasts *with* (or by) her arrows c. Julia is *with* Sextus d. The men fight *with* great steadiness. In sentence a, *with want (of food)* gives the cause of Mark's feebleness. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the *ablative of cause*:

Marcus est infirmus inopia cibi

*b. In sentence b, with (or by) her arrows tells by means of what\ Diana kills the beasts. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative without a preposition, and the construction is called the ablative of means\:*

Diana sagittis suis feras necat

*c. In sentence c we are told that Julia is not alone, but in company with\ Sextus. This idea is expressed in Latin by the ablative with the preposition cum\, and the construction is called the ablative of accompaniment\:*

Iulia est cum Sexto

*d. In sentence d we are told how the men fight. The idea is one of manner\.* This is expressed in Latin by the ablative with cum\, unless there is a modifying adjective present, in which case cum\ may be omitted. This construction is called the ablative of manner\:

Viri (cum) constantia magna pugnant



## Page 34

101. You are now able to form four important rules for the ablative denoting *with*:

102. RULE. Ablative of Cause. *Cause is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question Because of what?*

103. RULE. Ablative of Means. *Means is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question By means of what? With what?*

N.B. *Cum\* must never be used with the ablative expressing cause or means.

104. RULE. Ablative of Accompaniment. *Accompaniment is denoted by the ablative with /cum\.* This answers the question *With whom?*

105. RULE. Ablative of Manner. *The ablative with /cum\ is used to denote the manner of an action. /Cum\ may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question How? In what manner?*

106. What uses of the ablative do you discover in the following passage, and what question does each answer?

The soldiers marched to the fort with great speed and broke down the gate with blows of their muskets. The inhabitants, terrified by the din, attempted to cross the river with their wives and children, but the stream was swollen with (or by) the rain. Because of this many were swept away by the waters and only a few, almost overcome with fatigue, with great difficulty succeeded in gaining the farther shore.

### 107. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 286.

I. *The Romans prepare for War.* Romani, clarus Italiae populus, bellum parant. Ex agris suis, vicis, oppidisque magno studio viri validi ad arma properant. Iam legati cum legionariis ex Italia ad Rhenum, fluvium Germaniae altum et latum, properant, et servi equis et carris cibum frumentumque ad castra Romana portant. Inopia bonorum telorum infirmi sunt Germani, sed Romani armati galeis, loricis, scutis, gladiis, pilisque sunt validi.

II. 1. The sturdy farmers of Italy labor in the fields with great diligence. 2. Sextus, the lieutenant, and (his) son Mark are fighting with the Germans. 3. The Roman legionaries are armed with long spears. 4. Where is Lesbia, your maid, Sextus? Lesbia is with my friends in Galba's cottage. 5. Many are sick because of bad water and for lack of food. 6. The Germans, with (their) sons and daughters, are hastening with horses and wagons.



## LESSON XVI

### THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

108. There are nine irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions which have a peculiar termination in the genitive and dative singular of all genders:

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Gen. -i:us	-i:us	-i:us
Dat. -i:	-i:	-i:

Otherwise they are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um\.. *Learn the list and the meaning of each:*



## Page 35

*alius, alia, aliud\, \_other, another\_ (of several) alter, altera, alterum\, the one, the other (of two) u:nus, -a, -um\, \_one, alone\_ ; (in the plural) \_only\_ u:llus, -a, -um\, any nu:llus, -a, -um\, \_none, no\_ so:lus, -a, -um\, alone to:tus, -a, -um\, \_all, whole, entire\_ uter, utra, utrum\, which? (of two) neuter, neutra, neutrum\, \_neither\_ (of two)*

### \_109.\_ PARADIGMS

#### SINGULAR

##### MASC. FEM. NEUT.

Nom. nu:llus nu:lla nu:llum

Gen. nu:lli:'us nu:lli:'us nu:lli:'us

Dat. nu:lli: nu:lli: nu:lli:

Acc. nu:llum nu:llam nu:llum

Abl. nu:llo: nu:lla: nu:llo:

##### MASC. FEM. NEUT.

Nom. alius alia aliud

Gen. ali:'us ali:'us ali:'us

Dat. alii: alii: alii:

Acc. alium aliam aliud

Abl. alio: alia: alio:

### THE PLURAL IS REGULAR

a. Note the peculiar neuter singular ending in -d of *alius*.  
The *genitive* ali:us\ is rare. Instead of it use *alteri:us*, the *genitive* of alter\.

b. These peculiar case endings are found also in the declension of pronouns (see Sec. 114). For this reason these adjectives are sometimes called the *pronominal adjectives*.\.

### 110. Learn the following idioms:

*alter, -era, -erum\ ... alter, -era, -erum\, the one ... the other*  
(of two)

*alius, -a, -ud\ ... alius, -a, -ud\, one ... another* (of any number)

*alii, -ae, -a\ ... alii, -ae, -a\, some ... others*



## EXAMPLES

1. Alterum oppidum est magnum, alterum parvum, *the one town is large, the other small* (of two towns).
2. Aliud oppidum est validum, aliud infirmum, *one town is strong, another weak* (of towns in general).
3. Alii gladios, alii scuta portant, *some carry swords, others shields*.

### 111. EXERCISES

I. 1. In utra casa est Iulia? Iulia est in neutra casa. 2. Nulli malo puero praemium dat magister. 3. Alter puer est nauta, alter agricola. 4. Alii viri aquam, alii terram amant. 5. Galba unus (or solus) cum studio laborat. 6. Estne ullus carrus in agro meo? 7. Lesbia est ancilla alterius domini, Tullia alterius. 8. Lesbia sola cenam parat. 9. Cena nullius alterius ancillae est bona. 10. Lesbia nulli alii viro cenam dat.

NOTE. The pronominal adjectives, as you observe, regularly stand before and not after their nouns.

II. 1. The men of all Germany are preparing for war. 2. Some towns are great and others are small. 3. One boy likes chickens, another horses. 4. Already the booty of one town is in our fort. 5. Our whole village is suffering for (i.e. *weak because of*) lack of food. 6. The people are already hastening to the other town. 7. Among the Romans (there) is no lack of grain.





# Page 36

## LESSON XVII

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS, EA, ID*

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *agri: cultu:ra, -ae\, f., \_agriculture\_ Gallia, -ae\, f., Gaul domicili:um, domi:ci'li:\, n., \_dwelling place\_ (domicile), \_abode\_ Gallus, -i\, m., a Gaul lacrima, -ae\, f., \_tear\_ fe:mina, -ae\, f., woman (female) numerus, -i:\, m., \_number\_ (numeral)*

ADJECTIVE

*ma:tu:rus, -a, -um\, ripe, mature*

ADVERB

*quo:, whither*

VERBS

*arat, he (she, it) plows (arable)*

*de:si:derat\, \_he (she, it) misses, longs for\_ (desire), with acc.*

CONJUNCTION

*an\, \_or\_, introducing the second half of a double question, as*

*\_Is he a Roman or a Gaul\_, Estne Romanus an Gallus?\*

112. A demonstrative is a word that points out an object definitely, as *this, that, these, those*. Sometimes these words are pronouns, as, *Do you hear these?* and sometimes adjectives, as, *Do you hear these men?* In the former case they are called *demonstrative pronouns\, in the latter demonstrative adjectives\*.

113. Demonstratives are similarly used in Latin both as *pronouns* and as *adjectives*. The one used most is

*is\, masculine; ea\, feminine; id\, neuter*

*SINGULAR: \_this, that\_; PLURAL: \_these, those\_*

114. *Is\ is declined as follows. Compare its declension with that of alius\, Sec. 109.*

BASE e-

SINGULAR PLURAL

MASC. FEM. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT.

Nom. is ea id ei: eae ea

(or ii:)

Gen. eius eius eius eo:rum ea:rum eo:rum



Dat. ei: ei: ei: ei:s ei:s ei:s  
(or ii:s ii:s ii:s)  
Acc. eum eam id eo:s ea:s ea  
Abl. eo: ea: eo: ei:s ei:s ei:s  
(or ii:s ii:s ii:s)

Note that the base e- changes to i- in a few cases. The genitive singular *eius* is pronounced *\_eh'yus\_*. In the plural the forms with two i's are preferred and the two i's are pronounced as one. Hence, pronounce ii:\ as i:\ and ii:s\ as i:s\.

115. Besides being used as demonstrative pronouns and adjectives the Latin demonstratives are regularly used for the personal pronoun *he, she, it*. As a personal pronoun, then, *is* would have the following meanings:

#### SINGULAR

Nom. is, *he*; ea, *she*; id, *it*  
Gen. eius, *of him or his*;  
      eius, *of her, her, or hers*;  
      eius, *of it or its*  
Dat. ei:, *to or for him*;  
      ei:, *to or for her*;

## Page 37

ei:, *to or for it*  
Acc. eum, *him*; eam, *her*; id, *it*  
Abl. eo:, *with, from, etc., him*;  
    ea:, *with, from, etc., her*;  
    eo:, *with, from, etc., it*

### PLURAL

Nom. ei: or ii:, eae, ea, *they*  
Gen. eo:rum, ea:rum, eo:rum, *of them, their*  
Dat. ei:s or ii:s, ei:s or ii:s, ei:s or ii:s,  
    *to or for them*  
Acc. eo:s, ea:s, ea, *them*  
Abl. ei:s or ii:s, ei:s or ii:s, ei:s or ii:s,  
    *with, from, etc., them*

116. Comparison between *suus* and *is*. We learned above (Sec. 98.c) that *suus* is a *\_reflexive\_ possessive*. When *\_his, her\_* (poss.), *\_its, their\_*, do not refer to the subject of the sentence, we express *\_his, her, its\_* by *eius*, the genitive singular of *is*, *ea*, *id*; and *\_their\_* by the genitive plural, using *eorum* to refer to a masculine or neuter antecedent noun and *earum* to refer to a feminine one.

## EXAMPLES

*Galba calls his (own) son,*  
Galba suum filium vocat  
*Galba calls his son (not his own, but another's),*  
Galba eius filium vocat  
*Julia calls her (own) children,*  
Iulia suos liberos vocat  
*Julia calls her children (not her own, but another's),*  
Iulia eius liberos vocat  
*The men praise their (own) boys,*  
viri suos pueros laudant  
*The men praise their boys (not their own, but others'),*  
viri eorum pueros laudant

### 117. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.



1. He praises her, him, it, them. 2. This cart, that report, these teachers, those women, that abode, these abodes. 3. That strong garrison, among those weak and sick women, that want of firmness, those frequent plans.

4. The other woman is calling her chickens (*her own*). 5. Another woman is calling her chickens (*not her own*). 6. The Gaul praises his arms (*his own*). 7. The Gaul praises his arms (*not his own*). 8. This farmer often plows their fields. 9. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*their own*). 10. Those wretched slaves long for their master (*not their own*). 11. Free men love their own fatherland. 12. They love its villages and towns.

118. DIALOGUE[1]

## CORNELIUS AND MARCUS

M. Quis est vir, Corneli, cum puero parvo? Estne Romanus et liber?

C. Romanus non est, Marce. Is vir est servus et eius domicilium est in silvis Galliae.

M. Estne puer filius eius servi an alterius?

C. Neutrius filius est puer. Is est filius legati Sexti.

M. Quo puer cum eo servo properat?



## Page 38

C. Is cum servo properat ad latos Sexti agros.[2] Totum frumentum est iam maturum et magnus servorum numerus in Italiae[3] agris laborat.

M. Agricolaene sunt Galli et patriae suae agros arant?

C. Non agricolae sunt. Bellum amant Galli, non agri culturam. Apud eos viri pugnant et feminae auxilio liberorum agros arant parantque cibum.

M. Magister noster pueris puellisque gratas Gallorum fabulas saepe narrat et laudat eos saepe.

C. Mala est fortuna eorum et saepe miseri servi multis cum lacrimis patriam suam desiderant.

[Footnote 1: There are a number of departures from the normal order in this dialogue. Find them, and give the reason.]

[Footnote 2: When a noun is modified by both a genitive and an adjective, a favorite order of words is *adjective, genitive, noun*.]

[Footnote 3: A modifying genitive often stands between a preposition and its object.]

\* \* \* \* \*

Second Review, Lessons IX-XVII, Secs. 506-509

\* \* \* \* \*

### LESSON XVIII

#### CONJUGATION

#### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES OF SUMI

[Special Vocabulary]

#### NOUNS

lu:dus, -i:, m., *\_school\_*

socius, soci:\, m., *\_companion, ally\_ (social)*

#### ADJECTIVES

i:ra:tus, -a, -um\, *\_angry, furious\_ (irate)*

laetus, -a, -um\, *happy, glad (social)*



## ADVERBS

hodie:, *to-day*

ibi\, *\_there, in that place\_*

mox, *\_presently, soon\_, of the immediate future*

nunc\, *now, the present moment*

nu:per\, *\_lately, recently\_, of the immediate past*

119. The inflection of a verb is called its *conjugation* (cf. Sec. 23). In English the verb has but few changes in form, the different meanings being expressed by the use of personal pronouns and auxiliaries, as, *I am carried, we have carried, they shall have carried, etc.* In Latin, on the other hand, instead of using personal pronouns and auxiliary verbs, the form changes with the meaning. In this way the Romans expressed differences in *tense, mood, voice, person, and number.*

120. The Tenses. The different forms of a verb referring to different times are called its *tenses*. The chief distinctions of time are present, past, and future:

1. *The present\, that is, \_what is happening now\_, or \_what usually happens\_, is expressed by  
THE PRESENT TENSE*
2. *The past\, that is, \_what was happening, used to happen, happened, has happened\_, or \_had happened\_, is expressed by  
THE IMPERFECT, PERFECT, AND PLUPERFECT TENSES*
3. *The future\, that is, \_what is going to happen\_, is expressed by  
THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT TENSES*

## Page 39

121. The Moods. Verbs have inflection of *mood* to indicate the manner in which they express action. The moods of the Latin verb are the *indicative*, *subjunctive*, *imperative*, and *infinitive*.

a. A verb is in the *indicative* mood when it makes a statement or asks a question about something assumed as a fact. All the verbs we have used thus far are in the present indicative.

122. The Persons. There are three persons, as in English. The first person is the person speaking (*I sing*); the second person the person spoken to (*you sing*); the third person the person spoken of (*he sings*). Instead of using personal pronouns for the different persons in the two numbers, singular and plural, the Latin verb uses the personal endings (cf. Sec. 22 a; 29). We have already learned that -t is the ending of the third person singular in the active voice and -nt of the third person plural. The complete list of personal endings of the active voice is as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Pers. <i>I</i>	-m or -o: <i>we</i> -mus
2d Pers. <i>thou</i> or <i>you</i> -s	<i>you</i> -tis
3d Pers. <i>he, she, it</i> -t	<i>they</i> -nt

123. Most verbs form their moods and tenses after a regular plan and are called *regular* verbs. Verbs that depart from this plan are called *irregular*. The verb *to be* is irregular in Latin as in English. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Pers. <i>su-m, I am</i>	<i>su-mus, we are</i>
2d Pers. <i>e-s, you[1] are</i>	<i>es-tis, you[1] are</i>
3d Pers. <i>es-t, he, she, or it is</i>	<i>su-nt, they are</i>

### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Pers. <i>er-a-m, I was</i>	<i>er-a:-mus, we were</i>
2d Pers. <i>er-a:-s, you were</i>	<i>er-a:-tis, you were</i>
3d Pers. <i>er-a-t, he, she, or it was</i>	<i>er-a:-nt, they were</i>

### FUTURE INDICATIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st Pers. <i>er-o:, I shall be</i>	<i>er'-i-mus, we shall be</i>
2d Pers. <i>er-i-s, you</i>	



*will be*                      er'-i-tis, *you will be* 3d Pers. er-i-t, *he will be*                      er-u-nt,  
*they will be*

a. Be careful about vowel quantity and accent in these forms, and consult Secs. 12.2; 14; 15.

[Footnote 1: Observe that in English *you are*, *you were*, *etc.* may be either singular or plural. In Latin the singular and plural forms are never the same.]

124. DIALOGUE

## THE BOYS SEXTUS AND MARCUS





## Page 40

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

S. Ubi es, Marce? Ubi est Quintus? Ubi estis, amici?

M. Cum Quinto, Sexte, in silva sum. Non soli sumus; sunt in silva multi alii pueri.

S. Nunc laetus es, sed nuper non laetus eras. Cur miser eras?

M. Miser eram quia amici mei erant in alio vico et eram solus. Nunc sum apud socios meos. Nunc laeti sumus et erimus.

S. Eratisne in ludo hodie?

M. Hodie non eramus in ludo, quod magister erat aeger.

S. Eritisne mox in ludo?

M. Amici mei ibi erunt, sed ego (*I*) non ero.

S. Cur non ibi eris? Magister, saepe iratus, inopiam tuam studi diligentiaeque non laudat.

M. Nuper aeger eram et nunc infirmus sum.

### 125. EXERCISE

1. You are, you were, you will be, (*sing. and plur.*). 2. I am, I was, I shall be. 3. He is, he was, he will be. 4. We are, we were, we shall be. 5. They are, they were, they will be.

6. Why were you not in school to-day? I was sick. 7. Lately he was a sailor, now he is a farmer, soon he will be a teacher. 8. To-day I am happy, but lately I was wretched. 9. The teachers were happy because of the boys' industry.

[Illustration: PUERI ROMANI IN LUDO]

## LESSON XIX

### THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

#### PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMO*: AND *MONEO*:

126. There are four conjugations of the regular verbs. These conjugations are distinguished from each other by the final vowel of the present conjugation-stem.[1] This vowel is called the *distinguishing vowel*, and is best seen in the present infinitive.

[Footnote 1: The *stem* is the body of a word to which the terminations are attached. It is often identical with the base (cf. Sec. 58). If, however, the stem ends in a vowel, the latter does not appear in the base, but is variously combined with the inflectional terminations. This point is further explained in Sec. 230.]

Below is given the *present infinitive* of a verb of each conjugation, the *present stem*, and the *distinguishing vowel*.

# DISTINGUISHING

CONJUGATION	PRES.	INFIN.	PRES. STEM	VOWEL
I.	ama:'re, <i>to love</i>	ama:-	a:	
II.	mone:'re, <i>to advise</i>	mone:-	e:	
III.	re'gere, <i>to rule</i>	rege-	e	
IV.	audi:'re, <i>to hear</i>	audi-	i:	

a. Note that the present stem of each conjugation is found by dropping -re, the ending of the present infinitive.

NOTE. The present infinitive of *sum* is *esse*, and *es-* is the present stem.

127. From the present stem are formed the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses.

128. The inflection of the Present Active Indicative of the first and of the second conjugation is as follows:



# Page 41

a'mo:, ama:'re (*love*)      mo'neo:, mone:'re (*advise*)  
 PRES. STEM ama:-      PRES. STEM mone:-

## SINGULAR PLURAL PERSONAL ENDINGS

1. a'mo:, *I love* mo'neo:, *I advise* -o:
2. a'ma:s, *you love* mo'ne:s, *you advise* -s
3. a'mat, *he (she, it) loves* mo'net, *he (she, it) advises* -t

- |                              |                              |      |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|------|
| 1. ama:'mus, <i>we love</i>  | mone:'mus, <i>we advise</i>  | -mus |
| 2. ama:'tis, <i>you love</i> | mone:'tis, <i>you advise</i> | -tis |
| 3. a'mant, <i>they love</i>  | mo'nent, <i>they advise</i>  | -nt  |

1. The present tense is inflected by adding the personal endings to the present stem, and its first person uses -o and not -m. The form *amo:\* is for *ama-o:\*, the two vowels a-o:\ contracting to o:\. In *moneo:\* there is no contraction. *Nearly all regular verbs ending in -eo belong to the second conjugation.*

2. Note that the long final vowel of the stem is shortened before another vowel (mone:-o: = mo'neo:), and before final -t (amat, monet) and -nt (amant, monent). Compare Sec. 12.2.

129. Like *amo:\* and *moneo:\* inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs[2]:

[Footnote 2: The only new verbs in this list are the five of the second conjugation which are starred. Learn their meanings.]

## INDICATIVE PRESENT INFINITIVE PRESENT

a'ro, *I plow* ara're, *to plow*  
 cu'ro, *I care for* cura're, *to care for*  
 de:'leo:, *I destroy* de:le:'re, *to destroy*  
 desi'dero, *I long for* desidera're, *to long for*  
 do,[3] *I give* da're, *to give*  
 ha'beo:, *I have* habe:'re, *to have*  
 ha'bito, *I live, I dwell* habita're, *to live, to dwell*  
 iu'beo:, *I order* iube:'re, *to order*  
 labo'ro, *I labor* labora're, *to labor*  
 lau'do, *I praise* lauda're, *to praise*  
 matu'ro, *I hasten* matura're, *to hasten*  
 mo'veo:, *I move* move:'re, *to move*  
 nar'ro, *I tell* narra're, *to tell*  
 ne'co, *I kill* neca're, *to kill*



nun'tio, *I announce* nuntia're, *to announce*  
pa'ro, *I prepare* para're, *to prepare*  
por'to, *I carry* porta're, *to carry*  
pro'pero, *I hasten* propera're, *to hasten*  
pug'no, *I fight* pugna're, *to fight*  
vi'deo:, *\_I see\_* vide:'re, *\_to see\_*  
vo'co, *\_I call\_* voca're, *\_to call\_*



## Page 42

[Footnote 3: Observe that in *do:*, *dare*, the *a* is short, and that the present stem is *da-* and not *da:-*. The only forms of *do:* that have a long are *da:s* (pres. indic.), *da:* (pres. *inv.*), and *da:ns* (pres. part.).]

130. The Translation of the Present. In English there are three ways of expressing present action. We may say, for example, *I live*, *I am living*, or *I do live*. In Latin the one expression *habito* covers all three of these expressions.

### 131. EXERCISES

Give the *voice*, *mood*, *tense*, *person*, and *number* of each form.

I. 1. Vocamus, properatis, iubent. 2. Movetis, laudas, vides. 3. Deletis, habetis, dant. 4. Maturas, desiderat, videmus. 5. Iubet, movent, necat. 6. Narramus, moves, vident. 7. Laboratis, properant, portas, parant. 8. Delet, habetis, iubemus, das.

N.B. Observe that the personal ending is of prime importance in translating a Latin verb form. Give that your first attention.

II. 1. We plow, we are plowing, we do plow. 2. They care for, they are caring for, they do care for. 3. You give, you are having, you do have (*sing.*). 4. We destroy, I do long for, they are living. 5. He calls, they see, we are telling. 6. We do fight, we order, he is moving, he prepares. 7. They are laboring, we kill, you announce.

## LESSON XX

### IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *AMO:* AND *MONEO:*

[Special Vocabulary]

#### NOUNS

*fo:rma*, -ae, f., *\_form, beauty\_*

*regi:na*, -ae, f., *queen* (regal)

*poena*, -ae, f., *\_punishment, penalty\_*

*superbia*, -ae, f., *\_pride, haughtiness\_*

*potentia*, -ae, f., *power* (potent)

*tri:sti:ti:a*, -ae, f., *\_sadness, sorrow\_*

#### ADJECTIVES

*septem*, *indeclinable*, *\_seven\_*

*superbus*, -a, -um, *proud, haughty* (superb)

#### CONJUNCTIONS

*no:n so:lum ... sed etiam*, *\_not only ... but also\_*



132. Tense Signs. Instead of using auxiliary verbs to express differences in tense, like *was*, *shall*, *will*, etc., Latin adds to the verb stem certain elements that have the force of auxiliary verbs. These are called *tense signs*.

133. Formation and Inflection of the Imperfect. The tense sign of the imperfect is -ba:-, which is added to the present stem. The imperfect consists, therefore, of three parts:

PRESENT STEM    TENSE SIGN    PERSONAL ENDING

ama:-	ba-	m
<i>loving</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>I</i>

The inflection is as follows:

CONJUGATION I    CONJUGATION II

PERSONAL

SINGULAR ENDINGS

1. ama:'bam, *I was loving*    mone:'bam, *I was advising* -m    2. ama:'ba:s, *you were loving*  
 mone:'ba:s, *you were advising* -s    3. ama:'bat, *he was loving*    mone:'bat, *he was advising*  
 -t

## Page 43

PLURAL 1. ama:ba:'mus, *we were loving* mone:ba:'mus, *we were advising* -mus 2. ama:ba:'tis, *you were loving* mone:ba:'tis, *you were advising* -tis 3. ama:'bant, *they were loving* mone:'bant, *they were advising* -nt

a. Note that the *a:\* of the tense sign *-ba:-* is shortened before *-nt*, and before *m\* and *t\* when final. (Cf. Sec. 12.2.)

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in Sec. 129.

134. Meaning of the Imperfect. The Latin imperfect describes an act as *going on* or *progressing in past time*, like the English past-progressive tense (as, *I was walking*). It is the regular tense used to describe a past situation or condition of affairs.

### 135. EXERCISES

I. 1. Videbamus, desiderabat, maturabas. 2. Dabant, vocabatis, delebamus. 3. Pugnant, laudabas, movebatis. 4. Iubebant, properabatis, portabamus. 5. Dabas, narrabant, laborabatis. 6. Videbant, movebas, nuntiabamus. 7. Necabat, movebam, habebat, parabatis.

II. 1. You were having (*sing. and plur.*), we were killing, they were laboring. 2. He was moving, we were ordering, we were fighting. 3. We were telling, they were seeing, he was calling. 4. They were living, I was longing for, we were destroying. 5. You were giving, you were moving, you were announcing, (*sing. and plur.*). 6. They were caring for, he was plowing, we were praising.

### 136. NI'OBÉ AND HER CHILDREN

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 287.

Niobe, regina Thebanorum, erat pulchra femina sed superba. Erat superba non solum forma[1] sua maritique potentia[1] sed etiam magno liberorum numero.[1] Nam habebat[2] septem filios et septem filias. Sed ea superbia erat reginae[3] causa magnae tristitiae et liberis[3] causa durae poenae.

NOTE. The words *Niobe\*, *Thebanorum\*, and *mariti\* will be found in the general vocabulary. Translate the selection without looking up any other words.

[Footnote 1: Ablative of cause.]

[Footnote 2: Translate *had*; it denotes a past situation. (See Sec. 134.)]

[Footnote 3: Dative, cf. Sec. 43.]



## LESSON XXI

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF AMO: AND MONEO:

[Special Vocabulary]

### NOUNS

sacrum, -i:, n., *sacrifice, offering, rite*

verbum, -i:, n., *\_word\_ (verb)*

### VERBS

sedeo:, -e:re, *sit* (sediment)

volo:, -a:re, *fly* (volatile)

ADJECTIVES *interfectus*, -a, -um\, *\_slain\_* *molestus*, -a, -um\, *troublesome, annoying* (molest) *perpetuus*, -a, -um\, *\_perpetual, continuous\_*

ego\, personal pronoun, *I* (egotism). Always emphatic in the nominative.





## Page 44

137. The tense sign of the Future Indicative in the first and second conjugations is -bi-. This is joined to the present stem of the verb and followed by the personal ending, as follows:

PRESENT STEM	TENSE SIGN	PERSONAL ENDING
ama:-	bi-	s
<i>love</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>you</i>

138. The Future Active Indicative is inflected as follows.

### CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II SINGULAR

1. ama:'bo:, *I shall love* mone:'bo:, *I shall advise*
2. ama:'bis, *you will love* mone:'bis, *you will advise*
3. ama:'bit, *he will love* mone:'bit, *he will advise*

### PLURAL

1. ama:'bimus, *we shall love* mone:'bimus, *we shall advise*
2. ama:'bitis *you will love* mone:'bitis, *you will advise*
3. ama:'bunt, *they will love* mone:'bunt, *they will advise*

a. The personal endings are as in the present. The ending -bo: in the first person singular is contracted from -bi-o:. The -bi- appears as -bu- in the third person plural. Note that the inflection is like that of *ero:ī, the future of sum\*. Pay especial attention to the accent.

In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in Sec. 129.

### 139. EXERCISES

I. 1. Movebitis, laudabis, arabo. 2. Delebitis, vocabitis, dabunt. 3. Maturabis, desiderabit, videbimus. 4. Habebit, movebunt, necabit. 5. Narrabimus, monebis, videbunt. 6. Laborabis, curabunt, dabis. 7. Habitabimus, properabis, iubebunt, parabit. 8. Nuntiabo, portabimus, iubebo.

II. 1. We shall announce, we shall see, I shall hasten. 2. I shall carry, he will plow, they will care for. 3. You will announce, you will move, you will give, (*sing. and plur.*). 4. We shall fight, we shall destroy, I shall long for. 5. He will call, they will see, you will tell (*plur.*). 6. They will dwell, we shall order, he will praise. 7. They will labor, we shall kill, you will have (*sing. and plur.*), he will destroy.

### 140. NI'OBE AND HER CHILDREN (*Concluded*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.



Apollo et Diana erant liberi Latonae. Iis Thebani sacra crebra parabant.[1] Oppidani amabant Latonam et liberos eius. Id superbae reginae erat molestum. "Cur," inquit, "Latonae et liberis sacra paratis? Duos liberos habet Latona; quattuordecim habeo ego. Ubi sunt mea sacra?" Latona iis verbis[2] irata liberos suos vocat. Ad eam volant Apollo Dianaque et sagittis[3] suis miseros liberos reginae superbae delent. Niobe, nuper laeta, nunc misera, sedet apud liberos interfectos et cum perpetuis lacrimis[4] eos desiderat.

NOTE. Consult the general vocabulary for *Apollo*, *inquit*, *duos*, and *quattuordecim*. Try to remember the meaning of all the other words.

## Page 45

[Footnote 1: Observe the force of the imperfect here, *used to prepare, were in the habit of preparing*; so *amabant* denotes a past situation of affairs. (See Sec. 134.)]

[Footnote 2: Ablative of cause.]

[Footnote 3: Ablative of means.]

[Footnote 4: This may be either manner or accompaniment. It is often impossible to draw a sharp line between means, manner, and accompaniment. The Romans themselves drew no sharp distinction. It was enough for them if the general idea demanded the ablative case.]

## LESSON XXII

### REVIEW OF VERBS : THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

[Special Vocabulary]

#### NOUNS

*discipli:na*, -ae\, f., *\_training, culture, discipline\_*

*Ga:ius*, *Ga:i:\*, m., *Caius*, a Roman first name

*o:rna:mentum*, -i:\, n., *\_ornament, jewel\_*

*Tiberius*, *Tibe'ri:*, m., *\_Tiberius\_, a Roman first name*

#### VERB

*doceo:*, -e:re\, *\_teach\_ (doctrine)*

#### ADVERB

*maxime:\*, *\_most of all, especially\_*

#### ADJECTIVE

*anti:quus*, -qua, -quum\, *\_old, ancient\_ (antique)*

141. Review the present, imperfect, and future active indicative, both orally and in writing, of *sum* and the verbs in Sec. 129.

142. We learned in Sec. 43 for what sort of expressions we may expect the dative, and in Sec. 44 that one of its commonest uses is with *verbs* to express the indirect object. It is also very common with *adjectives* to express the object toward which the quality denoted by the adjective is directed. We have already had a number of cases where *gratus*, *\_agreeable to\_*, was so followed by a dative; and in the last lesson we had *molestus*, *\_annoying to\_*, followed by that case. The usage may be more explicitly stated by the following rule:



143. RULE. Dative with Adjectives. *The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning /near\, also /fit\, /friendly\, /pleasing\, /like\, and their opposites.*

144. Among such adjectives memorize the following:

ido:neus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable* (for) ami:cus, -a, -um, *friendly* (to) inimicus, -a, -um, *hostile* (to) gra:tus, -a, -um, *pleasing* (to), *agreeable* (to) molestus, -a, -um, *annoying* (to), *troublesome* (to) fi:nitimus, -a, -um, *neighboring* (to) proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next* (to)

#### 145. EXERCISES

I. 1. Romani terram idoneam agri culturae habent. 2. Galli copiis Romanis inimici erant. 3. Cui dea Latona amica non erat? 4. Dea Latona superbae reginae amica non erat. 5. Cibus noster, Marce, erit armatis viris gratus. 6. Quid erat molestum populis Italiae? 7. Bella longa cum Gallis erant molesta populis Italiae. 8. Agri Germanorum fluvio Rheno finitimi erant. 9. Romani ad silvam oppido proximam castra movebant. 10. Non solum forma sed etiam superbia reginae erat magna. 11. Mox regina pulchra erit aegra tristitia. 12. Cur erat Niobe, regina Thebanorum, laeta? Laeta erat Niobe multis filiis et filiabus.



## Page 46

II. 1. The sacrifices of the people will be annoying to the haughty queen. 2. The sacrifices were pleasing not only to Latona but also to Diana. 3. Diana will destroy those hostile to Latona. 4. The punishment of the haughty queen was pleasing to the goddess Diana. 5. The Romans will move their forces to a large field[1] suitable for a camp. 6. Some of the allies were friendly to the Romans, others to the Gauls.

[Footnote 1: Why not the dative?]

### 146. CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Apud antiquas dominas, Cornelia, Africani filia, erat[2] maxime clara. Filii eius erant Tiberius Gracchus et Gaius Gracchus. Ii pueri cum Cornelia in oppido Roma, claro Italiae oppido, habitabant. Ibi eos curabat Cornelia et ibi magno cum studio eos docebat. Bona femina erat Cornelia et bonam disciplinam maxime amabat.

NOTE. Can you translate the paragraph above? There are no new words.

[Footnote 2: Observe that all the imperfects denote continued or progressive action, or describe a state of affairs. (Cf. Sec. 134.)]

## LESSON XXIII

PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGO*: AND *AUDIO*:

147. As we learned in Sec. 126, the present stem of the third conjugation ends in -e, and of the fourth in -i-. The inflection of the Present Indicative is as follows:

CONJUGATION III  
re'go:, re'gere (*rule*)  
PRES. STEM rege-

CONJUGATION IV  
au'dio, audi:'re (*hear*)  
PRES. STEM audi:-

### SINGULAR

1. re'go:, *I rule* au'dio:, *I hear*
2. re'gis, *you rule* au'di:s, *you hear*
3. re'git, *he (she, it) rules* au'dit, *he (she, it) hears*

### PLURAL

1. re'gimus, *we rule* audi:'mus, *we hear*



2. re'gitis, *you rule*                      audi:'tis, *you hear*  
3. re'gunt, *they rule*                      au'diunt, *they hear*

1. The personal endings are the same as before.

2. The final short -e- of the stem rege- combines with the -o: in the first person, becomes -u- in the third person plural, and becomes -i- elsewhere. The inflection is like that of *ero:*\, the future of *sum*\.3. In *audio:*\ the personal endings are added regularly to the stem *audi:-*. In the third person plural -u- is inserted between the stem and the personal ending, as *audi-u-nt*\. Note that the long vowel of the stem is shortened before final -t just as in *amo*\ and *moneo*\. (Cf. Sec. 12.2.)

Note that -i- is always short in the third conjugation and long in the fourth, excepting where long vowels are regularly shortened. (Cf. Sec. 12.1, 2.)

148. Like *rego*\ and *audio*\ inflect the present active indicative of the following verbs:



## Page 47

### INDICATIVE PRESENT INFINITIVE PRESENT

ago:, *I drive* agere, *to drive* di:co:, *I say* di:cere, *to say* du:co:, *I lead* du:cere, *to lead* mitto:, *I send* mittere, *to send* mu:nio:, *I fortify* mu:ni:re, *to fortify* reperio:, *I find* reperi:re, *to find* venio:, *I come* veni:re, *to come*

### 149. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis agit? Cur venit? Quem mittit? Quem ducis? 2. Quid mittunt? Ad quem veniunt? Cuius castra muniunt? 3. Quem agunt? Venimus. Quid puer reperit? 4. Quem mittimus? Cuius equum ducitis? Quid dicunt? 5. Munimus, venitis, dicit. 6. Agimus, reperitis, munis. 7. Reperis, ducitis, dicis. 8. Agitis, audimus, regimus.

II. 1. What do they find? Whom do they hear? Why does he come? 2. Whose camp are we fortifying? To whom does he say? What are we saying? 3. I am driving, you are leading, they are hearing. 4. You send, he says, you fortify (*sing. and plur.*). 5. I am coming, we find, they send. 6. They lead, you drive, he does fortify. 7. You lead, you find, you rule, (*all plur.*).

### 150. CORNELIA AND HER JEWELS (*Concluded*)

Proximum domicilio Corneliae erat pulchrae Campanae domicilium. Campana erat superba non solum forma sua sed maxime ornamentis suis. Ea[1] laudabat semper. "Habesne tu ulla ornamenta, Cornelia?" inquit. "Ubi sunt tua ornamenta?" Deinde Cornelia filios suos Tiberium et Gaium vocat. "Pueri mei," inquit, "sunt mea ornamenta. Nam boni liberi sunt semper bonae feminae ornamenta maxime clara."

NOTE. The only new words here are *Campana*l, *semper*l, and *tu*l.

[Footnote 1: *Ea*l, *accusative plural neuter.*]

[Illustration: "PUERI MEI SUNT MEA ORNAMENTA"]

## LESSON XXIV

### IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGO*: AND *AUDIO*: THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS

### 151. PARADIGMS

CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION IV  
SINGULAR

1. rege:'bam, *I was ruling* audie:'bam, *I was hearing*



2. rege:'ba:s, *you were riding* audie:'ba:s, *you were hearing*
3. rege:'bat, *he was ruling* audie:'bat, *he was hearing*

PLURAL

1. rege:ba:'mus, *we were ruling* audie:ba:'mus, *we were hearing*
2. rege:ba:'tis, *you were ruling* audie:ba:'tis, *you were hearing*
3. rege:'bant, *they were ruling* audie:'bant, *they were hearing*

1. The tense sign is -ba:-, as in the first two conjugations.
2. Observe that the final -e- of the stem is lengthened before the tense sign -ba:-. This makes the imperfect of the third conjugation just like the imperfect of the second (cf. *mone:bam\* and *rege:bam\*).



## Page 48

3. In the fourth conjugation -e:- is inserted between the stem and the tense sign -ba:- (audi-e:-ba-m).

4. In a similar manner inflect the verbs given in Sec. 148.

### 152. EXERCISES

I. 1. Agebat, veniebat, mittebat, ducebant. 2. Agebant, mittebant, ducebas, muniebat. 3. Mittebamus, ducebatis, dicebant. 4. Muniebamus, veniebatis, dicebas. 5. Mittebas, veniebamus, reperiebat. 6. Reperiebas, veniebas, audiebatis. 7. Agebamus, reperiebatis, muniebat. 8. Agebatis, dicebam, muniebam.

II. 1. They were leading, you were driving (*sing. and plur.*), he was fortifying. 2. They were sending, we were finding, I was coming. 3. You were sending, you were fortifying, (*sing. and plur.*), he was saying. 4. They were hearing, you were leading (*sing. and plur.*), I was driving. 5. We were saying, he was sending, I was fortifying. 6. They were coming, he was hearing, I was finding. 7. You were ruling (*sing. and plur.*), we were coming, they were ruling.

153. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs. We learned above (Sec. 20.a) that a verb which does not admit of a direct object is called an *intransitive* verb. Many such verbs, however, are of such meaning that they can govern an indirect object, which will, of course, be in the dative case (Sec. 45). Learn the following list of intransitive verbs with their meanings. In each case the dative indirect object is the person or thing to which a benefit, injury, or feeling is directed. (Cf. Sec. 43.)

cre:do:, cre:dere, *believe* (give belief to) faveo:, fave:re, *favor* (show favor to) noceo:, noce:re, *injure* (do harm to) pa:reo:, pa:re:re, *obey* (give obedience to) persua:deo:, persua:de:re, *persuade* (offer persuasion to) resisto:, resistere, *resist* (offer resistance to) studeo:, stude:re, *be eager for* (give attention to)

154. RULE. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. *The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs /credo\, /faveo\, /noceo\, /pareo\, /persuadeo\, /resisto\, /studeo\, and others of like meaning.*

### 155. EXERCISE

1. Credisne verbis sociorum? Multi verbis eorum non credunt. 2. Mei finitimi consilio tuo non favebunt, quod bello student. 3. Tiberius et Gaius disciplinae durae non resistebant et Corneliae parebant. 4. Dea erat inimica septem filiabus reginae. 5. Dura poena et perpetua tristitia reginae non persuadebunt. 6. Nuper ea resistebat et nunc resistit potentiae Latonae. 7. Mox sagittae volabunt et liberis miseris nocebunt.

## LESSON XXV

FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF *REGO*: AND *AUDIO*:

156. In the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations we meet with a new tense sign. Instead of using -bi-, as in the first and second conjugations, we use -a:-[1] in the first person singular and -e:- in the rest of the tense. In the third conjugation the final -e- of the stem is dropped before this tense sign; in the fourth conjugation the final -i:- of the stem is retained.[2]



## Page 49

[Footnote 1: The -a:- is shortened before -m final, and -e:- before -t final and before -nt. (Cf. Sec. 12.2.)]

[Footnote 2: The -i:- is, of course, shortened, being before another vowel. (Cf. Sec. 12.1.)]

### 157. PARADIGMS

#### CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION IV SINGULAR

1. re'gam, *I shall rule* au'diam, *I shall hear*
2. re'ge:s, *you will rule* au'die:s, *you will hear*
3. re'get, *he will rule* au'diet, *he will hear*

#### PLURAL

1. rege:'mus, *we shall rule* audie:'mus, *we shall hear*
2. rege:'tis, *you will rule* audie:'tis, *you will hear*
3. re'gent, *they will rule* au'dient, *they will hear*

1. Observe that the future of the third conjugation is like the present of the second, excepting in the first person singular.

2. In the same manner inflect the verbs given in Sec. 148.

### 158. EXERCISES

I. 1. Dicet, ducetis, muniemus. 2. Dicent, dicetis, mittemus. 3. Munient, venient, mittent, agent. 4. Ducet, mittes, veniet, aget. 5. Muniet, reperietis, agemus. 6. Mittam, veniemus, regent. 7. Audietis, venies, reperiens. 8. Reperiet, agam, ducemus, mittet. 9. Videbitis, sedebo, vocabimus.

II. 1. I shall find, he will hear, they will come. 2. I shall fortify, he will send, we shall say. 3. I shall drive, you will lead, they will hear. 4. You will send, you will fortify, (*sing. and plur.*), he will say. 5. I shall come, we shall find, they will send.

6. Who[3] will believe the story? I[4] shall believe the story. 7. Whose friends do you favor? We favor our friends. 8. Who will resist our weapons? Sextus will resist your weapons. 9. Who will persuade him? They will persuade him. 10. Why were you injuring my horse? I was not injuring your horse. 11. Whom does a good slave obey? A good slave obeys his master. 12. Our men were eager for another battle.

[Footnote 3: Remember that *quis* \, *\_who\_*, is singular in number.]

[Footnote 4: Express by *ego* \, *because it is emphatic.*]



## LESSON XXVI

### VERBS IN *-io:* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION : THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

159. There are a few common verbs ending in *-io:* which do not belong to the fourth conjugation, as you might infer, but to the third. The fact that they belong to the third conjugation is shown by the ending of the infinitive. (Cf. Sec. 126.) Compare

*audio:*, *audi:'re* (*hear*), fourth conjugation

*capio:*, *ca'pere* (*take*), third conjugation

160. The present, imperfect, and future active indicative of *capio:* are inflected as follows:

*capio:*, *capere*, *take*

PRES. STEM *cape-*



## Page 50

### PRESENT IMPERFECT FUTURE SINGULAR

1. ca'pio: capie:'bam ca'pam
2. ca'pis capie:'ba:s ca'pie:s
3. ca'pit capie:'bat ca'piet

### PLURAL

1. ca'pimus capie:ba:'mus capie:'mus
2. ca'pitis capie:ba:'tis capie:'tis
3. ca'piunt capie:'bant ca'pient

1. Observe that *capiō* and the other *-iō* verbs follow the fourth conjugation wherever in the fourth conjugation *\_two vowels occur in succession\_* (Cf. *capiō*;, *audio*;; *capiunt*, *audiunt*; and all the imperfect and future.) All other forms are like the third conjugation. (Cf. *capis*, *regis*; *capit*, *regit*; etc.)

2. Like *capiō*, inflect

*facio*, *facere*, *make*, *do fugio*, *fugere*, *flee iacio*, *iacere*, *hurl rapio*, *rapere*, *seize*

161. The Imperative Mood. The imperative mood expresses a command; as, *come! send!* The present tense of the imperative is used only in the second person, singular and plural. *The singular in the active voice is regularly the same in form as the present stem. The plural is formed by adding -te to the singular.*

### CONJUGATION      SINGULAR      PLURAL

- |                 |                                   |                                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| I.              | <i>ama</i> :, <i>love thou</i>    | <i>ama</i> : 'te, <i>love ye</i>    |
| II.             | <i>mone</i> :, <i>advise thou</i> | <i>mone</i> : 'te, <i>advise ye</i> |
| III. (a)        | <i>rege</i> , <i>rule thou</i>    | <i>re</i> 'gite, <i>rule ye</i>     |
| (b)             | <i>cape</i> , <i>take thou</i>    | <i>ca</i> 'pite, <i>take ye</i>     |
| IV.             | <i>audi</i> :, <i>hear thou</i>   | <i>audi</i> : 'te, <i>hear ye</i>   |
| sum (irregular) | <i>es</i> , <i>be thou</i>        | <i>este</i> , <i>be ye</i>          |

1. In the third conjugation the final *-e-* of the stem becomes *-i-* in the plural.

2. The verbs *di:co*:\, *\_say\_*; *du:co*:\, *lead*; and *facio*:\, *\_make\_*, have the irregular forms *di:c*\\, *du:c*\\, and *fac*\\ in the singular.

3. Give the present active imperative, singular and plural, of *veniō*\\, *duco*\\, *voco*\\, *doceo*\\, *laudo*\\, *dico*\\, *sedeo*\\, *ago*\\, *facio*\\, *munio*\\, *mitto*\\, *rapio*\\.



162. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fugient, faciunt, iaciebat. 2. Dele, nuntiate, fugiunt. 3. Venite, dic, facietis. 4. Ducite, iaciam, fugiebant. 5. Fac, iaciebamus, fugimus, rapite. 6. Sedete, reperi, docete. 7. Fugiemus, iacient, rapies. 8. Reperient, rapiebatis, nocent. 9. Favete, resiste, parebitis.

10. Vola ad multas terras et da auxilium. 11. Ego tela mea capiam et multas feras delebo. 12. Quis fabulae tuae credet? 13. Este boni, pueri, et audite verba grata magistri.

II. 1. The goddess will seize her arms and will hurl her weapons. 2. With her weapons she will destroy many beasts. 3. She will give aid to the weak.[1] 4. She will fly to many lands and the beasts will flee. 5. Romans, tell[2] the famous story to your children.



# Page 51

[Footnote 1: Plural. An adjective used as a noun. (Cf. Sec. 99.II.3.)]

[Footnote 2: Imperative. The imperative generally stands first, as in English.]

\* \* \* \* \*

Third Review, Lessons XVIII-XXVI, Secs. 510-512

\* \* \* \* \*

## LESSON XXVII

### THE PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF AMO: AND MONEO:

[Special Vocabulary]

#### NOUNS

*a:la*, -ae\, *f.*, *\_wing\_*

*deus*, -i:\, *m.*, *god* (deity)[A]

*monstrum*, -i:\, *n.*, *\_omen, prodigy; monster\_*

*o:ra:culum*, -i:, *n.*, *\_oracle\_*

#### VERB

*va:sto:*, -a:re\, *\_lay waste, devastate\_*

ADJECTIVES *commo:tus*, -a, -um\, *\_moved, excited\_* *maximus*, -a, -um\, *greatest* (maximum) *saevus*, -a, -um\, *\_fierce, savage\_*

#### ADVERBS

*ita\*, *thus, in this way, as follows*

*tum\*, *\_then, at that time\_*

[Footnote A: For the declension of *deus\*, see Sec. 468]

163. The Voices. Thus far the verb forms have been in the *active voice*; that is, they have represented the subject as *performing* an action; as,

The lion —> *killed* —> the hunter

A verb is said to be in the *passive voice* when it represents its subject as *receiving* an action; as,



The lion <— *was killed* <— by the hunter

Note the direction of the arrows.

164. Passive Personal Endings. In the passive voice we use a different set of personal endings. They are as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL

1. -r, / 1. -mur, *we*
2. -ris, -re, *you* 2. -mini:, *you*
3. -tur, *he, she, it* 3. -ntur, *they*

a. Observe that the letter -r appears somewhere in all but one of the endings. This is sometimes called the *passive sign*.

165. PARADIGMS

amo, ama:re	mone:o, mone:re
PRES. STEM ama:-	PRES. STEM mone:-

PRESENT INDICATIVE PERSONAL

ENDINGS

SINGULAR

a'mor, *I am loved* mo'neor, *I am advised* -or[1]  
 ama:'ris or ama:'re, mone:'ris or mone:'re. -ris  
*you are loved you are advised* or -re  
 ama:'tur, *he is loved* mone:'tur, *he is advised* -tur

PLURAL ama:'mur, *we are loved* mone:'mur, *we are advised* -mur ama:'mini:, *you are loved* mone:'mini:, *you are advised* -mini aman'tur, *they are loved* monen'tur, *they are advised* -ntur

[Footnote 1: In the present the personal ending of the first person singular is -or.]



## Page 52

### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE (TENSE SIGN -ba:-)

#### SINGULAR

ama:'bar,	mone:'bar,	-r
<i>I was being loved</i>	<i>I was being advised</i>	
ama:ba:'ris or ama:ba:'re,	mone:ba:'ris or mone:ba:'re	-ris
<i>you were being loved</i>	<i>you were being advised</i>	or -re
ama:ba:'tur,	mone:ba:'tur,	-tur
<i>he was being loved</i>	<i>he was being advised</i>	

#### PLURAL

ama:ba:'mur,	mone:ba:'mur,	-mur
<i>we were being loved</i>	<i>we were being advised</i>	
ama:ba:'mini:,	mone:ba:'mini:,	-mini:
<i>you were being loved</i>	<i>you were being advised</i>	
ama:ban'tur,	mone:ban'tur,	-ntur
<i>they were being loved</i>	<i>they were being advised</i>	

### FUTURE (TENSE SIGN -bi-)

#### SINGULAR

ama:'bor,	mone:'bor,	-r
<i>I shall be loved</i>	<i>I shall be advised</i>	
ama:'beris, or ama:'bere	mone:'beris or mone:'bere,	-ris
<i>you will be loved</i>	<i>you will be advised</i>	or -re
ama:'bitur,	mone:'bitur,	-tur
<i>he will be loved</i>	<i>he will be advised</i>	

#### PLURAL

ama:'bimur,	mone:'bimur,	-mur
<i>we shall be loved</i>	<i>we shall be advised</i>	
ama:bi'mini:,	mone:bi'mini:,	-mini:
<i>you will be loved</i>	<i>you will be advised</i>	
ama:bun'tur,	mone:bun'tur,	-ntur
<i>they will be loved</i>	<i>they will be advised</i>	

1. The tense sign and the personal endings are added as in the active.
2. In the future the tense sign -bi- appears as -bo- in the first person, -be- in the second, singular number, and as -bu- in the third person plural.
3. Inflect *laudo*\, *neco*\, *porto*\, *moveo*\, *deleo*\, *iubeo*\, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.



166. Intransitive verbs, such as *maturo*\, *\_I hasten\_*; *habito*\, *I dwell*, do not have a passive voice with a personal subject.

#### 167. EXERCISES

I. 1. *Laudaris or laudare*, *laudas*, *datur*, *dat*. 2. *Dabitur*, *dabit*, *videmini*, *videtis*. 3. *Vocabat*, *vocabatur*, *delebitis*, *delebimini*. 4. *Parabatur*, *parabat*, *curas*, *curaris or curare*. 5. *Portabantur*, *portabant*, *videbimur*, *videbimus*. 6. *Iuberis or iubere*, *iubes*, *laudabaris or laudabare*, *laudabas*. 7. *Moveberis or movebere*, *movebis*, *dabantur*, *dabant*. 8. *Delentur*, *delent*, *parabamur*, *parabamus*.

II. 1. We prepare, we are prepared, I shall be called, I shall call, you were carrying, you were being carried. 2. I see, I am seen, it was being announced, he was announcing, they will order, they will be ordered. 3. You will be killed, you will kill, you move, you are moved, we are praising, we are being praised. 4. I am called, I call, you will have, you are cared for. 5. They are seen, they see, we were teaching, we were being taught, they will move, they will be moved.

## Page 53

[Illustration: PERSEUS ANDROMEDAM SERVAT]

### 168. PER'SEUS AND ANDROM'EDA

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Perseus filius erat Iovis,[2] maximi[3] deorum. De eo multas fabulas narrant poetae. Ei favent dei, ei magica arma et alas dant. Eis telis armatus et alis fretus ad multas terras volabat et monstra saeva debebat et miseris infirmisque auxilium dabat.

Aethiopia est terra Africae. Eam terram Cepheus[4] regebat. Ei[5] Neptunus, maximus aquarum deus, erat iratus et mittit[6] monstrum saevum ad Aethiopiam. Ibi monstrum non solum latis pulchrisque Aethiopiae agris nocebat sed etiam domicilia agricolarum debebat, et multos viros, feminas, liberosque necabat. Populus ex agris fugiebat et oppida muris validis munebat. Tum Cepheus magna tristitia commotus ad Iovis oraculum properat et ita dicit: "Amici mei necantur; agri mei vastantur. Audi verba mea, Iuppiter. Da miseris auxilium. Age monstrum saevum ex patria."

[Footnote 2: *Iovis*\, *the genitive of Iuppiter*\.]

[Footnote 3: Used substantively, *the greatest*. So below, l. 4, *miseris*\ and *infirmis*\ are used substantively.]

[Footnote 4: Pronounce in two syllables, *Ce'pheus*.]

[Footnote 5: *Ei*\, *\_at him\_*, *dative with iratus*\.]

[Footnote 6: The present is often used, as in English, in speaking of a past action, in order to make the story more vivid and exciting.]

## LESSON XXVIII

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE  
OF *REGO*: AND *AUDIO*:

[Special Vocabulary]

### VERBS

*respondeo*:, -e:re\, *\_respond, reply\_*

*servo*:, -a:re\, *save, preserve*

### ADJECTIVE

*ca:rus*, -a, -um\, *\_dear\_ (cherish)*



CONJUNCTION

*autem\, \_but, moreover, now\_. Usually stands second, never first*

NOUN

*vi:ta, -ael, f., \_life\_ (vital)*

169. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of *rego\* and *audio\*, and learn the passive of the same tenses (Secs. 490, 491).

a. Observe that the tense signs of the imperfect and future are the same as in the active voice, and that the passive personal endings (Sec. 164) are added instead of the active ones.

b. Note the slight irregularity in the second person singular present of the third conjugation. There the final -e- of the stem is not changed to -i-, as it is in the active. We therefore have *re'geris\* or *re'gere\*, not *re'giris\*, *re'gire\*.

c. Inflect *ago\*, *dico\*, *duco\*, *munio\*, *reperi\*, in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive.

170. EXERCISES

## Page 54

I. 1. Agebat, agebatur, mittebat, mittebatur, ducebat. 2. Agunt, aguntur, mittuntur, mittunt, muniunt. 3. Mittor, mittar, mittam, ducere, ducere. 4. Dicemur, dicimus, dicemus, dicimur, muniebamini. 5. Ducitur, ducimini, reperimur, reperiar, agitur. 6. Agebamus, agebamur, reperiris, reperiemini. 7. Munimini, veniebam, ducebar, dicetur. 8. Mittimini, mittitis, mitteris, mitteris, agebamini. 9. Dicitur, dicit, muniuntur, reperient, audientur.

II. 1. I was being driven, I was driving, we were leading, we were being led, he says, it is said. 2. I shall send, I shall be sent, you will find, you will be found, they lead, they are led. 3. I am found, we are led, they are driven, you were being led (*sing. and plur.*). 4. We shall drive, we shall be driven, he leads, he is being led, they will come, they will be fortified. 5. They were ruling, they were being ruled, you will send, you will be sent, you are sent, (*sing. and plur.*). 6. He was being led, he will come, you are said (*sing. and plur.*).

### 171. PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 288.

Tum oraculum ita respondet: “Mala est fortuna tua. Neptunus, magnus aquarum deus, terrae Aethiopiae inimicus, eas poenas mittit. Sed para irato deo sacrum idoneum et monstrum saevum ex patria tua agetur. Andromeda filia tua est monstro grata. Da eam monstro. Serva caram patriam et vitam populi tui.” Andromeda autem erat puella pulchra. Eam amabat Cepheus maxime.

## LESSON XXIX

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF \_-IO:\_ VERBS  
PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE AND IMPERATIVE

[Special Vocabulary]

### VERB

*supero*-, -a:re\, \_conquer, overcome\_ (*insuperable*)

### NOUNS

*cu:ra*, -ae\, f., \_care, trouble\_

*locus*, -i:\, m., *place, spot* (location). *Locus* is neuter in the plural and is declined *loca*, -o:rum\, etc.

*peri:culum*, -i:\, n., \_danger, peril\_

### ADVERBS

*semper*\, \_always\_

*tamen*\, *yet, nevertheless*



PREPOSITIONS

*de:~*, with *abl.*, *\_down from; concerning\_*  
*per~*, with *acc.*, *through*

CONJUNCTION

*si~*, *\_if\_*

172. Review the active voice of *capiol*, *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, and learn the *passive of the same tenses* (Sec. 492).

a. The present forms *capior~* and *capiuntur~* are like *audior*, *audiuntur~*, and the rest of the tense is like *regor~*.

b. In like manner inflect the passive of *iacio~* and *rapio~*.

173. The Infinitive. The infinitive mood gives the general meaning of the verb without person or number; as, *ama:re~*, *\_to love\_*. *Infinitive means \_unlimited\_*. The forms of the other moods, being limited by person and number, are called the *\_finite\_*, or limited, verb forms.



## Page 55

174. The forms of the Present Infinitive, active and passive, are as follows:

CONJ. STEM	PRES. ACTIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE PASSIVE	PRES. INFINITIVE
------------	--------------	--------------------------	------------------

I. ama:- <i>to love</i>	ama:'re, <i>to be loved</i>	ama:'ri:, <i>to be loved</i>	
II. mone:- <i>to advise</i>	mone:'re, <i>to be advised</i>	mone:'ri:, <i>to be advised</i>	
III. rege- <i>to rule</i>	re'gere, <i>to be ruled</i>	re'gi:, <i>to be ruled</i>	
cape- <i>to take</i>	ca'pere <i>to be taken</i>	ca'pi:, <i>to be taken</i>	
IV. audi:- <i>to hear</i>	audi:'re, <i>to be heard</i>	audi:ri:, <i>to be heard</i>	

1. Observe that to form the present active infinitive we add -re to the present stem.

a. The present infinitive of *sum* is *esse*. There is no passive.

2. Observe that the present passive infinitive is formed from the active by changing final -e to -i:, except in the third conjugation, which changes final -ere to -i:.

3. Give the active and passive present infinitives of *doceo*, *sedeo*, *volo*, *curo*, *mitto*, *duco*, *munio*, *reperio*, *iacio*, *rapio*.

175. The forms of the Present Imperative, active and passive, are as follows:

ACTIVE[1]	PASSIVE
CONJ. SINGULAR PLURAL	SINGULAR PLURAL

I. a'ma:	ama:'te	ama:'re,	ama:'mini:,
	<i>be thou loved</i>	<i>be ye loved</i>	
II. mo'ne:	mone:'te	mone:'re,	mone:'mini:,
	<i>be thou advised</i>	<i>be ye advised</i>	
III. re'ge	re'gite	re'gere,	regi'mini:,
	<i>be thou ruled</i>	<i>be ye ruled</i>	
ca'pe	ca'pite	ca'pere,	capi'mini:,
	<i>be thou taken</i>	<i>be ye taken</i>	
IV. au'di:	audi:'te	audi:'re,	audi:'mini:,
	<i>be thou heard</i>	<i>be ye heard</i>	



1. Observe that the second person singular of the present passive imperative is like the present active infinitive, and that both singular and plural are like the second person singular[2] and plural, respectively, of the present passive indicative.
2. Give the present imperative, both active and passive, of the verbs in Sec. 174.3.

[Footnote 1: For the sake of comparison the active is repeated from Sec. 161.]

[Footnote 2: That is, using the personal ending -re. A form like *ama:re* may be either *\_indicative\_*, *\_infinitive\_*, or *\_imperative\_*.]

## 176. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

I. 1. Tum Perseus alis ad terras multas volabit. 2. Monstrum saevum per aquas properat et mox agros nostros vastabit. 3. Si autem Cepheus ad oraculum properabit, oraculum ita respondebit. 4. Quis telis Persei superabitur? Multa monstra telis eius superabuntur. 5. Cum curis magnis et lacrimis multis agricolae ex domiciliis caris aguntur. 6. Multa loca vastabantur et multa oppida debebantur. 7. Monstrum est validum, tamen superabitur. 8. Credesne semper verbis oraculi? Ego iis non semper credam. 9. Parebitne Cepheus oraculo? Verba oraculi ei persuadebunt. 10. Si non fugiemus, oppidum capietur et oppidani necabuntur. 11. Vocate pueros et narrate fabulam claram de monstro saevo.





## Page 56

II. 1. Fly thou, to be cared for, be ye sent, lead thou. 2. To lead, to be led, be ye seized, fortify thou. 3. To be hurled, to fly, send thou, to be found. 4. To be sent, be ye led, to hurl, to be taken. 5. Find thou, hear ye, be ye ruled, to be fortified.

## LESSON XXX

SYNOPSSES IN THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS : THE ABLATIVE DENOTING *FROM*

[Special Vocabulary]

### VERBS

*absum, abessel, irreg., \_be away, be absent, be distant\_, with separative abl.*

*adpropinquo:, -a:re\, draw near, approach (propinquity), with dative[A]*

*contineo:, -e:re\, \_hold together, hem in, keep\_ (contain)*

*disce:do:, -ere\, depart, go away, leave, with separative abl.*

*egeo:, -e:re\, \_lack, need, be without\_, with separative abl.*

*interficio:, -ere\, kill*

*prohibeo:, -e:re\, \_restrain, keep from\_ (prohibit)*

*vulnero:, -a:re\, wound (vulnerable)*

### NOUNS

*pro:vincia, -ae\, f., \_province\_*

*vi:num, -i:\, n., wine*

### ADJECTIVE

*de:fessus, -a, -um\, \_weary, worn out\_*

### ADVERB

*longe:\, \_far, by far, far away\_*

[Footnote A: This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with *ad\* and the *accusative*.]

\_177.\_ You should learn to give rapidly synopses of the verbs you have had, as follows:  
[1]

### CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II

#### INDICATIVE

#### ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE

Pres. a'mo: a'mor mo'neo: mo'neor

*Imperf.* ama:'bam ama:'bar mone:'bam mone:'bar

*Fut.* ama:'bo ama:'bor mone:'bo mone:'bor

[Footnote 1: Synopses should be given not only in the first person, but in other persons as well, particularly in the third singular and plural.]

#### CONJUGATION I CONJUGATION II

##### IMPERATIVE

##### ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE

*Pres.* a'ma: ama:'re mo'ne: mone:'re

##### INFINITIVE

*Pres.* ama:'re ama:'ri: mone:'re mone:'ri:

#### CONJUGATION III CONJUGATION III (-io: verbs)

##### INDICATIVE

##### ACTIVE PASSIVE ACTIVE PASSIVE

*Pres.* re'go: re'gor ca'pio: ca'pior

*Imperf.* rege:'bam rege:'bar capie:'bam capie:'bar

*Fut.* re'gam re'gar ca'pam ca'piar

##### IMPERATIVE

*Pres.* re'ge re'gere ca'pe ca'pere

##### INFINITIVE

*Pres.* re'gere re'gi: ca'pere ca'pi:

#### CONJUGATION IV

##### INDICATIVE

##### ACTIVE PASSIVE

*Pres.* au'dio: au'dior

*Imperf.* audie:'bam audie:'bar

*Fut.* au'diam au'diar

# Page 57

## IMPERATIVE

Pres. au'di: audi:'re

## INFINITIVE

Pres. audi:'re audi:'ri:

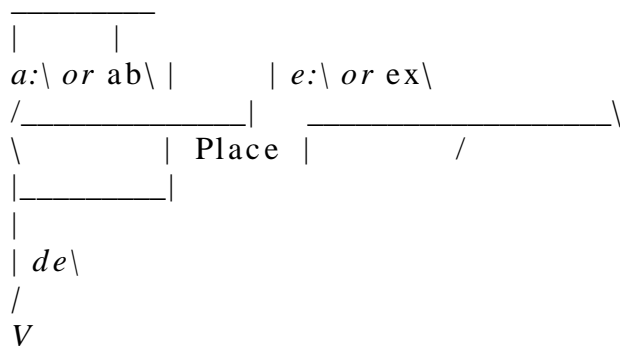
1. Give the synopsis of *rapio*\, *munio*\, *reperio*\, *doceo*\, *video*\, *dico*\, *ago*\, *laudo*\, *porto*\, and vary the person and number.

178. We learned in Sec. 50 that one of the three relations covered by the ablative case is expressed in English by the preposition *from*. This is sometimes called the *separative ablative*, and it has a number of special uses. You have already grown familiar with the first mentioned below.

179. RULE. Ablative of the Place From. *The place from which is expressed by the ablative with the prepositions /a:\ or /ab\, /de:\, /e:\ or /ex\.*

*Agricolae ex agris veniunt, the farmers come from the fields*

a. *a:\ or ab\ denotes from near a place; e:\ or ex\, out from it; and de\, \_down from\_ it. This may be represented graphically as follows:*



\_180.\_ RULE. Ablative of Separation. *\_Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning.\_*

a. If the separation is *actual* and *literal* of one material thing from another, the preposition *a:\ or ab\, e:\ or ex\, or de\* is generally used. *If no actual motion takes place of one thing from another, no preposition is necessary.*

(a) *Perseus terram a monstribus liberat*  
 \_Perseus frees the land from monsters\_



- (literal separation—actual motion is expressed)  
(b) Perseus terram tristitia liberat  
\_Perseus frees the land from sorrow\_  
(figurative separation—no actual motion is expressed)

181. RULE. Ablative of the Personal Agent. *The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition /a:\ or /ab\.*

a. In this construction the English translation of a:\, ab\ is *by* rather than *from*. This ablative is regularly used with passive verbs to indicate the *person by whom* the act was performed.

Monstrum a Perseo necatur, *the monster is being slain by*  
(lit. *from*) *Perseus*

b. Note that the active form of the above sentence would be *Perseus monstrum necat*, *Perseus is slaying the monster*. In the passive the *object* of the active verb becomes the *subject*, and the *subject* of the active verb becomes the *ablative of the personal agent*, with a:\ or ab\.\_c.\_ Distinguish carefully between the



## Page 58

ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent. Both are often translated into English by the preposition *\_by\_*. (Cf. Sec. 100. *\_b.\_*) *\_Means is a thing\; the agent or actor is a person\\_. The ablative of means has no preposition. The ablative of the personal agent has a:\ or abl. Compare*

Fera sagitta necatur, *\_the wild beast is killed by an arrow\_*  
 Fera a Diana necatur, *\_the wild beast is killed by Diana\_*

*Sagitta\, in the first sentence, is the ablative of means;*  
*a Diana\, in the second, is the ablative of the personal agent.*

### 182. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

I. 1. Viri inopia cibi defessi ab eo loco discedent. 2. Gerinani castris Romanis adpropinquabant, tamen legatus copias a proelio continebat. 3. Multa Gallorum oppida ab Romanis capientur. 4. Tum Romani totum populum eorum oppidorum gladiis pilisque interficient. 5. Oppidani Romanis resistent, sed defessi longo proelio fugient. 6. Multi ex Gallia fugiebant et in Germanorum vicis habitabant. 7. Miseri nautae vulnerantur ab inimicis[2] saevis et cibo egent. 8. Discedite et date viris frumentum et copiam vini. 9. Copiae nostrae a proelio continebantur ab Sexto legato. 10. Id oppidum ab provincia Romana longe aberat.

II. 1. The weary sailors were approaching a place dear to the goddess Diana. 2. They were without food and without wine. 3. Then Galba and seven other men are sent to the ancient island by Sextus. 4. Already they are not far away from the land, and they see armed men on a high place. 5. They are kept from the land by the men with spears and arrows. 6. The men kept hurling their weapons down from the high place with great eagerness.

[Footnote 2: *inimicis\, here used as a noun. See vocabulary.*]

## LESSON XXXI

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT OF *SUM*

[Special Vocabulary]

### NOUNS

aurum, -i:, n., *gold* (oriole)

mora, -ae\, f., *\_delay\_*



na:vigium, na:vi'gi:l, n., *boat, ship*  
ventus, -i:l, m., *\_wind\_ (ventilate)*

VERB

na:vigo:, -a:re\, *\_sail\_ (navigate)*

ADJECTIVES

attentus, -a, -um, *attentive, careful*  
dubius, -a, -um\, *\_doubtful\_ (dubious)*  
perfidus, -a, -um, *\_faithless, treacherous\_ (perfidy)*

ADVERB

antea:l, *\_before, previously\_*

PREPOSITION

sine\, *with abl., \_without\_*

183. Principal Parts. There are certain parts of the verb that are of so much consequence in tense formation that we call them the *principal parts*.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the present, the past, and the past participle; as *go, went, gone; see, saw, seen, etc.*

## Page 59

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the *first person singular of the present indicative*, the *present infinitive*, the *first person singular of the perfect indicative*, and the *perfect passive participle*.

184. Conjugation Stems. From the principal parts we get three conjugation stems, from which are formed the entire conjugation. We have already learned about the *present stem*, which is found from the *present infinitive* (cf. Sec. 126.a). The other two stems are the *perfect stem* and the *participial stem*.

185. The Perfect Stem. The perfect stem of the verb is formed in various ways, but may always be found by dropping -i: from the *first person singular of the perfect*, the third of the principal parts. From the perfect stem are formed the following tenses:

THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

THE PLUPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE (ENGLISH PAST PERFECT)

THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

All these tenses express completed action in present, past, or future time respectively.

186. The Endings of the Perfect. The perfect active indicative is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. These endings are different from those found in any other tense, and are as follows:

SINGULAR PLURAL

1. -i:, I 1. -imus, we
2. -isti:, you 2. -istis, you
3. -it, he, she, it 3. -e:runt or -e:re, they

187. Inflection of *sum* in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative:

PRES. INDIC. PRES. INFIN. PERF. INDIC.

PRIN. PARTS *sum esse fui*:

PERFECT STEM *fu-*

PERFECT

SINGULAR PLURAL

*fu'i:, I have been, I was fu'imus, we have been, we were*  
*fuis'ti:, fuis'tis, you have been, you were*  
*you have been, you were*  
*fu'it, he has been, he was fue:'runt or fue:'re,*  
*they have been, they were*

PLUPERFECT (TENSE SIGN -era:-)



fu'eram, *I had been*                      fuera:'mus, *we had been*  
fu'era:s, *you had been*                  fuera:'tis, *you had been*  
fu'erat, *he had been*                   fu'erant, *they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT (TENSE SIGN -eri-)

fu'ero:, *I shall have been* fue'rimus, *we shall have been*  
fu'eris, *you will have been* fue'ritis, *you will have been*  
fu'erit, *he will have been* fu'erint, *they will have been*

1. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect.
2. Observe that the pluperfect may be formed by adding *eram\*, *the imperfect of sum\*, to the perfect stem. The tense sign is -era:-.





## Page 60

3. Observe that the future perfect may be formed by adding *erol*, *the future of sum*, to the perfect stem. But the third person plural ends in *-erint*, not in *-erunt*. The tense sign is *-eri-*.

4. All active perfects, pluperfects, and future perfects are formed on the perfect stem and inflected in the same way.

### 188. DIALOGUE

## THE BOYS TITUS, MARCUS, AND QUINTUS

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 289.

M. Ubi fuistis, Tite et Quinte?

T. Ego in meo ludo fui et Quintus in suo ludo fuit. Boni pueri fuimus.

Fuitne Sextus in vico hodie?

M. Fuit. Nuper per agros proximos fluvio properabat. Ibi is et Cornelius habent navigium.

T. *Navigium* dicis? Alii[1] narra eam fabulam!

M. Vero (*Yes, truly*), pulchrum et novum navigium!

Q. Cuius pecunia[2] Sextus et Cornelius id navigium parant? Quis iis pecuniam dat?

M. Amici Corneli multum habent aurum et puer pecunia non eget.

T. Quo pueri navigabunt? Navigabuntne longe a terra?

M. Dubia sunt consilia eorum. Sed hodie, credo, si ventus erit idoneus, ad maximam insulam navigabunt. Iam antea ibi fuerunt.

Tum autem ventus erat perfidus et pueri magno in periculo erant.

Q. Aqua vento commota est inimica nautis semper, et saepe perfidus ventus navigia rapit, agit, deletque. Ii pueri, si non fuerint maxime attenti, irata aqua et valido vento superabuntur et ita interficientur.

[Footnote 1: Dative case. (Cf. Sec. 109.)]

[Footnote 2: Ablative of means.]

### 189. EXERCISE

1. Where had the boys been before? They had been in school. 2. Where had Sextus been? He had been in a field next to the river. 3. Who has been with Sextus to-day? Cornelius has been with him. 4. Who says so? Marcus. 5. If the wind has been suitable, the boys have been in the boat. 6. Soon we shall sail with the boys. 7. There[3] will be no danger, if we are (shall have been) careful.[4]



[Footnote 3: The expletive *there* is not expressed, but the verb will precede the subject, as in English.]

[Footnote 4: This predicate adjective must be nominative plural to agree with *we*.]

## LESSON XXXII

### THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

[Special Vocabulary]

NOUNS *animus*, -i:\, m., *\_mind, heart; spirit, feeling\_ (animate)* *bracchium*, *bracchi*:\, n., *forearm, arm* *porta*, -ae\, f., *\_gate\_ (portal)*

#### ADJECTIVES

*adversus*, -a, -um\, *opposite; adverse, contrary*

*ple:nus*, -a, -um\, *\_full\_ (plenty)*

#### PREPOSITION

*pro*:\, *with abl.*, *\_before; in behalf of; instead of\_*



# Page 61

## ADVERB

*diu:*\, \_for a long time, long\_

190. Meanings of the Perfect. The perfect tense has two distinct meanings. The first of these is equivalent to the English present perfect, or perfect with *have*, and denotes that the action of the verb is complete at the time of speaking; as, *I have finished my work*. As this denotes completed action at a definite time, it is called the *perfect definite*.

The perfect is also used to denote an action that happened *sometime in the past*; as, *I finished my work*. As no definite time is specified, this is called the *perfect indefinite*. It corresponds to the ordinary use of the English past tense.

a. Note carefully the difference between the following tenses:

*I {was finishing } my work* (imperfect, Sec. 134)  
 {used to finish}  
*I finished my work* (perfect indefinite)  
*I have finished my work* (perfect definite)

When telling a story the Latin uses the *perfect indefinite* to mark the different *forward steps* of the narrative, and the *imperfect* to *describe situations and circumstances* that attend these steps. If the following sentences were Latin, what tenses would be used?

"Last week I went to Boston. I was trying to find an old friend of mine, but he was out of the city. Yesterday I returned home."

191. Inflection of the Perfect. We learned in Sec. 186 that any perfect is inflected by adding the endings of the perfect to the perfect stem. The inflection in the four regular conjugations is then as follows:

CONJ. I    *ama:vi:    I have loved, I loved or did love*  
 CONJ. II   *monui:    I have advised, I advised or did advise*  
 CONJ. III   *re:xi:    I have ruled, I ruled or did rule*  
*ce:pi:    I have taken, I took or did take*  
 CONJ. IV   *audi:vi:    I have heard, I heard or did hear*

## PERFECT STEMS

*ama:v- monu- re:x- ce:p- audi:v-*

## SINGULAR

1. *ama:'vi: mo'nui: re:'xi: ce:'pi: audi:'vi:*



2. ama:vis'ti: monuis'ti: re:xis'ti: ce:pis'ti: audi:vis'ti:
3. ama:'vit mo'nuit re:'xit ce:'pit audi:'vit

#### PLURAL

1. ama:'vimus monu'imus re:'ximus ce:'pimus audi:'vimus
2. ama:vis'tis monuis'tis re:xis'tis ce:pis'tis audi:vis'tis
3. ama:ve:'runt monue:'runt re:xe:'runt ce:pe:'runt audi:ve:'runt  
*or or or or or*  
 ama:ve:'re monue:'re re:xe:'re ce:pe:'re audi:ve:'re

1. The first person of the perfect is always given as the third of the principal parts. From this we get the perfect stem. *This shows the absolute necessity of learning the principal parts thoroughly.*

## Page 62

2. Nearly all perfects of the first conjugation are formed by adding -vi: to the present stem. Like *amavi\ inflect paravi\, vocavi\, curavi\, laudavi\*.

3. Note carefully the changing accent in the perfect. Drill on it.

192. Learn the principal parts and inflect the perfects:

PRES. INDIC. PRES. INFIN. PERF. INDIC. do: dare dedi: *give* de:leo: de:le:re  
de:le:vi: *destroy* habeo: habere habui: *have* moveo: move:re mo:vi: *move* pa:reo:  
pa:re:re pa:rui: *obey* prohibeo: prohibe:re prohi:bui: *restrain, keep from* video: vide:re  
vi:di: *see* di:co: di:cere di:xi: *say* disce:do: disce:dere discessi: *depart* du:co: du:cere  
du:xi: *lead* facio: facere fe:ci: *make, do* mitto: mittere mi:si: *send* mu:nio: mu:ni:re  
mu:ni:vi: *fortify* venio: veni:re ve:ni: *come*

193. PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Continued*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

Cepheus, adversa fortuna maxime commotus, discessit et multis cum lacrimis populo Aethiopiae verba oraculi narravit. Fata Andromedae, puellae pulchrae, a toto populo deplorabantur, tamen nullum erat auxilium. Deinde Cepheus cum pleno tristitiae animo caram suam filiam ex oppidi porta ad aquam duxit et brachia eius ad saxa dura revinxit. Tum amici puellae miserae longe discesserunt et diu monstrum saevum exspectaverunt.

Tum forte Perseus, alis fretus, super Aethiopiam volabat. Vidit populum, Andromedam, lacrimas, et, magnopere attonitus, ad terram descendit. Tum Cepheus ei totas curas narravit et ita dixit: "Parebo verbis oraculi, et pro patria filiam meam dabo; sed si id monstrum interficies et Andromedam servabis, tibi (*to you*) eam dabo."

## LESSON XXXIII

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE  
PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVE

194. CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV  
amo: moneo: rego: capio: audio:  
PERFECT STEMS ama:v- monu- re:x- ce:p- audi:v-

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE  
TENSE SIGN -era:-



SINGULAR

I had loved I had advised I had ruled I had taken I had heard

1. ama:'veram monu'eram re:'xeram ce:'peram audi:'veram
2. ama:'vera:s monu'era:s re:'xera:s ce:'pera:s audi:'vera:s
3. ama:'verat monu'erat re:'xerat ce:'perat audi:'verat

PLURAL 1. ama:vera:'mus monuera:'mus re:xera:'mus ce:pera:'mus —era:'mus 2. ama:vera:'tis monuera:'tis re:xera:'tis ce:pera:'tis —era:'tis 3. ama'verant monu'erant re:'xerant ce:'perant audi:'verant



## Page 63

### FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE TENSE SIGN -eri-

#### SINGULAR

I shall have I shall have I shall have I shall have I shall have  
loved advised ruled taken heard

1. ama:'vero: monu'ero: re:'xero: ce:'pero: audi:'vero:
2. ama:'veris monu'eris re:'xeris ce:'peris audi:'veris
3. ama:'verit monu'erit re:'xerit ce:'perit audi:'verit

#### PLURAL

1. ama:ve'rimus monue'rimus re:xe'rimus ce:pe'rimus audi:ve'rimus
2. ama:ve'ritis monue'ritis re:xe'ritis ce:pe'ritis audi:ve'ritis
3. ama:'verint monu'erint re:'xerint ce:'perint audi:'verint

1. Observe that these are all inflected alike and the rules for formation given in Sec. 187.2-4 hold good here.

2. In like manner inflect the pluperfect and future perfect indicative active of *dol*, *porto*, *deleo*, *moveo*, *habeo*, *dico*, *discedo*, *facio*, *venio*, *munio*.

195. The Perfect Active Infinitive. The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding -isse to the perfect stem.

#### CONJ PERFECT STEM PERFECT INFINITIVE

- |          |           |                                   |
|----------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| I.       | ama:v-    | ama:vis'se, <i>to have loved</i>  |
| II.      | monu-     | monuis'se, <i>to have advised</i> |
| III. (a) | re:x-     | re:xis'se, <i>to have ruled</i>   |
|          | (b) ce:p- | ce:pis'se, <i>to have taken</i>   |
| IV.      | audi:v\   | audi:vis'se, <i>to have heard</i> |
| sum      | fu-       | fuis'se, <i>to have been</i>      |

1. In like manner give the perfect infinitive active of *dol*, *porto*, *deleo*, *moveo*, *habeo*, *dico*, *discedo*, *facio*, *venio*, *munio*.

#### 196. EXERCISES



I. 1. Habuisti, moverunt, miserant. 2. Vedit, dixeris, duxisse. 3. Misistis, paruerunt, discesseramus. 4. Munivit, dederam, misero. 5. Habuerimus, delevi, paruit, fuisse. 6. Dederas, muniveritis, veneratis, misisse. 7. Veneras, fecisse, dederatis, portaveris.

8. Quem verba oraculi moverant? Populum verba oraculi moverant. 9. Cui Cepheus verba oraculi narraverit? Perseo Cepheus verba oraculi narraverit. 10. Amici ab Andromeda discesserint. 11. Monstrum saevum domicilia multa deleverat. 12. Ubi monstrum vidistis? Id in aqua vidimus. 13. Quid monstrum faciet? Monstrum Andromedam interficiet.

II. 1. They have obeyed, we have destroyed, I shall have had. 2. We shall have sent, I had come, they have fortified. 3. I had departed, he has obeyed, you have sent (*sing. and plur.*). 4. To have destroyed, to have seen, he will have given, they have carried. 5. He had destroyed, he has moved, you have had (*sing. and plur.*). 6. I have given, you had moved (*sing. and plur.*), we had said. 7. You will have made (*sing. and plur.*), they will have led, to have given.

8. Who had seen the monster? Andromeda had seen it. 9. Why had the men departed from<sup>[1]</sup> the towns? They had departed because the monster had come. 10. Did Cepheus obey<sup>[2]</sup> the oracle<sup>[3]</sup>? He did.





## Page 64

[Footnote 1: exl. *What would ab\ mean?*]

[Footnote 2: *Did ... obey*, perfect tense.]

[Footnote 3: What case?]

## LESSON XXXIV

### REVIEW OF THE ACTIVE VOICE

[Special Vocabulary]

ADVERBS *celeriter\*, *\_quickly\_ (celerity)* *de:nique\*, *finally* *graviter\*, *\_heavily, severely\_ (gravity)* *subito:\*, *suddenly*

VERB

*reporto:*, *-a:re*, *-a:vi:\*, *\_bring back, restore; win, gain\_ (report)*

197. A review of the tenses of the indicative active shows the following formation:

{ PRESENT = First of the principal parts  
TENSES { IMPERFECT = Present stem + -ba-m  
OF THE { FUTURE = Present stem + -bo, Conj. I and II  
INDICATIVE { -a-m, Conj. III and IV  
{ PERFECT = Third of the principal parts  
{ PLUPERFECT = Perfect stem + -era-m  
{ FUTURE PERFECT = Perfect stem + -ero

198. The synopsis of the active voice of *amo\*, as far as we have learned the conjugation, is as follows:

PRINCIPAL PARTS *amo:*, *ama:re*, *ama:vi:*

PRES. STEM *ama:-*

{ *Pres.* *amo:*  
INDIC. { *Imperf.* *ama:bam*  
{ *Fut.* *ama:bo:*  
PRES. IMV. *ama:*  
PRES. INFIN. *ama:re*

PERF. STEM *ama:v-*



{ *Perf.* ama:vi:  
 INDIC. { *Pluperf.* ama:veram  
 { *Fut. perf.* ama:vero:  
 PERF. INFIN. ama:visse

1. Learn to write in the same form and to give rapidly the principal parts and synopsis of *parol*, *do*, *laudol*, *deleo*, *habeol*, *moveol*, *pareol*, *video*, *dicol*, *discedol*, *ducol*, *mittol*, *capiol*, *munio*, *venio*. [1]

[Footnote 1: Learn to give synopses rapidly, and not only in the first person singular but in any person of either number.]

199. Learn the following principal parts: [2]

PRES. INDIC. PRES. INFIN. PERF. INDIC.

#### IRREGULAR VERBS

sum	esse	fui:	<i>be</i>
ab'sum	abes'se	a:'fui:	<i>be away</i>
do:	dare	dedi:	<i>give</i>

#### CONJUGATION II

contineo:	contine:re	continui:	<i>hold in, keep</i>
doceo:	doce:re	docui:	<i>teach</i>
egeo:	ege:re	egui:	<i>need</i>
faveo:	fave:re	fa:vi:	<i>favor</i>
iubeo:	iube:re	iussi:	<i>order</i>
noceo:	noce:re	nocui:	<i>injure</i>
persua:deo:	persua:de:re	persua:si:	<i>persuade</i>
respondeo:	responde:re	respondi:	<i>reply</i>
sedeo:	sede:re	se:di:	<i>sit</i>



## Page 65

studeo:      stude:re      studui:      *be eager*

### CONJUGATION III

ago:          agere          e:gi:          *drive*  
 cre:do:      cre:dere      cre:didi:      *believe*  
 fugio:      fugere      fu:gi:      *flee*  
 iacio:      iacere      ie:ci:      *hurl*  
 interficio:    interficere    interfe:ci:    *kill*  
 rapio:      rapere      rapui:      *seize*  
 resis'to:    resis'tere    re'stiti:      *resist*

### CONJUGATION IV

repe'rio: reperi:'re rep'peri: *find*

[Footnote 2: These are all verbs that you have had before, and the perfect is the only new form to be learned.]

### 200. PERSEUS AND ANDROMEDA (*Concluded*)

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290. Read the whole story.

Perseus semper proelio studebat[3] et respondit,[3] "Verba tua sunt maxime grata," et laetus arma sua magica paravit.[3] Subito monstrum videtur; celeriter per aquam properat et Andromedae adpropinquat. Eius amici longe absunt et misera puella est sola. Perseus autem sine mora super aquam volavit.[3] Subito descendit[3] et duro gladio saevum monstrum graviter vulneravit.[3] Diu pugnatur,[4] diu proelium est dubium. Denique autem Perseus monstrum interfecit[3] et victoriam reportavit.[3] Tum ad saxum venit[3] et Andromedam liberavit[3] et eam ad Cepheum duxit.[3] Is, nuper miser, nunc laetus, ita dixit[3]: "Tuo auxilio, mi amice, cara filia mea est libera; tua est Andromeda." Diu Perseus cum Andromeda ibi habitabat[3] et magnopere a toto populo amabatur.[3]

[Footnote 3: See if you can explain the use of the perfects and imperfects in this passage.]

[Footnote 4: The verb pugnatur means, literally, *it is fought*; translate freely, *the battle is fought*, or *the contest rages*. The verb pugno in Latin is intransitive, and so does not have a personal subject in the passive. A verb with an indeterminate subject, designated in English by *it*, is called impersonal.]



## LESSON XXXV

### THE PASSIVE PERFECTS OF THE INDICATIVE THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

201. The fourth and last of the principal parts (Sec. 183) is the *perfect passive participle*. *From it we get the participial stem on which are formed the future active infinitive and all the passive perfects.*

1. Learn the following principal parts, which are for the first time given in full:

CONJ. PRES. INDIC. PRES. INFIN. PERF. INDIC. PERF. PASS. PART.

I. amo: ama:'-re ama:'v-i: ama:'t-us

This is the model for all regular verbs of the first conjugation.

II. mo'neo: mone:'-re mo'nu-i: mo'nit-us

III. rego: re'ge-re re:x-i: re:ct-us

ca'pio: ca'pe-re ce:p-i: cap-t-us

IV. au'dio: audi:'-re audi:'v-i: audi:'t-us



## Page 66

2. The base of the participial stem is found by dropping -us from the perfect passive participle.

202. In English the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses of the indicative passive are made up of forms of the auxiliary verb *to be* and the past participle; as, *I have been loved, I had been loved, I shall have been loved.*

Very similarly, in Latin, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive tenses use respectively the present, imperfect, and future of *sum* as an auxiliary verb with the perfect passive participle, as

Perfect passive, *ama'tus sum*, *\_I have been\_ or \_was loved\_*

Pluperfect passive, *ama'tus eram*, *I had been loved*

Future perfect passive, *ama'tus ero*, *\_I shall have been loved\_*

1. In the same way give the synopsis of the corresponding tenses of *moneo*, *rego*, *cipio*, and *audio*, and give the English meanings.

203. Nature of the Participle. A participle is partly verb and partly adjective. As a verb it possesses tense and voice. As an adjective it is declined and agrees with the word it modifies in gender, number, and case.

204. The perfect passive participle is declined like *bonus, bona, bonum*, and in the compound tenses (Sec. 202) it agrees as a predicate adjective with the subject of the verb.

### EXAMPLES IN SINGULAR

*Vir laudatus est, the man was praised, or has been praised*

*Puella laudata est, the girl was praised, or has been praised*

*Consilium laudatum est, the plan was praised, or has been praised*

### EXAMPLES IN PLURAL

*Viri laudati sunt, the men were praised, or have been praised*

*Puellae laudatae sunt, the girls were praised, or have been praised*

*Consilia laudata sunt, the plans were praised, or have been praised*

1. Inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of *amo*, *moneo*, *rego*, *cipio*, and *audio* (Secs. 488-492).



205. The perfect passive infinitive is formed by adding *essel*, *the present infinitive of sum*, to the perfect passive participle; as, *ama't-us* (-a, -um) *essel*, *\_to have been loved\_*; *mo'nit-us* (-a, -um) *essel*, *to have been advised*.

1. Form the perfect passive infinitive of *rego*, *capiō*, *audio*, and give the *English meanings*.

206. The future active infinitive is formed by adding *essel*, *the present infinitive of sum*, to the future active participle. This participle is made by adding *-urus*, -a, -um to the base of the participial stem. Thus the future active infinitive of *amō* is *amat-u'rus* (-a, -um) *essel*, *to be about to love*.

- a. Note that in forming the three tenses of the active infinitive we use all three conjugation stems:



## Page 67

Present, amare (present stem), *to love*

Perfect, amavisse (perfect stem), *to have loved*

Future, amaturus esse (participial stem), *to be about to love*

1. Give the three tenses of the active infinitive of *laudo*\, *moneo*\, *rego*\, *cipio*\, *audio*\, with the English meanings.

### 207. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fabula Andromedae narrata est. 2. Multae fabulae a magistro narratae sunt. 3. Ager ab agricola valido aratus erat. 4. Agri ab agricolis validis arati erant. 5. Aurum a servo perfido ad domicilium suum portatum erit. 6. Nostra arma a legato laudata sunt. Quis vestra arma laudavit? 7. Ab ancilla tua ad cenam vocatae sumus. 8. Andromeda monstro non data est, quia monstrum a Perseo necatum erat.

II. 1. The provinces were laid waste, the field had been laid waste, the towns will have been laid waste. 2. The oracles were heard, the oracle was heard, the oracles had been heard. 3. The oracle will have been heard, the province had been captured, the boats have been captured. 4. The fields were laid waste, the man was advised, the girls will have been advised. 5. The towns had been ruled, we shall have been captured, you will have been heard.

## LESSON XXXVI

### REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS : PREPOSITIONS YES-OR-NO QUESTIONS

[Special Vocabulary]

*dexter, dextra, dextrum*\, *\_right\_ (dextrous)*

*sinister, sinistra, sinistrum*\, *left*

*fru:stra:*\, *adv., \_in vain\_ (frustrate)*

*gero:*, *gerere, gessi:*, *gestus*\, *\_bear, carry on; wear\_;*

*bellum gerere*\, *to wage war*

*occupo:*, *occupa:re, occupa:vi:*, *occupa:tus*\, *\_seize, take possession*

*of\_ (occupy)*

*postulo:*, *postula:re, postula:vi:*, *postula:tus*\, *demand*

*(ex-postulate)*

*recu:so:*, *recu:sa:re, recu:sa:vi:*, *recu:sa:tus*\, *\_refuse\_*

*sto:*, *sta:re, steti:*, *status*\, *stand*

*tempto:*, *tempta:re, tempta:vi:*, *tempta:tus*\, *\_try, tempt, test;*

*attempt\_*

*teneo:*, *tene:re, tenui:*, *—\, keep, hold (tenacious)*



The word *ubi*, which we have used so much in the sense of *\_where\_* in asking a question, has two other uses equally important:

1. *ubi* = *\_when\_*, as a relative conjunction denoting time; as,  
Ubi monstrum audiverunt, fugerunt\, *when they heard the monster, they fled*
2. *ubi* = *\_where\_*, as a relative conjunction denoting place; as,  
Video oppidum ubi Galba habitat\, *I see the town where Galba lives*



## Page 68

*ubi* is called a *\_relative conjunction\_* because it is equivalent to a relative pronoun. *\_When\_* in the first sentence is equivalent to *\_at the time at which\_*; *\_and* in the second, *where* is equivalent to *the place /in which\_*.

208. The following list shows the principal parts of all the verbs you have had excepting those used in the paradigms. The parts you have had before are given for review, and the perfect participle is the only new form for you to learn. Sometimes one or more of the principal parts are lacking, which means that the verb has no forms based on that stem. A few verbs lack the perfect passive participle but have the future active participle in -u:rus, which appears in the principal parts instead.

### IRREGULAR VERBS

sum esse fui: futu:rus *be*  
absum abesse a:fui: a:futu:rus *be away*  
do:[1] dare dedi: datus *give*

[Footnote 1: *do:* is best classed with the irregular verbs because of the short *a* in the present and participial stems.]

### CONJUGATION I

porto: porta:re porta:vi: porta:tus *carry*

So for all verbs of this conjugation thus far used.

### CONJUGATION II

contineo: contine:re continui: contentus *hold in, keep* de:leo: de:le:re de:le:vi:  
de:le:tus *destroy* doceo: doce:re docui: doctus *teach* egeo: ege:re egui: — *lack*  
faveo: fave:re fa:vi: fautu:rus *favor* iubeo: iube:re iussi: iussus *order* moveo: move:re  
mo:vi: mo:tus *move* noceo: noce:re nocui: nocitu:rus *injure* pa:reo: pa:re:re pa:rui:  
— *obey* persua:deo: persua:de:re persua:si: persua:sus *persuade (from)* prohibeo:  
prohibe:re prohibui: prohibitus *restrain, keep* respondeo: responde:re respondi:  
respo:nsus *reply* sedeo: sede:re se:di: -sessus *sit* studeo: stude:re studui: — *be*  
*eager* video: vide:re vi:di: vi:sus *see*

### CONJUGATION III

ago: agere e:gi: a:ctus *drive* cre:do: cre:dere cre:didi: cre:ditus *believe* di:co: di:cere  
di:xi: dictus *say* disce:do: disce:dere discessi: discessus *depart* du:co: du:cere du:xi:  
ductus *lead* facio:[2] facere fe:ci: factus *make* fugio: fugere fu:gi: fugitu:rus *flee* iacio:  
iacere ie:ci: iactus *hurl* interficio: interficere interfe:ci: interfectus *kill* mitto: mittere



mi:si: missus *send* rapio: rapere rapui: raptus *seize* resisto: resistere restiti: ———  
*resist*

CONJUGATION IV



## Page 69

mu:nio:    mu:ni:re    mu:ni:vi:    mu:ni:tus    *fortify*  
 reperio:    reperi:re    rep'peri:    repertus    *find*  
 venio:    veni:re    ve:ni:    ventus    *come*

[Footnote 2: *facio* has an irregular passive which will be presented later.]

### 209. Prepositions.

1. We learned in Secs. 52, 53 that only the *accusative* and the *ablative* are used with prepositions, and that prepositions expressing ablative relations govern the ablative case. Those we have had are here summarized. The table following should be learned.

a: or ab, *from, by* cum, *with* de:, *down from, concerning* e: or ex, *out from, out of* pro:, *before, in front of; for, in behalf of* sine, *without*

2. Prepositions not expressing ablative relations must govern the *accusative* (Sec. 52). Of these we have had the following:

ad, *to*;  
 apud, *among*;  
 per, *through*

There are many others which you will meet as we proceed.

3. The preposition *in* when meaning *in* or *on* governs the *ablative*; when meaning *to, into, against* (relations foreign to the *ablative*) *in* governs the *accusative*.

### 210. Yes-or-No Questions. Questions not introduced by some interrogative word like *who, why, when, etc.*, but expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, may take one of three forms:

1. *Is he coming?* (Asking for information. Implying nothing as to the answer expected.)
2. *Is he not coming?* (Expecting the answer *yes*.)
3. *He isn't coming, is he?* (Expecting the answer *no*.)

These three forms are rendered in Latin as follows:

1. Venitne? *is he coming?*
2. Nonne venit? *is he not coming?*
3. Num venit? *he isn't coming, is he?*



a. -ne, the question sign, is usually added to the verb, which then stands first.

b. We learned in Sec. 56.b that yes-or-no questions are usually answered by repeating the verb, with or without a negative. Instead of this, *ital*, *vero*, *certe*, etc. (*\_so, truly, certainly\_, etc.*) may be used for *\_yes\_*, and *non*, *minime*, etc. for *\_no\_* if the denial is emphatic, as, *\_by no means\_*, *\_not at all\_*.

## \_211.\_ EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 290.

I. 1. Nonne habebat Cornelia ornamenta auri? Habebat. 2. Num Sextus legatus scutum in dextro bracchio gerebat? Non in dextro, sed sinistro in bracchio Sextus scutum gerebat. 3. Frustra bella multa ab Gallis gesta erant. 4. Ubi oppidum a perfido Sexto occupatum est, oppidani miseri gladio interfecti sunt. 5. Id oppidum erat plenum frumenti. 6. Nonne Sextus ab oppidanis frumentum postulavit? Vero, sed ii recusaverunt frumentum dare. 7. Cur oppidum ab Sexto deletum est? Quia frumentum recusatum est. 8. Ea victoria non dubia erat. 9. Oppidani erant defessi et armis egebant. 10. Num fugam temptaverunt? Minime.



## Page 70

II. 1. Where was Julia standing? She was standing where you had ordered. 2. Was Julia wearing any ornaments? She had many ornaments of gold. 3. Did she not attempt flight when she saw the danger? She did. 4. Who captured her? Galba captured her without delay and held her by the left arm. 5. She didn't have the lady's gold, did she? No, the gold had been taken by a faithless maid and has been brought back.

\* \* \* \* \*

Fourth Review, Lessons XXVII-XXXVI, Secs. 513-516

\* \* \* \* \*

## LESSON XXXVII

### CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM* : THE INFINITIVE USED AS IN ENGLISH

[Special Vocabulary]

*neque*\ or *nec*\, conj., *neither, nor, and ... not*;

*neque ... neque*\, *\_neither ... nor\_*

*castellum*, -i:\, n., *redoubt, fort* (castle)

*coti:die*\, adv., *\_daily\_*

*cesso*:, *cessa:re*, *cessa:vi*:, *cessa:tus*, *\_cease\_*, with the infin.

*incipio*:, *incipere*, *ince:pi*:, *inceptus*\, *\_begin\_* (*incipient*),

with the infin.

*oppugno*:, *oppugna:re*, *oppugna:vi*:, *oppugna:tus*\, *storm, assail*

*peto*:, *petere*, *petiv*\ or *petii*:, *peti:tus*\, *aim at, assail, storm,*

*attack; seek, ask* (petition)

*po:no*:, *po:nere*, *posui*:, *positus*\, *\_place, put\_* (*position*);

*castra po:nere*\, *to pitch camp*

*possum*, *posse*, *potui*:, —\, *\_be able, can\_* (*potent*), with the infin.

*veto*:, *veta:re*, *vetui*:, *vetitus*\, *forbid* (*veto*), with the infin.;

opposite of *iubeo*:\, *\_command\_*

*vinco*:, *vincere*, *vi:ci*:, *victus*\, *conquer* (*in-vincible*)

*vi:vo*:, *vi:vere*, *vi:xi*:, —\, *\_live, be alive\_* (*re-vive*)

212. Learn the principal parts of *possum*\, *\_I am able\_*, *\_I can\_*, and its inflection in the indicative and infinitive. (Cf. Sec. 495.)

a. *Possum*\, *\_I can\_*, is a compound of *potis*\, *able*, and *sum*\, *\_I am\_*.



213. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative. The *infinitive* (cf. Sec. 173) is a *verbal noun*. Used as a noun, it has the constructions of a noun. As a verb it can govern a case and be modified by an adverb. The uses of the infinitive are much the same in Latin as in English.

1. In English certain verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of a substantive in the objective case and an infinitive, as, *he commanded the men to flee*. Such object clauses are called infinitive clauses, and the substantive is said to be the subject of the infinitive. Similarly in Latin, some verbs of *wishing, commanding, forbidding*, and the like are used with an object clause consisting of an infinitive with a subject in the accusative case, as, *Is viros fugere iussit*, *he commanded the men to flee*.

\_214.\_ RULE. Subject of the Infinitive. \_The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.\_



## Page 71

215. The Complementary Infinitive. In English a verb is often followed by an infinitive to complete its meaning, as, *the Romans are able to conquer the Gauls*. This is called the *complementary* infinitive, as the predicate is not *complete* without the added infinitive.

Similarly in Latin, *verbs of incomplete predication* are completed by the infinitive. Among such verbs are *possum*\, *\_I am able, I can\_*; *propero*\, *maturo*\, *\_I hasten\_*; *tempto*\, *I attempt*; as

Romani Gallos superare possunt,  
*the Romans are able to (or can) conquer the Gauls*  
 Bellum gerere maturant,  
*they hasten to wage war*

a. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

Mali pueri esse boni non possunt, *bad boys are not able to (or cannot) be good*.

Observe that *boni* agrees with *pueri*.

216. The Infinitive used as a Noun. In English the infinitive is often used as a pure noun, as the subject of a sentence, or as a predicate nominative. For example, *To conquer (= conquering) is pleasing; To see (= seeing) is to believe (= believing)*. The same use of the infinitive is found in Latin, especially with *est*, as

Superare est gratum, *to conquer is pleasing*  
 Videre est credere, *to see is to believe*

a. In the construction above, the infinitive often has a subject, which must then be in the accusative case, as

Galbam superare inimicos est gratum multis,  
*for Galba to conquer his enemies is pleasing to many*

b. An infinitive used as a noun is neuter singular. Thus, in the sentence *superare est gratum*\, the predicate adjective *gratum* is in the neuter nominative singular to agree with *superare* the subject.

### \_217.\_ EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.



I. 1. Magister ludi liberos cum diligentia laborare iussit. 2. Egere cibo et vino est viris molestum. 3. Viri armati vetuerunt Gallos castra ibi ponere. 4. Estne legatus in castello an in muro? Is est pro porta. 5. Ubi nostri[1] fugere inceperunt, legatus ab vestris[1] captus est. 6. Galli castellum ibi oppugnaverant ubi praesidium erat infirmum. 7. Alii pugnare temptabant, alii portas petebant. 8. Feminae pro domiciliis sedebant neque resistere validis Gallis poterant. 9. Bellum est saevum, nec infirmis nec miseris favet. 10. Sed viri arma postulabant et studebant Gallos de muris agere. 11. Id castellum ab Gallis occupari Romanis non gratum erit. 12. Galli ubi a Romanis victi sunt, esse liberi[2] cessaverunt. 13. Diu sine aqua vivere non potestis.

II. 1. The girl began daily to carry water from the river to the gates. 2. The Gauls had pitched their camp in a place suitable for a battle. 3. For a long time they tried in vain to seize the redoubt. 4. Neither did they cease to hurl weapons against[3] the walls. 5. But they were not able to (could not) take the town.



## Page 72

[Footnote 1: Supply *men. nostrī*, *vestrī*, and *suī* are often used as nouns in this way.]

[Footnote 2: Not *children*. The Romans used *liberī* either as an adjective, meaning *free*, or as a noun, meaning *the free*, thereby signifying their *free-born children*. The word was never applied to children of slaves.]

[Footnote 3: *in* with the accusative.]

### 218. THE FAITHLESS TARPE'IA

Sabini olim cum Romanis bellum gerebant et multas victorias reportaverant. Iam agros proximos muris vastabant, iam oppido adpropinquabant. Romani autem in Capitolium fugerant et longe periculo aberant. Muris validis et saxis altis credebant. Frustra Sabini tela iaciebant, frustra portas duras petebant; castellum occupare non poterant. Deinde novum consilium ceperunt.[4]

Tarpeia erat puella Romana pulchra et superba. Cotidie aquam copiis Romanis in Capitolium portabat. Ei[5] non nocebant Sabini, quod ea sine armis erat neque Sabini bellum cum feminis liberisque gerebant. Tarpeia autem maxime amabat ornamenta auri. Cotidie Sabinorum ornamenta videbat et mox ea desiderare incipiebat. Ei unus ex[6] Sabinis dixit, "Duc copias Sabinas intra portas, Tarpeia, et maxima erunt praemia tua."

[Footnote 4: *consilium capere*, *to make a plan*. Why is the *perfect* tense used here and the *imperfect* in the preceding sentences? Explain the use of tenses in the next paragraph.]

[Footnote 5: Dative with *nocebant*. (Cf. Sec. 154.)]

[Footnote 6: *ex*, *out of*, i.e. *from the number of*; best translated *of*.]

[Illustration: TARPEIA PUELLA PERFIDA]

## LESSON XXXVIII

### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AND THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

219. Sentences are *simple*, *compound*, or *complex*.

a. A *simple sentence* is a sentence containing but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *The Romans approached the town*.

*b. A compound sentence is a sentence containing two or more independent statements:*

*The Romans approached the town | and | the enemy fled.*

NOTE. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend upon another statement.

*c. A complex sentence is a sentence containing one independent statement and one or more dependent statements:*

*When the Romans approached the town | the enemy fled.*

NOTE. A dependent or subordinate statement is one that depends on or qualifies another statement; thus *the enemy fled* is independent, and *when the Romans approached the town* is dependent or subordinate.

*d. The separate statements in a compound or complex sentence are called clauses. In a complex sentence the independent statement is called the main clause and the dependent statement the subordinate clause.*

220. Examine the complex sentence

## Page 73

*The Romans killed the men who were taken*

Here are two clauses:

- a. The main clause, *The Romans killed the men*
- b. The subordinate clause, *who were taken*

The word *who* is a pronoun, for it takes the place of the noun *men*. It also connects the subordinate clause *who were taken* with the noun *men*. Hence the clause is an *adjective clause*. A pronoun that connects an *adjective clause* with a substantive is called a *relative pronoun*, and the substantive for which the relative pronoun stands is called its *antecedent*. The relative pronouns in English are *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, *what*, *that*.

221. The relative pronoun in Latin is *qui*:\, *quae*\, *quod*\, and it is declined as follows:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <i>qui</i> :\	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i> :\	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
Gen. <i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quo</i> :rum	<i>qua</i> :rum	<i>quo</i> :rum
Dat. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
Acc. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quo</i> :s	<i>qua</i> :s	<i>quae</i>
Abl. <i>quo</i> :\	<i>qua</i> :\	<i>quo</i> :\	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

1. Review the declension of *is*\\, Sec. 114, and note the similarity in the endings. The forms *qui*:\\, *quae*\\, and *quibus*\\ are the only forms showing new endings.

NOTE. The genitive *cuius*\\ and the dative *cui*\\ are pronounced *c[oo]i'y[oo]s* (two syllables) and *c[oo]i* (one syllable).

222. The Relative Pronoun is translated as follows:[1]

MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <i>who, that which, what, that</i>	
Gen. <i>of whom, whose of which, of what, whose</i>	
Dat. <i>to or for whom to or for which, to or for what</i>	
Acc. <i>whom, that which, what, that</i>	
Abl. <i>from, etc., whom from, etc., which or what</i>	

[Footnote 1: This table of meanings need not be memorized. It is inserted for reference when translating.]



a. We see from the table above that *qui*:\, when it refers to a person, is translated by some form of *\_who\_* or by *\_that\_*; and that when it refers to anything else it is translated by *\_which, what\_, or \_that\_*.

\_223.\_ Note the following sentences:

*The Romans killed the men who were taken* *The Romans killed the woman who was taken*  
*Romani interfecerunt viros qui capti sunt*\ *Romani interfecerunt feminam quae capta est*\

In the first sentence *who* (*qui*) refers to the antecedent *men* (*viros*), and is *masculine plural*. In the second, *who* (*quae*) refers to *woman* (*feminam*), and *feminine singular*. From this we learn that the relative must agree with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*. In neither of the sentences are the antecedents and relatives in the same case. *Viros*\ and *feminam*\ are accusatives, and *qui*\ and *quae*\ are nominatives, being the subjects of the subordinate clauses. Hence

## Page 74

224. RULE. Agreement of the Relative. *A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause.*

225. Interrogative Pronouns. An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that asks a question. In English the interrogatives are *who? which? what?* In Latin they are *quis?* \ *quid?* \ (pronoun) and *qui:?* \ *quae?* \ *quod?* \ (adjective).

226. Examine the sentences

- a. *Who is the man?* Quis est vir?
- b. *What man is leading them?* Qui vir eos ducit?

In a, *who* is an interrogative *pronoun*. In b, *what* is an interrogative *adjective*. Observe that in Latin *quis* \, *quid* \ is the *pronoun* and *qui:* \, *quae* \, *quod* \ is the *\_adjective\_*.

227. 1. The interrogative adjective *qui:* \, *quae* \, *quod* \ is declined just like the relative pronoun. (See Sec. 221.)

2. The interrogative pronoun *quis* \, *quid* \ is declined like *qui:* \, *quae* \, *quod* \ in the plural. In the singular it is declined as follows:

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.

Nom. quis, *who?* quid, *what? which?*

Gen. cuius, *whose?* cuius, *whose?*

Dat. cui, *to or for whom?* cui, *to or for what or which?*

Acc. quem, *whom?* quid, *what? which?*

Abl. quo:, *from, etc., whom?* quo:, *from, etc., which or what?*

NOTE. Observe that the masculine and feminine are alike and that all the forms are like the corresponding forms of the relative, excepting *quis* and *quid*.

228. EXERCISES

I. 1. Quis est aeger? Servus quem amo est aeger. 2. Cuius scutum habes? Scutum habeo quod legatus ad castellum misit. 3. Cui legatus suum scutum dabit? Filio meo scutum dabit. 4. Ubi Germani antiqui vivebant? In terra quae est proxima Rheno Germani vivebant. 5. Quibuscum[1] Germani bellum gerebant? Cum Romanis, qui eos superare studebant, Germani bellum gerebant. 6. Qui viri castra ponunt? Ii sunt viri quorum armis Germani victi sunt. 7. Quibus telis copiae nostrae eguerunt? Gladiis et telis nostrae copiae eguerunt. 8. A quibus porta sinistra tenebatur? A sociis porta



sinistra tenebatur. 9. Quae provinciae a Romanis occupatae sunt? Multae provinciae a Romanis occupatae sunt. 10. Quibus viris dei favebunt? Bonis viris dei favebunt.

[Footnote 1: *cum* is added to the ablative of relative, interrogative, and personal pronouns instead of being placed before them.]

[Illustration: GERMANI ANTIQUI]

II. 1. What victory will you announce? 2. I will announce to the people the victory which the sailors have won. 3. The men who were pitching camp were eager for battle. 4. Nevertheless they were soon conquered by the troops which Sextus had sent. 5. They could not resist our forces, but fled from that place without delay.



## Page 75

### 229. THE FAITHLESS TARPEIA (*Concluded*)[2]

Tarpeia, commota ornamentis Sabinorum pulchris, diu resistere non potuit et respondit: "Date mihi[3] ornamenta quae in sinistris bracchis geritis, et celeriter copias vestras in Capitolium ducam." Nec Sabini recusaverunt, sed per duras magnasque castelli portas properaverunt quo[1] Tarpeia duxit et mox intra validos et altos muros stabant. Tum sine mora in[2] Tarpeiam scuta graviter iecerunt; nam scuta quoque in sinistris bracchiis gerebant. Ita perfida puella Tarpeia interfecta est; ita Sabini Capitolium occupaverunt.

[Footnote 2: Explain the use of the tenses in this selection.]

[Footnote 3: *to me.*]

[Footnote 1: *quo* = *whither, to the place where*. Here *quo* is the relative adverb. We have had it used before as the interrogative adverb, *\_whither?\_* *\_to what place?\_*]

[Footnote 2: *upon.*]

## LESSON XXXIX

### THE THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT STEMS

[Special Vocabulary]

*barbarus, -a, -um*, *\_strange, foreign, barbarous\_*. As a noun, *barbari*, *-o:rum*, *m.*, plur., *savages, barbarians*  
*dux, ducis*, *m.*, *\_leader\_ (duke)*. Cf. the verb *du:co*:  
*eques, equitis*, *m.*, *\_horseman, cavalryman\_ (equestrian)*  
*iu:dex, iu:dicis*, *m.*, *\_judge\_*  
*lapis, lapidis*, *m.*, *stone (lapidary)*  
*mi:les, mi:litis*, *m.*, *\_soldier\_ (militia)*  
*pedes, peditis*, *m.*, *foot soldier (pedestrian)*  
*pe:s, pedis*, *[A] m.*, *\_foot\_ (pedal)*  
*pri:nceps, pri:ncipis*, *m.*, *chief (principal)*  
*re:x, re:gis*, *m.*, *\_king\_ (regal)*  
*summus, -a, -um*, *highest, greatest (summit)*  
*virtu:s, virtu:tis*, *f.*, *\_manliness, courage\_ (virtue)*

[Footnote A: Observe that *e* is *\_long\_* in the *nom. sing.*, and *\_short\_* in the other cases.]

230. Bases and Stems. In learning the first and second declensions we saw that the different cases were formed by adding the case terminations to the part of the word that

did not change, which we called the *base*\. *If to the base we add -a: in the first declension, and -o in the second, we get what is called the stem*\. Thus *porta*\ has the base *port-* and the stem *porta:-*; *servus*\ has the base *serv-* and the stem *servo-*.

These stem vowels, -a:- and -o-, play so important a part in the formation of the case terminations that these declensions are named from them respectively the A- and O-Declensions.

231. Nouns of the Third Declension. The third declension is called the Consonant or *I-*Declension, and its nouns are classified according to the way the *stem* ends. If the last letter of the stem is a consonant, the word is said to have a *consonant stem*; if the stem ends in -i-, the word is said to have an *i-stem*. *In consonant stems the stem is the same as the base. In i-stems the stem is formed by adding -i- to the base.* The presence of the *i* makes a difference in certain of the cases, so the distinction is a very important one.





## Page 76

232. Consonant stems are divided into two classes:

- I. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular.
- II. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular.

### CLASS I

233. Stems that add -s to the base in the nominative singular are either masculine or feminine and are declined as follows:

pri:nceps, mi:les, m., lapis,  
m., *chief soldier* m., *stone*  
BASES OR  
STEMS pri:ncip- mi:lit- lapid-

#### SINGULAR TERMINATIONS

M. AND F.

Nom. pri:nceps mi:les lapis -s  
Gen. pri:n'cipis mi:litis lapidis -is  
Dat. pri:n'cipi: mi:liti: lapidi: -i:  
Acc. pri:n'cipem mi:litem lapidem -em  
Abl. pri:n'cipe mi:lite lapide -e

#### PLURAL

Nom.	pri:n'cipe:s	mi:lite:s	lapide:s	-e:s
Gen.	pri:n'cipum	mi:litum	lapidum	-um
Dat.	pri:nci'pibus	mi:litibus	lapidibus	-ibus
Acc.	pri:n'cipe:s	mi:lite:s	lapide:s	-e:s
Abl.	pri:nci'pibus	mi:litibus	lapidibus	-ibus

re:x, iu:dex, virtu:s, f.,  
m., *king* m., *judge* *manliness*  
BASES OR  
STEMS re:g- iu:dic- virtu:t-

#### SINGULAR TERMINATIONS

M. AND F.

Nom. re:x iu:dex virtu:s -s  
Gen. re:gis iu:dicis virtu:'tis -is  
Dat. re:gi: iu:dici: virtu:'ti: -i:



Acc. re:gem iu:dicem virtu:'tem -em

Abl. re:ge iu:dice virtu:'te -e

#### PLURAL

Nom.	re:ge:s	iu:dice:s	virtu:'te:s	-e:s
Gen.	re:gum	iu:dicum	virtu:'tum	-um
Dat.	re:gibus	iu:dicibus	virtu:'tibus	-ibus
Acc.	re:ge:s	iu:dice:s	virtu:'te:s	-e:s
Abl.	re:gibus	iu:dicibus	virtu:'tibus	-ibus

1. The base or stem is found by dropping -is in the genitive singular.

2. Most nouns of two syllables, like *pri:nceps\* (*pri:ncip-*), *mi:les\* (*mi:lit-*), *iu:dex\* (*iu:dic-*), have *i\* in the base, but *e\* in the nominative.

a. *lapis\* is an exception to this rule.

3. Observe the consonant changes of the base or stem in the nominative:

a. A final -t or -d is dropped before -s; thus *miles\* for *milet\*, *lapis\* for *lapids\*, *virtus\* for *virtuts\*.

b. A final -c or -g unites with -s and forms -x; thus *iudec\* + *s\* = *iudex\*, *reg\* + *s\* = *rex\*.

4. Review Sec. 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

In like manner decline *dux*, *ducis\*, *m.*, *\_leader\_*; *eques*, *equitis\*, *m.*, *horseman*; *pedes*, *peditis\*, *m.*, *\_foot soldier\_*; *pes*, *pedis\*, *m.*, *\_foot\_*.



# Page 77

## 234. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Neque pedites neque equites occupare castellum Romanum poterant. 2. Summa virtute muros altos cotidie oppugnabant. 3. Pedes militum lapidibus qui de muro iaciebantur saepe vulnerabantur. 4. Quod novum consilium dux cepit? 5. Is perfidam puellam pulchris ornamentis temptavit. 6. Quid puella fecit? 7. Puella commota auro milites per portas duxit. 8. Tamen praemia quae summo studio petiverat non reportavit. 9. Apud Romanos antiquos Tarpeia non est laudata.

II. 1. What ship is that which I see? That (illud) ship is the *Victory*. It is sailing now with a favorable wind and will soon approach Italy. 2. The judges commanded the savages to be seized and to be killed. 3. The chiefs of the savages suddenly began to flee, but were quickly captured by the horsemen. 4. The king led the foot soldiers to the wall from which the townsmen were hurling stones with the greatest zeal.

[Illustration: NAVIGIUM]

## LESSON XL

### THE THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT STEMS (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

*Caesar*, -aris\, m., *Caesar*

capti:vus, -i:\, m., *captive, prisoner*

co:nsul, -is\, m., *consul*

fra:ter, fra:tris\, m., *brother* (fraternity)

homo:, hominis\, m., *man, human being*

impedi:mentum, -i:\, n., *hindrance* (impediment); plur.

*impedi:menta*, -o:rum\, *baggage*

impera:tor, impera:to:ris\, m., *commander in chief, general* (emperor)

legio:, legio:nis\, f., *legion*

ma:ter, ma:tris\, f., *mother* (maternal)

o:rdo:, o:rdinis\, m., *row, rank* (order)

pater, patris\, m., *father* (paternal)

salu:s, salu:tis\, f., *safety* (salutary)

soror, soro:ris\, f., *sister* (sorority)



## CLASS II

235. Consonant stems that add no termination in the nominative are declined in the other cases exactly like those that add /-s/. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

236. PARADIGMS

## MASCULINES AND FEMININES

co:nsul, legio:, f., o:rdo:, pater, m.,  
m., *consul legion m., row father*

BASES OR

STEMS co:nsul- legio:n- o:rdin- patr-

SINGULAR TERMINATIONS

M. AND F.

Nom. co:nsul legio: o:rdo: pater —

Gen. co:nsulis legio:nis o:rdinis patris -is

Dat. co:nsuli: legio:ni: o:rdini: patri: -i:

Acc. co:nsulem legio:nem o:rdinem patrem -em

Abl. co:nsule legio:ne o:rdine patre -e

## Page 78

### PLURAL

Nom.	co:nsule:s	legio:ne:s	o:rdine:s	patre:s	-e:s
Gen.	co:nsulum	legio:num	o:rdinum	patrum	-um
Dat.	co:nsulibus	legio:nibus	o:rdinibus	patribus	-ibus
Acc.	co:nsule:s	legio:ne:s	o:rdine:s	patre:s	-e:s
Abl.	co:nsulibus	legio:nibus	o:rdinibus	patribus	-ibus

1. With the exception of the nominative, the terminations are exactly the same as in Class I, and the base or stem is found in the same way.

2. Masculines and feminines with bases or stems in -in- and -o:n- drop -n- and end in -o: in the nominative, as legio: (base or stem legio:n-), o:rdo: (base or stem o:rdin-).

3. Bases or stems in -tr- have -ter in the nominative, as pater (base or stem patr-).

4. Note how the genitive singular gives the clue to the whole declension. *Always learn this with the nominative.*

### 237. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 291.

I. 1. Audisne tubas, Marce? Non solum tubas audio sed etiam ordines militum et carros impedimentorum plenos videre possum. 2. Quas legiones videmus? Eae legiones nuper ex Gallia venerunt. 3. Quid ibi fecerunt? Studebantne pugnare an sine virtute erant? 4. Multa proelia fecerunt[1] et magnas victorias et multos captivos reportaverunt. 5. Quis est imperator earum legionum? Caesar, summus Romanorum imperator. 6. Quis est eques qui pulchram coronam gerit? Is eques est frater meus. Ei corona a consule data est quia summa virtute pugnaverat et a barbaris patriam servaverat.

II. 1. Who has seen my father to-day? 2. I saw him just now (nuper). He was hastening to your dwelling with your mother and sister. 3. When men are far from the fatherland and lack food, they cannot be restrained[2] from wrong[3]. 4. The safety of the soldiers is dear to Caesar, the general. 5. The chiefs were eager to storm a town full of grain which was held by the consul. 6. The king forbade the baggage of the captives to be destroyed.

[Footnote 1: *proelium facere*\ = *\_to fight a battle.\_*]

[Footnote 2: *contineo*\. Cf. Sec. 180.]



[Footnote 3: Abl. iniuria.]

## LESSON XLI

THE THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT STEMS (*Concluded*)

[Special Vocabulary]

*calamita:s, calamita:tis\, f., \_loss, disaster, defeat\_ (calamity) caput, capitis\, n., head (capital) flu:men, flu:minis\, n., \_river\_ (flume) labor, labo:ris\, m., labor, toil opus, operis\, n., \_work, task\_ o:ra:tor, o:ra:to:ris\, m., orator ri:pa, -ael, f., \_bank\_ (of a stream) tempus, temporis\, n., time (temporal) terror, terro:ris\, m., \_terror, fear\_ victor, victo:ris\, m., victor*

*accipio:, accipere, acce:pi:, acceptus\, \_receive, accept\_ co:nfirmo:, co:nfi:rma:re, co:nfi:rma:vi:, co:nfi:rma:tus\, strengthen, establish, encourage (confirm)*

## Page 79

238. Neuter consonant stems add no termination in the nominative and are declined as follows:

flu:men, tempus, opus, caput,  
n., *river* n., *time* n., *work* n., *head*

BASES OR

STEMS flu:min- tempor- oper- capit-

### SINGULAR

### TERMINATIONS

Nom.	flu:men	tempus	opus	caput	—
Gen.	flu:minis	temporis	operis	capitis	-is
Dat.	flu:mini:	temperi:	operi:	capiti:	-i:
Acc.	flu:men	tempus	opus	caput	—
Abl.	flu:mine	tempore	opere	capite	-e

### PLURAL

Nom.	flu:mina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
Gen.	flu:minum	temporum	operum	capitum	-um
Dat.	flu:minibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus
Acc.	flu:mina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
Abl.	flu:minibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus

1. Review Sec. 74 and apply the rules to this declension.

2. Bases or stems in -in- have -e- instead of -i- in the nominative, as flu:men, base or stem flu:min-.

3. Most bases or stems in -er- and -or- have -us in the nominative, as opus, base or stem oper-; tempus, base or stem tempor-.

### 239. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. 1. Barbari ubi Romam ceperunt, maxima regum opera deleverunt. 2. Romani multas calamitates a barbaris acceperunt. 3. Ubi erat summus terror apud oppidanos, animi dubii eorum ab oratore claro confirmati sunt. 4. Roma est in ripis fluminis magni. 5. Ubi Caesar imperator milites suos arma capere iussit, ii a proelio contineri non potuerunt. 6. Ubi proelium factum est, imperator reperiri non potuit. 7. Imperator sagitta in capite vulneratus erat et stare non poterat. 8. Eum magno labore pedes ex proelio portavit. 9. Is brachiis suis imperatorem tenuit et eum ex periculis summis servavit. 10. Virtute sua bonus miles ab imperatore coronam accepit.



II. 1. The consul placed a crown on the head of the victor. 2. Before the gates he was received by the townsmen. 3. A famous orator praised him and said, "By your labors you have saved the fatherland from disaster." 4. The words of the orator were pleasing to the victor. 5. To save the fatherland was a great task.

[Illustration: Corona]

## LESSON XLII

### REVIEW LESSON

240. Review the paradigms in Secs. 233, 236, 238; and decline all nouns of the third declension in this selection.

#### TERROR CIMBRICUS[1]

Olim Cimbri et Teutones, populi Germaniae, cum feminis liberisque Italiae adpropinquaverant et copias Romanas maximo proelio vicerant. Ubi fuga legionum nuntiata est, summus erat terror totius Romae, et Romani, graviter commoti, sacra crebra deis faciebant et salutem petebant.



## Page 80

Tum Manlius orator animos populi ita confirmavit:—"Magnam calamitatem accepimus. Oppida nostra a Cimbris Teutonibusque capiuntur, agricolae interficiuntur, agri vastantur, copiae barbarorum Romae adpropinquant. Itaque, nisi novis animis proelium novum faciemus et Germanos ex patria nostra sine mora agemus, erit nulla salus feminis nostris liberisque. Servate liberos! Servate patriam! Antea superati sumus quia imperatores nostri fuerunt infirmi. Nunc Marius, clarus imperator, qui iam multas alias victorias reportavit, legiones ducet et animos nostros terrore Cimbrico liberare maturabit."

Marius tum in Africa bellum gerebat. Sine mora ex Africa in Italiam vocatus est. Copias novas non solum toti Italiae sed etiam provinciis sociorum imperavit.[2] Disciplina autem dura laboribusque perpetuis milites exercuit. Tum cum peditibus equitibusque, qui iam proelio studebant, ad Germanorum castra celeriter properavit. Diu et acriter pugnatum est.[3] Denique barbari fugerunt et multi in fuga ab equitibus sunt interfecti. Marius pater patriae vocatus est.

[Footnote 1: About the year 100 B.C. the Romans were greatly alarmed by an invasion of barbarians from the north known as Cimbri and Teutons. They were traveling with wives and children, and had an army of 300,000 fighting men. Several Roman armies met defeat, and the city was in a panic. Then the Senate called upon Marius, their greatest general, to save the country. First he defeated the Teutons in Gaul. Next, returning to Italy, he met the Cimbri. A terrible battle ensued, in which the Cimbri were utterly destroyed; but the *terror Cimbricus* continued to haunt the Romans for many a year thereafter.]

[Footnote 2: *He made a levy (of troops) upon, imperavit\ with the acc. and the dat.*]

[Footnote 3: Cf. Sec. 200. II. 2.]

## LESSON XLIII

### THE THIRD DECLENSION : I-STEMS

[Special Vocabulary]

*animal, anima:lis (-ium[A])\, n., \_animal\_*

*avis, avis (-ium)\, f., \_bird\_ (aviation)*

*caede:s, caedis (-ium)\, f., \_slaughter\_*

*calcar, calca:ris (-ium), n., \_spur\_*

*ci:vis, ci:vis (-ium)\, m. and f., \_citizen\_ (civic)*

*clie:ns, clientis (-ium)\, m., \_retainer, dependent\_ (client)*

*fi:nis, fi:nis (-ium)\, m., \_end, limit\_ (final);*



plur., *country, territory*  
*hostis, hostis (-ium)\, m. and f., \_enemy\_ in war (hostile).*  
*Distinguish from inimi:cus\, which means a personal enemy*  
*ignis, ignis (-ium)\, m., \_fire\_ (ignite)*  
*i:nsigne, i:nsignis (-ium)\, n. decoration, badge (ensign)*  
*mare, maris (-ium[B])\, n., \_sea\_ (marine)*  
*na:vis, na:vis (-ium)\, f., ship (naval);*  
*na:vis longa\, \_man-of-war\_*  
*turris, turris (-ium)\, f., tower (turret)*  
*urbs, urbis (-ium)\, f., \_city\_ (suburb). An urbs\ is larger than an*  
*oppidum\.*

# Page 81

[Footnote A: The genitive plural ending -ium is written to mark the i-stems.]

[Footnote B: The genitive plural of *mare* is not in use.]

241. To decline a noun of the third declension correctly we must know whether or not it is an i-stem. Nouns with i-stems are

## 1. Masculines and feminines:

a. Nouns in -e:s and -i:s with the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. Thus *caede:s*, *caedis*, is an i-stem, but *mi:les*, *mi:litis*, is a consonant stem.

b. Nouns in -ns and -rs.

c. Nouns of one syllable in -s or -x preceded by a consonant.

## 2. Neuters in -e, -al, and -ar.

242. The declension of i-stems is nearly the same as that of consonant stems. Note the following differences:

a. Masculines and feminities have -ium in the genitive plural and -i:s or -e:s in the accusative plural.

b. Neuters have -i: in the ablative singular, and an -i- in every form of the plural.

243. Masculine and Feminine I-Stems. Masculine and feminine i-stems are declined as follows:

caede:s, f.,	hostis,	urbs, f.,	clie:ns, m.,
<i>slaughter</i>	m., <i>enemy</i>	<i>city</i>	<i>retainer</i>
STEMS caedi-	hosti-	urbi-	clienti-
BASES caed-	host-	urb-	client-

## SINGULAR TERMINATIONS

M. AND F.

Nom. caede:s hostis urbs clie:ns[1] -s, -is,  
or -e:s

Gen. caedis hostis urbis clientis -is

Dat. caedi: hosti: urbi: clienti: -i:



Acc. caedem hostem urbem clientem -em (-im)  
Abl. caede hoste urbe cliente -e (-i:)

#### PLURAL

Nom.	caede:s	hoste:s	urbe:s	cliente:s	-e:s
Gen.	caedium	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
Dat.	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
Acc.	caedi:s,	hosti:s,	urbi:s,	clienti:s,	-i:s,
	-e:s	-e:s	-e:s	-e:s	-e:s
Abl.	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

[Footnote 1: Observe that the vowel before -ns is long, but that it is shortened before -nt. Cf. Sec. 12.2, 3.]

1. *avis\*, *ci:vis\*, *fi:nis\*, *ignis\*, *navis\* have the ablative singular in -i: or -e.

2. *turris\* has accusative *turrim\* and ablative *turri:\* or *turre\*.

244. Neuter *I*-Stems. Neuter *i*-stems are declined as follows:



## Page 82

i:nsigne, n., animal, n., calcar,

*decoration animal n., spur*

STEMS i:nsigni- anima:li- calca:ri-

BASES i:nsign- anima:l- calca:r-

### SINGULAR

Nom.	i:nsigne	animal	calcar	-e or —
Gen.	i:nsignis	anima:lis	calca:ris	-is
Dat.	i:nsigni:	anima:li:	calca:ri:	-i:
Acc.	i:nsigne	animal	calcar	-e or —
Abl.	i:nsigni:	anima:li:	calca:ri:	-i:

### TERMINATIONS

### PLURAL

Nom.	i:nsignia	anima:lia	calca:ria	-ia
Gen.	i:nsignium	anima:lium	calca:rium	-ium
Dat.	i:nsignibus	anima:libus	calca:ribus	-ibus
Acc.	i:nsignia	anima:lia	calca:ria	-ia
Abl.	i:nsignibus	anima:libus	calca:ribus	-ibus

1. Review Sec. 74 and see how it applies to this declension.
2. The final -i- of the stem is usually dropped in the nominative. If not dropped, it is changed to -e.
3. A long vowel is shortened before final -l or -r. (Cf. Sec. 12.2.)

### 245. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. 1. Quam urbem videmus? Urbs quam videtis est Roma. 2. Cives Romani urbem suam turribus altis et muris longis muniverant. 3. Venti navis longas prohibebant finibus hostium adpropinquare. 4. Imperator a clientibus suis calcaria auri et alia insignia accepit. 5. Milites Romani cum hostibus bella saeva gesserunt et eos caede magna superaverunt. 6. Alia animalia terram, alia mare amant. 7. Naves longae quae auxilium ad imperatorem portabant igni ab hostibus deletae sunt. 8. In eo mari avis multas vidimus quae longe a terra volaverant. 9. Nonne vidistis navis longas hostium et ignis quibus urbs nostra vastabatur? Certe, sed nec caedem civium nec fugam clientium vidimus. 10. Aves et alia animalia, ubi ignem viderunt, salutem fuga petere celeriter inceperunt. 11. Num. iudex in peditum ordinibus stabat? Minime, iudex erat apud equites et equus eius insigne pulchrum gerebat.

[Illustration: NAVES LONGAE]

II. 1. Because of the lack of grain the animals of the village were not able to live. 2. When the general<sup>[2]</sup> heard the rumor, he quickly sent a horseman to the village. 3. The horseman had a beautiful horse and wore spurs of gold. 4. He said to the citizens, "Send your retainers with horses and wagons to our camp, and you will receive an abundance of grain." 5. With happy hearts they hastened to obey his words.<sup>[3]</sup>

[Footnote 2: Place first.]

[Footnote 3: Not the accusative. Why?]

## **LESSON XLIV**

### **IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION : GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION**

[Special Vocabulary]

## Page 83

*arbor, arboris\, f., \_tree\_ (arbor)*  
*collis, collis (-ium)\, m., hill*  
*de:ns, dentis (-ium)\, m., \_tooth\_ (dentist)*  
*fo:ns, fontis (-ium), m., \_fountain, spring; source\_*  
*iter, itineris\, n., march, journey, route (itinerary)*  
*me:nsis, mensis (-ium)\, m., \_month\_*  
*moenia, -ium\, n., plur., walls, fortifications. Cf. mu:rus\*  
*mo:ns, montis (-ium)\, m., mountain;*  
*summus mo:ns\, \_top of the mountain\_*  
*numquam\, adv., never*  
*po:ns, pontis\, m., \_bridge\_ (pontoon)*  
*sanguis, sanguinis\, m., blood (sanguinary)*  
*summus, -a, -um\, \_highest, greatest\_ (summit)*  
*tra:ns\, prep, with acc., across (transatlantic)*  
*vi:s (vi:s)\, gen. plur. virium\, f. strength, force, violence*  
*(vim)*

### 246. PARADIGMS

[Transcriber's Note: The original text gives vi:- and vi:r- as the "Bases" of vi:s\, and omits the "Stems" for both words. The forms have been regularized to agree with the inflectional table in the Appendix.]

vi:s, f., \_force\_ iter, n., \_march\_  
 STEMS vi:- and vi:ri- iter- and itiner-  
 BASES v- and vi:r- iter- and itiner-

#### SINGULAR

Nom.	vi:s	iter
Gen.	vi:s (rare)	itineris
Dat.	vi: (rare)	itineri:
Acc.	vim	iter
Abl.	vi:	itinere

#### PLURAL

Nom.	vi:re:s	itineria
Gen.	vi:rium	itinerum
Dat.	vi:ribus	itineribus
Acc.	vi:ri:s, or -e:s	itineria
Abl.	vi:ribus	itineribus

\_247.\_ There are no rules for gender in the third declension that do not present numerous exceptions.[1] The following rules, however, are of great service, and should be thoroughly mastered:



1. *Masculine*\ are nouns in -or, -o:s, -er, -es (*gen. -itis*).

a. *arbor*\, *\_tree\_*, is feminine; and *iter*\, *march*, is neuter.

2. *Feminine*\ are nouns in -o:, -is, -x, and in -s preceded by a consonant or by any long vowel but o:\.

a. Masculine are *collis*\ (*\_hill\_*), *lapis*\, *me:nsis*\ (*\_month\_*), *o:rdo:*\, *pe:s*\, and nouns in -nis and -guis—as *ignis*\, *sanguis*\ (*\_blood\_*)—and the four monosyllables

*de:ns*\, *\_a tooth\_*; *mo:ns*\, *a mountain*  
*po:ns*\, *\_a bridge\_*; *fo:ns*\, *a fountain*

3. *Neuters*\ are nouns in -e, -al, -ar, -n, -ur, -us, and *caput*\.

[Footnote 1: Review Sec. 60. Words denoting males are, of course, masculine, and those denoting females, feminine.]

248. Give the gender of the following nouns and the rule by which it is determined:

animal calamitas flumen lapis navis avis caput ignis legio opus caede:s eques i:nsigne  
 mare salu:s calcar fi:nis labor mi:les urbs

249. EXERCISES



## Page 84

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 292.

I. *The First Bridge over the Rhine.* Salus sociorum erat semper cara Romanis. Olim Galli, amici Romanorum, multas iniurias ab Germanis qui trans flumen Rhenum vivebant acceperant. Ubi legati ab iis ad Caesarem imperatorem Romanum venerunt et auxilium postulaverunt, Romani magnis itineribus ad hostium finis properaverunt. Mox ad ripas magni fluminis venerunt. Imperator studebat copias suas trans fluvium ducere, sed nulla via<sup>[2]</sup> poterat. Nullas navis habebat. Alta erat aqua. Imperator autem, vir clarus, numquam adversa fortuna commotus, novum consilium cepit. Iussit suos<sup>[3]</sup> in<sup>[4]</sup> lato flumine facere pontem. Numquam antea pons in Rheno visus erat. Hostes ubi pontem quem Romani fecerant viderunt, summo terrore commoti, sine mora fugam parare inceperunt.

II. 1. The enemy had taken (possession of) the top of the mountain. 2. There were many trees on the opposite hills. 3. We pitched our camp near (ad) a beautiful spring. 4. A march through the enemies' country is never without danger. 5. The time of the month was suitable for the march. 6. The teeth of the monster were long. 7. When the foot soldiers<sup>[5]</sup> saw the blood of the captives, they began to assail the fortifications with the greatest violence.<sup>[2]</sup>

[Footnote 2: Abl. of manner.]

[Footnote 3: *suos*\, used as a noun, *\_his men\_*.]

[Footnote 4: We say *build a bridge over*; the Romans, *make a bridge on*.]

[Footnote 5: Place first.]

\* \* \* \* \*

Fifth Review, Lessons XXXVII-XLIV, Secs. 517-520

\* \* \* \* \*

## LESSON XLV

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION : *I*-STEMS

[Special Vocabulary]

*a:cer*, *a:cris*, *a:crel*\, *\_sharp, keen, eager\_* (*acrid*) *brevis*, *breve*\, *short, brief* *difficilis*, *difficile*\, *\_difficult\_* *facilis*, *facile*\, *facile*, *easy* *fortis*, *fortel*\, *\_brave\_* (*fortitude*) *gravis*, *grave*\, *heavy, severe, serious* (*grave*) *omnis*, *omne*\, *\_every, all\_* (*omnibus*) *pa:r*\, *gen*.



*paris\, \_equal\_ (par) pauci:, -ae, -a\, few, only a few (paucity) secundus, -a, -um\, \_second; favorable\_, opposite of adversus signum, -i:\, n., signal, sign, standard  
ve:lo:x\, gen. ve:lo:cis\, swift (velocity)*

*conloco:, conloca:re, conloca:vi:, conloca:tus\, \_arrange, station, place\_ (collocation)*

*de:mo:nstro:, de:mo:nstra:re, de:mo:nstra:vi:, de:mo:nstra:tus\, point out, explain (demonstrate)*

*mando:, manda:re, manda:vi:, manda:tus\, \_commit, intrust\_ (mandate)*

250. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions (like *bonus\*, *aeger\*, or *liber\*), or they are of the third declension.



## Page 85

251. Nearly all adjectives of the third declension have *i-stems*, and they are declined almost like nouns with *i-stems*.

252. Adjectives learned thus far have had a different form in the nominative for each gender, as, *bonus*\, *m.*; *bona*\, *f.*; *bonum*\, *n.* *Such an adjective is called an \_adjective of three endings\_. Adjectives of the third declension are of the following classes:*

- I. Adjectives of three endings—  
a different form in the nominative for each gender.
- II. Adjectives of two endings—  
masculine and feminine nominative alike, the neuter different.
- III. Adjectives of one ending—  
masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative all alike.

253. Adjectives of the third declension in *-er* have three endings; those in *-is* have two endings; the others have one ending.

### CLASS I

254. Adjectives of Three Endings are declined as follows:

a:cer, a:cris, a:cre, *keen, eager*  
STEM a:cri-  
BASE a:cr-

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	a:cer	a:cris	a:cre	a:cre:s	a:cria
Gen.	a:cris	a:cris	a:cris	a:crium	a:crium
Dat.	a:cri:	a:cri:	a:cri:	a:cribus	a:cribus
Acc.	a:crem	a:crem	a:cre	a:cri:s, -e:s	a:cria
Abl.	a:cri:	a:cri:	a:cri:	a:cribus	a:cribus

### CLASS II

255. Adjectives of Two Endings are declined as follows:



omnis, omne, *every*, *all*[1]  
 STEM omni-  
 BASE omn-

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. omnis	omne	omne:s	omnia
Gen. omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
Dat. omni:	omni:	omnibus	omnibus
Acc. omnem	omne	omni:s, -e:s	omnia
Abl. omni:	omni:	omnibus	omnibus

[Footnote 1: *omnis* is usually translated *\_every\_* in the singular and *\_all\_* in the plural.]

## CLASS III

256. Adjectives of One Ending are declined as follows:

pa:r, *equal*  
 STEM pari-  
 BASE par-

SINGULAR	PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. pa:r	pa:r	pare:s	paria
Gen. paris	paris	parium	parium
Dat. pari:	pari:	paribus	paribus
Acc. parem	pa:r	pari:s, -e:s	paria
Abl. pari:	pari:	paribus	paribus

1. All i-stem adjectives have -i: in the ablative singular.



## Page 86

2. Observe that the several cases of adjectives of one ending have the same form for all genders excepting in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

3. Decline *vir acer*\, *legio acris*\, *animal acre*\, *ager omnis*\, *scutum omne*\, *proelium par*\.

257. There are a few adjectives of one ending that have consonant stems. They are declined exactly like nouns with consonant stems.

### 258. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. *The Romans invade the Enemy's Country.* Olim pedites Romani cum equitibus velocibus in hostium urbem iter faciebant. Ubi non longe afuerunt, rapuerunt agricolam, qui eis viam brevem et facilem demonstravit. Iam Romani moenia alta, turris validas aliaque opera urbis videre poterant. In moenibus stabant multi principes. Principes ubi viderunt Romanos, iusserunt civis lapides aliaque tela de muris iacere. Tum milites fortes contineri a proelio non poterant et acer imperator signum tuba dari iussit. Summa vi omnes maturaverunt. Imperator Sexto legato impedimenta omnia mandavit. Sextus impedimenta in summo colle conlocavit. Grave et acre erat proelium, sed hostes non pares Romanis erant. Alii interfecti, alii capti sunt. Apud captivos erant mater sororque regis. Pauci Romanorum ab hostibus vulnerati sunt. Secundum proelium Romanis erat gratum. Fortuna fortibus semper favet.

II. 1. Some months are short, others are long. 2. To seize the top of the mountain was difficult. 3. Among the hills of Italy are many beautiful springs. 4. The soldiers were sitting where the baggage had been placed because their feet were weary. 5. The city which the soldiers were eager to storm had been fortified by strong walls and high towers. 6. Did not the king intrust a heavy crown of gold and all his money to a faithless slave? Yes, but the slave had never before been faithless.

[Illustration: AQUILA LEGIONIS]

## LESSON XLVI

### THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

[Special Vocabulary]

*adventus*, -u:s\, m., *\_approach, arrival\_ (advent)*

*ante*\, prep, with acc., *before* (ante-date)

*cornu*:, -u:s\, n., *\_horn, wing\_ of an army (cornucopia);*



a: dextro: cornu:\, *on the right wing*;  
a: sinistro: cornu:\, *\_on the left wing\_*  
equita:tus, -u:s\, m., *cavalry*  
exercitus, -u:s\, m., *\_army\_*  
impetus, -u:s\, m., *attack (impetus)*;  
*impetum facere in\, with acc., \_to make an attack on\_*  
lacus, -u:s, dat. and abl. plur. lacubus\, m., *lake*  
manus, -u:s\, f., *\_hand; band, force\_ (manual)*  
portus, -u:s\, m., *harbor (port)*  
post\, prep, with acc., *\_behind, after\_ (post-mortem)*  
  
cremo:, crema:re, crema:vi:, crema:tus\, *\_burn\_ (cremate)*  
exerceo:, exerce:re, exercui:, exercitus\, *practice, drill, train*  
*(exercise)*



## Page 87

259. Nouns of the fourth declension are either masculine or neuter.

260. Masculine nouns end in -us, neuters in -u:. The genitive ends in -u:s.

a. Feminine by exception are *domus\, \_house\_*; *manus\, hand*; and a few others.

## PARADIGMS

[Transcriber's Note:

The "Stems" are missing in the printed book. They have been supplied from the inflectional table in the Appendix.]

adventus, cornu:

m., *arrival* n., *horn*

STEMS adventu- cornu-

BASES advent- corn-

SINGULAR		TERMINATIONS		
MASC.	NEUT.			
Nom. adventus	cornu:	-us	-u:	
Gen. adventu:s	cornu:s	-u:s	-u:s	
Dat. adventui: (u:)	cornu:	-ui: (u:)	-u:	
Acc. adventum	cornu:	-um	-u:	
Abl. adventu:	cornu:	-u:	-u:	
PLURAL				
Nom. adventu:s	cornua	-u:s	-ua	
Gen. adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum	
Dat. adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus	
Acc. adventu:s	cornua	-u:s	-ua	
Abl. adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus	

1. Observe that the base is found, as in other declensions, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. *lacus\, \_lake\_*, has the ending -ubus in the dative and ablative plural; *portus\, harbor*, has either -ubus or -ibus.

3. *cornu:\* is the only neuter that is in common use.

## 261. EXERCISES



First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Ante adventum Caesaris veloces hostium equites acrem impetum in castra fecerunt. 2. Continere exercitum a proelio non facile erat. 3. Post adventum suum Caesar iussit legiones ex castris duci. 4. Pro castris cum hostium equitatu pugnatum est. 5. Post tempus breve equitatus trans flumen fugit ubi castra hostium posita erant. 6. Tum victor imperator agros vastavit et vicos hostium cremavit. 7. Castra autem non oppugnavit quia milites erant defessi et locus difficilis. 8. Hostes non cessaverunt iacere tela, quae paucis nocuerunt. 9. Post adversum proelium principes Gallorum legatos ad Caesarem mittere studebant, sed populo persuadere non poterant.

II. 1. Did you see the man-of-war on the lake? 2. I did not see it (*fem.*) on the lake, but I saw it in the harbor. 3. Because of the strong wind the sailor forbade his brother to sail. 4. Caesar didn't make an attack on the cavalry on the right wing, did he? 5. No, he made an attack on the left wing. 6. Who taught your swift horse to obey? 7. I trained my horse with my (own) hands, nor was the task difficult. 8. He is a beautiful animal and has great strength.

## LESSON XLVII

EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE : THE DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*





## Page 88

[Special Vocabulary]

Athe:nae, -a:rum, f., plur., *Athens*

Corinthus, -i:, f., *Corinth*

*domus*, -u:s\, *locative domi:\*, f., *house, home* (dome). Cf. *domicilium\*

Gena:va, -ae\, f., *Geneva*

Pompe:ii, -o:rum, m., plur., *Pompeii*, a city in Campania. See map

*propter\*, *prep. with acc.*, *\_on account of, because of\_*

*ru:s*, *ru:ris*, in the plur. only *nom. and acc. ru:ra\*, n., *country* (rustic)

*tergum*, *tergi:\*, n., *\_back\_*; a: *tergo:\*, *behind, in the rear*

*vulnus*, *vulneris\*, n., *\_wound\_* (vulnerable)

*committo:*, *committere*, *commi:si:*, *commissus\*, *\_intrust, commit;\_*

*proelium committere\*, *join battle*

*convoco:*, *convoca:re*, *convoca:vi:*, *convoca:tus\*, *\_call together,*

*summon\_* (convoke)

*timeo:*, *time:re*, *timui:*, *—\*, *fear; be afraid* (timid)

*verto:*, *vertere*, *verti:*, *versus\*, *\_turn, change\_* (convert);

*terga vertere\*, *to turn the backs, hence to retreat*

262. We have become thoroughly familiar with expressions like the following:

Galba ad (or in) oppidum properat

Galba ab (de or ex) oppido properat

Galba in oppido habitat

From these expressions we may deduce the following rules:

263. RULE. Accusative of the Place to. *The /place to which\ is expressed by /ad\ or /in\ with the accusative. This answers the question Whither?*

264. RULE. Ablative of the Place from. *The /place from which\ is expressed by /a:\ or /ab\, /de\, /e:\ or /ex\, with the separative ablative. This answers the question Whence? (Cf. Rule, Sec. 179.)*

265. RULE. Ablative of the Place at or in. *The /place at or in which\ is expressed by the ablative with /in\.* *This answers the question Where?*

a. The ablative denoting the *place where* is called the *locative ablative* (cf. *locus\*, *\_place\_*).

266. Exceptions. Names of towns, small islands,[1] *domus\*, *\_home\_*, *ru:s\*, *country*, and a few other words in common use omit the prepositions in expressions of place, as,



Galba Athenas properat, *Galba hastens to Athens*  
Galba Athenis properat, *Galba hastens from Athens*  
Galba Athenis habitat, *Galba lives at (or in) Athens*  
Galba domum properat, *Galba hastens home*  
Galba rus properat, *Galba hastens to the country*  
Galba domo properat, *Galba hastens from home*  
Galba rure properat, *Galba hastens from the country*  
Galba ruri (less commonly rure) habitat,  
*Galba lives in the country*

a. Names of *countries*, like *Germania*\, *Italia*\, etc., do not come under these exceptions. *With them prepositions must not be omitted.*

## Page 89

[Footnote 1: Small islands are classed with towns because they generally have but one town, and the name of the town is the same as the name of the island.]

267. The Locative Case. We saw above that the place-relation expressed by *at* or *in* is regularly covered by the locative ablative. However, Latin originally expressed this relation by a separate form known as the *locative* case. This case has been everywhere merged in the ablative excepting in the singular number of the first and second declensions. The form of the locative in these declensions is like the genitive singular, and its use is limited to names of towns and small islands, *domi\*, *\_at home\_*, and a few other words.

268. RULE. Locative and Locative Ablative. *To express the /place in which\ with names of towns and small islands, /if they are singular and of the first or second declension\, use the locative; otherwise use the locative ablative without a preposition; as,*

Galba Romae habitat, *Galba lives at Rome*  
Galba Corinthi habitat, *Galba lives at Corinth*  
Galba domi habitat, *Galba lives at home*

Here *Romae\*, *Corinthi\*, and *domi\* are *\_locatives\_*, being *\_singular\_* and of the first and second declensions respectively. But in

Galba Athenis habitat, *Galba lives at Athens*,  
Galba Pompeiis habitat, *Galba lives at Pompeii*

*Athenis\* and *Pompeiis\* are locative ablatives. These words can have no locative case, as the nominatives *Athenae\* and *Pompeii\* are *\_plural\_* and there is no plural locative case form.

269. The word *domus\*, *\_home, house\_*, has forms of both the second and the fourth declension. Learn its declension (Sec. 468).

### 270. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 293.

I. 1. Corinthi omnia insignia auri a ducibus victoribus rapta erant. 2. Caesar Genavam exercitum magnis itineribus duxit. 3. Quem pontem hostes cremaverant? Pontem in Rheno hostes cremaverant. 4. Pompeiis multas Romanorum domos videre poteritis. 5. Roma consul equo veloci rus properavit. 6. Domi consulis homines multi sedebant. 7. Imperator iusserat legatum Athenas cum multis navibus longis navigare. 8. Ante moenia urbis sunt ordines arborum altarum. 9. Propter arbores altas nec lacum nec portum reperire potuimus. 10. Proeliis crebris Caesar legiones suas quae erant in Gallia exercebat. 11. Cotidie in loco idoneo castra ponebat et muniebat.



II. 1. Caesar, the famous general, when he had departed from Rome, hastened to the Roman province on a swift horse.[2] 2. He had heard a rumor concerning the allies at Geneva. 3. After his arrival Caesar called the soldiers together and commanded them to join battle. 4. The enemy hastened to retreat, some because[3] they were afraid, others because[3] of wounds. 5. Recently I was at Athens and saw the place where the judges used to sit.[4] 6. Marcus and Sextus are my brothers; the one lives at Rome, the other in the country.

## Page 90

[Footnote 2: Latin says “by a swift horse.” What construction?]

[Footnote 3: Distinguish between the English conjunction *because* (quia or quod) and the preposition *because of* (propter).]

[Footnote 4: *used to sit*, express by the imperfect.]

[Illustration: DAEDALUS ET ICARUS]

### 271. DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS

Creta est insula antiqua quae aqua alta magni maris pulsatur. Ibi olim Minos erat rex. Ad eum venit Daedalus qui ex Graecia patria fugiebat. Eum Minos rex benignis verbis accepit et ei domicilium in Creta dedit. [5]Quo in loco Daedalus sine cura vivebat et regi multa et clara opera faciebat. Post tempus longum autem Daedalus patriam caram desiderare incepit. Domum properare studebat, sed regi persuadere non potuit et mare saevum fugam vetabat.

[Footnote 5: *And in this place; quod does not here introduce a subordinate relative clause, but establishes the connection with the preceding sentence. Such a relative is called a \_connecting relative\_, and is translated by \_and\_ and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.*]

## LESSON XLVIII

### THE FIFTH OR E:-DECLENSION : THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

[Special Vocabulary]

*acie:s, -e:i\, f., \_line of battle\_*

*aesta:s, aesta:tis\, f., summer*

*annus, -i\, m., \_year\_ (annual)*

*die:s, die:i\, m., day (diary)*

*fide:s, fidei\, no plur., f., \_faith, trust; promise, word;*

*protection\_;* in *fidem veni:re\, to come under the protection*

*fluctus, -u:s\, m. \_wave, billow\_ (fluctuate)*

*hiems, hiemis\, f., winter*

*ho:ra, -ae\, f., \_hour\_*

*lu:x, lu:cis\, f., light (lucid); pri:ma lux\, \_daybreak\_*

*meri:die:s\, acc. -em, abl. -e:, no plur., m., midday (meridian)*

*nox, noctis (-ium)\, f., \_night\_ (nocturnal)*

*pri:mus, -a, -um\, first (prime)*

*re:s, rei\, f., \_thing, matter\_ (real);*

*re:s gestae\, deeds, exploits (lit. things performed);*



*re:s adversae\, \_adversity\_;* *re:s secundae\, prosperity*  
*spe:s, spei:\, f., \_hope\_*

272. Gender. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except *die:s\, \_day\_, and* *meri:die:s\, midday*, which are usually masculine.

#### 273. PARADIGMS

[Transcriber's Note:

The "Stems" are missing in the printed book. They have been supplied from the inflectional table in the Appendix.]

*die:s, re:s, f.,*  
*m., day thing*  
STEMS *die:- re:-*  
BASES *di- r-*

## Page 91

### SINGULAR                      TERMINATIONS

Nom.	die:s	re:s	-e:s
Gen.	die:i:	rei:	-e:i: <i>or</i> -ei:
Dat.	die:i:	rei:	-e:i: <i>or</i> -ei:
Acc.	diem	rem	-em
Abl.	die:	re:	-e:

### PLURAL

Nom.	die:s	re:s	-e:s
Gen.	die:rum	re:rum	-e:rum
Dat.	die:bus	re:bus	-e:bus
Acc.	die:s	re:s	-e:s
Abl.	die:bus	re:bus	-e:bus

1. The vowel *e* which appears in every form is regularly long. It is shortened in the ending *-ei:* after a consonant, as in *r-ei:*; and before *-m* in the accusative singular, as in *di-em*. (Cf. Sec. 12.2.)

2. Only *die:s* and *re:s* are complete in the plural. Most other nouns of this declension lack the plural. *Acie:s*, *\_line of battle\_*, and *spe:s*, *hope*, have the nominative and accusative plural.

274. The ablative relation (Sec. 50) which is expressed by the prepositions *at*, *in*, or *on* may refer not only to place, but also to time, as *at noon*, *in summer*, *on the first day*. The ablative which is used to express this relation is called the *ablative of time*.

275. RULE. The Ablative of Time. *The time /when\ or /within which\ anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

a. Occasionally the preposition *\_in\_* is found. Compare the English *Next day we started* and *On\ the next day we started\_*.

### 276. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.

I. *Galba the Farmer*. Galba agricola ruri vivit. Cotidie prima luce laborare incipit, nec ante noctem in studio suo cessat. Meridie Iulia filia eum ad cenam vocat. Nocte pedes defessos domum vertit. Aestate filii agricolae auxilium patri dant. Hieme agricola eos in ludum mittit. Ibi magister pueris multas fabulas de rebus gestis Caesaris narrat. Aestate filii agricolae perpetuis laboribus exercentur nec grave agri opus est iis molestum. Galba sine ulla cura vivit nec res adversas timet.



II. 1. In that month there were many battles in Gaul. 2. The cavalry of the enemy made an attack upon Caesar's line of battle. 3. In the first hour of the night the ship was overcome by the billows. 4. On the second day the savages were eager to come under Caesar's protection. 5. The king had joined battle, moved by the hope of victory. 6. That year a fire destroyed many birds and other animals. 7. We saw blood on the wild beast's teeth.

277. DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS (*Continued*)

Tum Daedalus gravibus curis commotus filio suo Icaro ita dixit: "Animus meus, Icare, est plenus tristitiae nec oculi lacrimis egent. Discedere ex Creta, Athenas properare, maxime studeo; sed rex recusat audire verba mea et omnem reditus spem eripit. Sed numquam rebus adversis vincar. Terra et mare sunt inimica, sed aliam fugae viam reperiam." Tum in artis ignotas animum dimittit et mirum capit consilium. Nam pennas in ordine ponit et veras alas facit.



# Page 92

## LESSON XLIX

### PRONOUNS CLASSIFIED : PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

[Special Vocabulary]

*ami:citia*, -ae\, f., *\_friendship\_ (amicable)*  
*itaque\*, conj., *and so, therefore, accordingly*  
*littera*, -ae\, f., *\_a letter\_ of the alphabet;*  
*plur.*, *\_a letter, an epistle\_*  
*metus*, metu:s\, m., *fear*  
*nihil*, indeclinable\, n., *\_nothing\_ (nihilist)*  
*nu:ntius*, nu:nti:\, m., *messenger. Cf. nu:ntio:\*  
*pa:x*, pa:cis\, f., *peace (pacify)*  
*re:gnum*, -i:\, n., *\_reign, sovereignty, kingdom\_*  
*supplicum*, suppli'ci:\, n., *punishment;*  
*supplicum su:mere de:\*, with abl., *\_inflict punishment on\_;*  
*supplicum dare\*, *suffer punishment. Cf. poena\*

*placeo:*, *place:re*, *placui:*, *placitus\*, *\_be pleasing to, please\_,*  
*with dative. Cf. Sec. 154*  
*su:mo:*, *su:mere*, *su:mpsi:*, *su:mptus\*, *take up, assume*  
*sustineo:*, *sustine:re*, *sustinui:*, *sustentus\*, *\_sustain\_*

278. We have the same kinds of pronouns in Latin as in English. They are divided into the following eight classes:

1. *Personal pronouns\*, which show the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of; as, *ego\*, *I*; *tu\*, *\_you\_*; *is\*, *he*. (Cf. Sec. 279. etc.)
2. *Possessive pronouns\*, which denote possession; as, *meus\*, *tuus\*, *suus\*, etc. (Cf. Sec. 98.)
3. *Reflexive pronouns\*, used in the predicate to refer back to the subject; as, *\_he saw himself\_*. (Cf. Sec. 281.)
4. *Intensive pronouns\*, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun; as, *\_I myself saw it\_*. (Cf. Sec. 285.)
5. *Demonstrative pronouns\*, which point out persons or things; as, *is\*, *this*, *that*. (Cf. Sec. 112.)



6. *Relative pronouns*\, which connect a subordinate adjective clause with an antecedent; *as, qui*\, *who*. (Cf. Sec. 220.)

7. *Interrogative pronouns*\, which ask a question; *as, quis*\, *who?* (Cf. Sec. 225.)

8. *Indefinite pronouns*\, which point out indefinitely; *as, \_some one, any one, some, certain ones\_, etc.* (Cf. Sec. 296.)

279. The demonstrative pronoun *is*\, *ea*\, *id*\, as we learned in Sec. 115, is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the third person (*\_he\_, \_she\_, \_it\_, \_they\_, etc.*).

280. The personal pronouns of the first person are *ego*\, *\_I\_*; *no:s*\, *we*; of the second person, *tu*:\, *\_thou\_* or *\_you\_*; *vo:s*\, *ye* or *you*. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON SECOND PERSON

Nom. *ego, I tu:, you*

Gen. *mei:, of me tui:, of you*

Dat. *mihi, to or for me tibi, to or for you*

Acc. *me:, me te:, you*

Abl. *me:, with, from, etc., me te:, with, from, etc., you*



## PLURAL

VO:S, *you*

Dat. no:bi:s, *to* or *for us*      vo:bi:s, *to* or *for you*

VO:S, *you*

*etc., us*                      *etc., you*

281. The Reflexive Pronouns. 1. The personal pronouns *ego* and *tu* may be used in the predicate as reflexives; as,

videmus nos, *we see ourselves*

videtis vos, *you see yourselves*

- ## SINGULAR AND PLURAL

Dat. sibi Abl. se:

Puer se videt, *the boy sees himself*

Animal se videt, *the animal sees itself*

li se vident, *they see themselves*

3. Give the Latin for

282. The preposition *cum*\, when used with the ablative of *ego*\, *tu*:\, or *sui*:\, is appended to the form, as, *me:cum*\, *\_with me\_*; *te:cum*\, *with you*; *no:bi:scum*\, *\_with us\_* ; etc.

## 283. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 294.

I. 1. Mea mater est cara mihi et tua mater est cara tibi. 2. Vestrae litterae erant gratae nobis et nostrae litterae erant gratae vobis. 3. Nuntius regis qui nobiscum est nihil respondebit. 4. Nuntii pacem amicitiamque sibi et suis sociis postulaverunt. 5. Si tu arma sumes, ego regnum occupabo. 6. Uter vestrum est civis Romanus? Neuter nostrum. 7. Eo tempore multi supplicium dederunt quia regnum petierant. 8. Sume supplicium, Caesar, de hostibus patriae acribus. 9. Prima luce alii metu commoti sese fugae mandaverunt; alii autem magna virtute impetum exercitus nostri sustinuerunt. 10. Soror regis, ubi de adverso proelio audivit, sese Pompeiis interfecit.

II. 1. Whom do you teach? I teach myself. 2. The soldier wounded himself with his sword. 3. The master praises us, but you he does not praise. 4. Therefore he will inflict punishment on you, but we shall not suffer punishment. 5. Who will march (i.e. make a march) with me to Rome? 6. I will march with you to the gates of the city. 7. Who will show us[1] the way? The gods will show you[1] the way.



## Page 94

[Footnote 1: Not accusative.]

### DAED'ALUS AND IC'ARUS (*Concluded*)

284. Puer Icarus una<sup>[2]</sup> stabat et mirum patris opus videbat. Postquam manus ultima<sup>[3]</sup> alis imposita est, Daedalus eas temptavit et similis avi in auras volavit. Tum alas umeris fili adligavit et docuit eum volare et dixit, "Te veto, mi fili, adpropinquare aut soli aut mari. Si fluctibus adpropinquaveris,<sup>[4]</sup> aqua alis tuis nocebit, et si soli adpropinquaveris, <sup>[4]</sup> ignis eas cremabit." Tum pater et filius iter difficile incipiunt. Alas movent et aerae sese committunt. Sed stultus puer verbis patris non paret. Soli adpropinquat. Alae cremantur et Icarus in mare decedit et vitam amittit. Daedalus autem sine ullo periculo trans fluctus ad insulam Siciliam volavit.

[Footnote 2: Adverb, see vocabulary.]

[Footnote 3: *manus ultima*, *\_the finishing touch\_*. What literally?]

[Footnote 4: Future perfect. Translate by the present.]

## LESSON L

### THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN *IPSE* AND THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IDEM*

[Special Vocabulary]

*corpus, corporis*, *n.*, *\_body\_ (corporal)* *de:nsus*, *-a*, *-um*, *dense* *i:dem*, *e'adem*, *idem*, *demonstrative pronoun*, *\_the same\_ (identity)* *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, *intensive pronoun*, *self; even, very* *mi:rus*, *-a*, *-um*, *\_wonderful, marvelous\_ (miracle)* *o:lim*, *adv.*, *formerly, once upon a time* *pars, partis (-ium)*, *f.*, *\_part, region, direction\_* *quoque*, *adv.*, *also*. Stands after the word which it emphasizes *so:l*, *so:lis*, *m.*, *\_sun\_ (solar)* *ve:rus*, *-a*, *-um*, *true, real (verity)*

*de:beo*, *de:be:re*, *de:bui*, *de:bitus*, *\_owe, ought\_ (debt)*  
*e:ripio*, *e:ripere*, *e:ripui*, *e:reptus*, *snatch from*

285. *Ipse* means *\_self\_ (\_him-self, her-self\_, etc.) or is translated by *\_even\_ or *\_very\_*. It is used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees like an adjective.**

a. *Ipse* must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive *sui*. The latter is always used as a pronoun, while *ipse* is regularly adjective. Compare



Homo se videt, *the man sees himself* (reflexive)

Homo ipse periculum videt,  
*the man himself* (intensive) *sees the danger*

Homo ipsum periculum videt,  
*the man sees the danger itself* (intensive)

286. Except for the one form *ipse*, the intensive pronoun is declined exactly like the nine irregular adjectives (cf. Secs. 108, 109). Learn the declension (Sec. 481).

287. The demonstrative *idem*, meaning *the same*, is a compound of *is*. It is declined as follows:



## Page 95

### SINGULAR

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. i:dem	e'adem	idem
Gen. eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem
Dat. ei:'dem	ei:'dem	ei:'dem
Acc. eun'dem	ean'dem	idem
Abl. eo:'dem	ea:'dem	eo:'dem

### PLURAL

Nom. ii:dem	eae'dem	e'adem
ei:'dem		
Gen. eo:run'dem	ea:run'dem	eo:run'dem
Dat. ii:s'dem	ii:s'dem	ii:s'dem
ei:s'dem	ei:s'dem	ei:s'dem
Acc. eo:s'dem	ea:s'dem	e'adem
Abl. ii:s'dem	ii:s'dem	ii:s'dem
ei:s'dem	ei:s'dem	ei:s'dem

a. From forms like *eundem*\ (*eum* + *-dem*), *eo:rundem*\ (*eo:rum* + *-dem*), we learn the rule that *m*\ before *d*\ is changed to *n*\.

b. The forms *ii:dem*\, *ii:sdem*\ are often spelled and pronounced with one *i*:\.

### 288. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. 1. Ego et tu[1] in eadem urbe vivimus. 2. Iter ipsum non timemus sed feras saevas quae in silva densa esse dicuntur. 3. Olim nos ipsi idem iter fecimus. 4. Eo tempore multas feras vidimus. 5. Sed nobis non nocuerunt. 6. Caesar ipse scutum de manibus militis eripuit et in ipsam aciem properavit. 7. Itaque milites summa virtute tela in hostium corpora iecerunt. 8. Romani quoque gravia vulnera acceperunt. 9. Denique hostes terga verterunt et omnis in partis[2] fugerunt. 10. Eadem hora litterae Romam ab imperatore ipso missae sunt. 11. Eodem mense captivi quoque in Italiam missi sunt. 12. Sed multi propter vulnera iter difficile trans montis facere recusabant et Genavae esse dicebantur.

II. 1. At Pompeii there is a wonderful mountain. 2. When I was in that place, I myself saw that mountain. 3. On the same day many cities were destroyed by fire and stones from that very mountain. 4. You have not heard the true story of that calamity, have



you?[3] 5. On that day the very sun could not give light to men. 6. You yourself ought to tell (to) us that story.

[Footnote 1: Observe that in Latin we say *I and you*, not *you and I*.]

[Footnote 2: Not *parts*, but *directions*.]

[Footnote 3: Cf. Sec. 210.]

#### 289. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE[4]

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus et ultimus rex Romanorum, ubi in exilium ab iratis Romanis eiectus est, a Porsena, rege Etruscorum, auxilium petiit. Mox Porsena magnis cum copiis Romam venit, et ipsa urbs summo in periculo erat. Omnibus in partibus exercitus Romanus victus erat. Iam rex montem Ianiculum[5] occupaverat. Numquam antea Romani tanto metu tenebantur. Ex agris in urbem properabant et summo studio urbem ipsam muniebant.

[Footnote 4: The story of Horatius has been made familiar by Macaulay's well-known poem "Horatius" in his *Lays of Ancient Rome*. Read the poem in connection with this selection.]





# Page 96

[Footnote 5: The Janiculum is a high hill across the Tiber from Rome.]

## LESSON LI

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS *HIC, ISTE, ILLE*

[Special Vocabulary]

*hic, haec, hoc*\, demonstrative pronoun, *\_this\_* (of mine);

*\_he, she, it\_*

*ille, illa, illud*\, demonstrative pronoun *that* (yonder);

*he, she, it*

*invi:sus, -a, -um*\, *\_hateful, detested\_*, with dative Cf. Sec. 143

*iste, ista, istud*\, demonstrative pronoun, *that* (of yours);

*he, she, it*

*li:berta:s, -a:tis*\, *f., \_liberty\_*

*modus, -i*\, *m., measure; manner, way, mode*

*no:men, no:minis*\, *n., \_name\_* (nominate)

*oculus, -i*\, *m., eye* (oculist)

*pri:stinus, -a, -um*\, *\_former, old-time\_* (pristine)

*pu:blicus, -a, -um*\, *public, belonging to the state;*

*re:s pu:blica, rei: pu:blicae*\, *f., \_the commonwealth, the state,*

*the republic\_*

*vesti:gium, vesti:gi*\, *n., footprint, track; trace, vestige*

*vo:x, vo:cis*\, *f., \_voice\_*

290. We have already learned the declension of the demonstrative pronoun *is*\ and its use. (Cf. Lesson XVII.) That pronoun refers to persons or things either far or near, and makes no definite reference to place or time. If we wish to point out an object definitely in place or time, we must use *hic*\, *iste*\, or *ille*\. These demonstratives, like *is*\, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives, and their relation to the speaker may be represented graphically thus:

*hic*            *iste*            *ille*

SPEAKER ----->----->----->

*this, he; that, he; that, he*

(near);        (remote);        (more remote)

a. In dialogue *hic*\ refers to a person or thing near the speaker; *iste*\, to a person or thing near the person addressed; *ille*\, to a person or thing remote from both. These distinctions are illustrated in the model sentences, Sec. 293, which should be carefully studied and imitated.



\_291.\_ Hic\ is declined as follows:

SINGULAR

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. hic	haec	hoc
Gen. huius	huius	huius
Dat. huic	huic	huic
Acc. hunc	hanc	hoc
Abl. ho:c	ha:c	ho:c

PLURAL

Nom. hi:	hae	haec
Gen. ho:rum	ha:rum	ho:rum
Dat. hi:s	hi:s	hi:s
Acc. ho:s	ha:s	haec
Abl. hi:s	hi:s	hi:s

*a. Huius\ is pronounced \_h[oo]’y[oo]s\_, and huic\ is pronounced h[oo]ic (one syllable).*

292. The demonstrative pronouns *iste\*, *ista\*, *istud\*, and *ille\*, *illa\*, *illud\*, except for the nominative and accusative singular neuter forms *istud\* and *illud\*, are declined exactly like *ipse\*, *ipsa\*, *ipsum\*. (See Sec. 481.)



## Page 97

### 293. MODEL SENTENCES

*Is this horse (of mine) strong?*  
Estne hic equus validus?

*That horse (of yours) is strong, but that one (yonder) is weak*  
Iste equus est validus, sed ille est infirmus

*Are these (men by me) your friends?*  
Suntne hi amici tui?

*Those (men by you) are my friends,  
but those (men yonder) are enemies*  
Isti sunt amici mei, sed illi sunt inimici

### 294. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. *A German Chieftain addresses his Followers.* Ille fortis Germanorum dux suos convocavit et hoc modo animos eorum confirmavit. "Vos, qui in his finibus vivitis, in hunc locum convocavi[1] quia mecum debetis istos agros et istas domos ab iniuriis Romanorum liberare. Hoc nobis non difficile erit, quod illi hostes has silvas densas, feras saevas quarum vestigia vident, montes altos timent. Si fortes erimus, dei ipsi nobis viam salutis demonstrabunt. Ille sol, isti oculi calamitates nostras viderunt.[1] Itaque nomen illius rei publicae Romanae non solum nobis, sed etiam omnibus hominibus qui libertatem amant, est invisum. Ad arma vos voco. Exercete istam pristinam virtutem et vincetis."

[Footnote 1: The perfect definite. (Cf. Sec. 190.)]

II. 1. Does that bird (of yours)[2] sing? 2. This bird (of mine)[2] sings both[3] in summer and in winter and has a beautiful voice. 3. Those birds (yonder)[2] in the country don't sing in winter. 4. Snatch a spear from the hands of that soldier (near you)[2] and come home with me. 5. With those very eyes (of yours)[2] you will see the tracks of the hateful enemy who burned my dwelling and made an attack on my brother. 6. For (propter) these deeds (res) we ought to inflict punishment on him without delay. 7. The enemies of the republic do not always suffer punishment.

[Footnote 2: English words in parentheses are not to be translated. They are inserted to show what demonstratives should be used. (Cf. Sec. 290.)]

[Footnote 3: *both ... and, et ... etl.*]

[Illustration: HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT]

295. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Continued*)

Altera urbis pars muris, altera flumine satis muniri videbatur. Sed erat pons in flumine qui hostibus iter paene dedit. Tum Horatius Cocles, fortis vir, magna voce dixit, "Rescindite pontem, Romani! Brevi tempore Porsena in urbem copias suas traducet." Iam hostes in ponte erant, sed Horatius cum duobus (cf. Sec. 479) comitibus ad extremam pontis partem properavit, et hi soli aciem hostium sustinuerunt. Tum vero cives Romani pontem a tergo rescindere incipiunt, et hostes frustra Horatium superare temptant.

## LESSON LII

### THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS



## Page 98

[Special Vocabulary]

*incolumis*, -e\, *\_unharmed\_*

*ne*: ... *quidem*\, adv., *not even*. The emphatic word stands between

*ne*:\ and *quidem*\

*nisi*\, conj., *\_unless, if ... not\_*

*paene*\, adv., *almost* (pen-insula)

*satis*\, adv., *\_enough, sufficiently\_* (*satisfaction*)

*tantus*, -a, -um\, *so great*

*ve:ro*:\, adv., *\_truly, indeed, in fact\_*. As a conj. *\_but, however\_*,

*usually stands second, never first*.

*de:cido*:, *de:cidere*, *de:cidi*:, —\, *\_fall down\_* (*deciduous*) *de:silio*:, *de:sili:re*, *de:silui*:,

*de:sultus*\, *leap down, dismount* *maneo*:, *mane:re*, *ma:nsi*:, *ma:nsu:rus*\, *\_remain\_*

*tra:du:co*:, *tra:du:cere*, *tra:du:xi*:, *tra:ductus*\, *lead across*

296. The indefinite pronouns are used to refer to *some person* or *some thing*, without indicating which particular one is meant. The pronouns *quis*\ and *qui*\, which we have learned in their interrogative and relative uses, may also be indefinite; and nearly all the other indefinite pronouns are compounds of *quis*\ or *qui*\ and declined almost like them. Review the declension of these words, Secs. 221, 227.

297. Learn the declension and meaning of the following indefinites:

MASC. FEM. NEUT.

*quis* *quid*, *some one, any one* (substantive)

*qui*: *qua* or *quae* *quod*, *some, any* (adjective), Sec. 483

*aliquis* *aliquid*, *some one, any one*

(substantive), Sec. 487

*aliqui*: *aliqua* *aliquod*, *some, any* (adjective), Sec. 487

*qui:dam* *quaedam* *quoddam*, *quiddam*, *a certain*,

*a certain one*, Sec. 485

*quisquam* *quicquam* or *quidquam* (no plural), *any one*

(at all) (substantive), Sec. 486

*quisque* *quidque*, *each one, every one*

(substantive), Sec. 484

*quisque* *quaeque* *quodque*, *each, every* (adjective), Sec. 484

[Transcriber's Note:

In the original text, the combined forms (masculine/feminine) were printed in the "masculine" column.]

NOTE. The meanings of the neuters, *something, etc.*, are easily inferred from the masculine and feminine.



a. In the masculine and neuter singular of the indefinites, quis-forms and quid-forms are mostly used as substantives, qui-forms and quod-forms as adjectives.

b. The indefinites *quis* and *qui* never stand first in a clause, and are rare excepting after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num* (as, *si quis*, *if any one*; *si quid*, *if anything*; *nisi quis*, *unless some one*). Generally *aliquis* and *aliqui* are used instead. c. The forms *qua* and *aliqua* are both feminine nominative singular and neuter nominative plural of the indefinite adjectives *qui*

## Page 99

*and aliqui\ respectively. How do these differ from the corresponding forms of the relative qui\? \_d.\_ Observe that qui:dam\ (qui: + -dam) is declined like qui:\, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural m\ of qui:\ becomes n\ (cf. Sec. 287.a): quendam\, quendam\, quorundam\, quarundam\; also that the neuter has quiddam\ (substantive) and quoddam\ (adjective) in the nominative and accusative singular. Qui:dam\ is the least indefinite of the indefinite pronouns, and implies that you could name the person or thing referred to if you cared to do so.*

*\_e.\_ Quisquam\ and quisque\ (substantive) are declined like quis\.*

*f. Quisquam\, \_any one\_ (quicquam or quidquam, \_anything\_), is always used substantively and chiefly in negative sentences. The corresponding adjective \_any\_ is ullus, -a, -um\ (Sec. 108).*

### 298. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 295.

I. 1. Aliquis de ponte in flumen decidit sed sine ullo periculo servatus est. 2. Est vero in vita cuiusque hominis aliqua bona fortuna. 3. Ne militum quidem[1] quisquam in castris mansit. 4. Si quem meae domi vides, iube eum discedere. 5. Si quis pontem tenet, ne tantus quidem exercitus capere urbem potest. 6. Urbs non satis munita erat et meridie rex quidam paene copias suas trans pontem traduxerat. 7. Denique miles quidam armatus in fluctus desiluit et incolumis ad alteram ripam oculos vertit. 8. Quisque illi forti militi aliquid dare debet. 9. Tanta vero virtus Romanus semper placuit. 10. Olim Corinthus erat urbs satis magna et paene par Romae ipsi; nunc vero moenia deciderunt et pauca vestigia urbis illius reperiri possunt. 11. Quisque libertatem amat, et aliquibus vero nomen regis est invisum.

II. 1. If you see a certain Cornelius at Corinth, send him to me. 2. Almost all the soldiers who fell down into the waves were unharmed. 3. Not even at Pompeii did I see so great a fire. 4. I myself was eager to tell something to some one. 5. Each one was praising his own work. 6. Did you see some one in the country? I did not see any one. 7. Unless some one will remain on the bridge with Horatius, the commonwealth will be in the greatest danger.

[Footnote 1: Observe that *qui:dam\* and *quidem\* are different words.]

### 299. HOW HORATIUS HELD THE BRIDGE (*Concluded*)

Mox, ubi parva pars pontis mansit, Horatius iussit comites discedere et solus mira constantia impetum illius totius exercitus sustinebat. Denique magno fragore pons in

flumen decedit. Tum vero Horatius tergum vertit et armatus in aquas desiluit. In eum hostes multa tela iecerunt; incolumis autem per fiuctus ad alteram ripam tranavit. Ei propter tantas res gestas populus Romanus non solum alia magna praemia dedit sed etiam statuam Horati in loco publico posuit.





# Page 100

\*\*\*\*\*

Sixth Review, Lessons XLV-LII, Secs. 521-523

\*\*\*\*\*

## LESSON LIII

### REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

[Special Vocabulary]

*aquila*, -ae\, f., *\_eagle\_* (*aquiline*)

*auda:x\*, gen. *auda:cis\*, adj., *\_bold, audacious\_*

*celer*, *celeris*, *celere\*, *swift, quick* (*celerity*). Cf. *ve:lo:x\*

*explo:rato:r*, -o:ris\, m., *scout, spy* (*explorer*)

*inge:ns\*, gen. *ingentis\*, adj., *huge, vast*

*medius*, -a., -um\, *\_middle, middle part of\_* (*medium*)

*me:ns*, *mentis* (-ium)\, f., *mind* (*mental*). Cf. *animus\*

*opportu:nus*, -a, -um\, *opportune*

*quam\*, adv., *\_than\_*. With the superlative *quam\* gives the force of  
*as possible, as quam auda:cissimi: viri:\*, *\_men as bold as possible\_*

*recens\*, gen. *recentis\*, adj., *\_recent\_*

*tam\*, adv., *so*. Always with an adjective or adverb, while *ita\* is  
*generally used with a verb*

*quaero:*, *quaerere*, *quaesi:vi:*, *quaesi:tus\*, *\_ask, inquire, seek\_*  
(*question*). Cf. *peto:\*

300. The quality denoted by an adjective may exist in either a higher or a lower degree, and this is expressed by a form of inflection called comparison. The mere presence of the quality is expressed by the positive degree, its presence in a higher or lower degree by the comparative, and in the highest or lowest of all by the superlative. In English the usual way of comparing an adjective is by using the suffix *\_-er\_* for the comparative and *\_-est\_* for the superlative; as, positive *high*, comparative *higher*, superlative *highest*. Less frequently we use the adverbs *more* and *most*; as, positive *beautiful*, comparative *more beautiful*, superlative *most beautiful*.

In Latin, as in English, adjectives are compared by adding suffixes or by using adverbs.

301. Adjectives are compared by using suffixes as follows:



POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE

cla:rus, -a, -um cla:rior, cla:ri:us cla:rissimus, -a, -um

(*bright*) (*brighter*) (*brightest*)

(BASE cla:r-)

brevis, breve brevior, brevius brevissimus, -a, -um

(*short*) (*shorter*) (*shortest*)

(BASE brev-)

ve:lo:x ve:lo:cior, ve:lo:cius ve:lo:cissimus, -a, -um

(*swift*) (*swifter*) (*swiftest*)

(BASE veloc-)

a. The comparative is formed from the base of the positive by adding -ior masc. and fem., and -ius neut.; the superlative by adding /-issimus, -issima, -issimum\.

302. Less frequently adjectives are compared by using the adverbs *magis*\, *\_more\_*; *maxime*:\, *most*; as, *ido:neus*\, *\_suitable\_*; *magis ido:neus*\, *more suitable*; *maxime: ido:neus*\, *\_most suitable\_*.

# Page 101

303. Declension of the Comparative. Adjectives of the comparative degree are declined as follows:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.		MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom. cla:rior	cla:ri:us		cla:ri:o:re:s	cla:rio:ra	
Gen. cla:rio:ris	cla:rio:ris		cla:rio:rum	cla:rio:rum	
Dat. cla:rio:ri:	cla:rio:ri:		cla:rio:ribus	cla:rio:ribus	
Acc. cla:rio:rem	cla:rius		cla:rio:re:s	cla:rio:ra	
Abl. cla:rio:re	cla:rio:re		cla:rio:ribus	cla:rio:ribus	

a. Observe that the endings are those of the consonant stems of the third declension.

b. Compare *longus*\, *\_long\_*; *fortis*\, *brave*; *recens*\ (*base*, *recent-*), *\_recent\_*; and decline the comparative of each.

304. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but the superlative is formed by adding -rimus, -a, -um to the nominative masculine of the positive; as,

## POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE

a:cer, a:cris, a:cre a:crior, a:crius a:cerrimus, -a, -um

(BASE acr-)

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum pulchrior, pulchrius pulcherrimus,

(BASE pulchr-) -a, -um

li:ber, li:bera, li:berum li:berior, li:berius li:berrimus, -a, -um

(BASE li:ber-)

a. In a similar manner compare *miser*\, *aeger*\, *creber*\.

305. The comparative is often translated by *quite*, *too*, or *somewhat*, and the superlative by *very*; as, *altior*\, *\_quite\_* (*\_too, somewhat\_*) *\_high\_*; *altissimus*\, *very high*.

## 306. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1. Quid exploratores quaerebant? Exploratores tempus opportuissimum itineri quaerebant. 2. Media in silva ignis quam creberrimos fecimus, quod feras tam audacis numquam antea videramus. 3. Antiquis temporibus Germani erant fortiores quam Galli. 4. Caesar erat clarior quam inimici[1] qui eum necaverunt. 5. Quisque scutum ingens et pilum longius gerebat. 6. Apud barbaros Germani erant audacissimi et fortissimi. 7. Mens hominum est celerior quam corpus. 8. Viri aliquarum terrarum sunt miserrimi. 9.



Corpora Germanorum erant ingentiora quam Romanorum. 10. Acerrimi Gallorum principes sine ulla mora trans flumen quoddam equos velocissimos traduxerunt. 11. Aestate dies sunt longiores quam hieme. 12. Imperator quidam ab exploratoribus de recenti adventu navium longarum quaesivit.

II. 1. Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest. 2. Certain animals are swifter than the swiftest horse. 3. The Roman name was most hateful to the enemies of the commonwealth. 4. The Romans always inflicted the severest<sup>[2]</sup> punishment on faithless allies. 5. I was quite ill, and so I hastened from the city to the country. 6. Marcus had some friends dearer than Caesar.<sup>[3]</sup> 7. Did you not seek a more recent report concerning the battle? 8. Not even after a victory so opportune did he seek the general's friendship.

## Page 102

[Footnote 1: Why is this word used instead of *hostes*?]

[Footnote 2: Use the superlative of *gravis*.]

[Footnote 3: Accusative. In a comparison the noun after *quam* is in the same case as the one before it.]

N.B. Beginning at this point, the selections for reading will be found near the end of the volume. (See p. 197.)

## LESSON LIV

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES WITHOUT QUAM

[Special Vocabulary]

*alacer, alacris, alacrel*, \_eager, spirited, excited\_ (*alacrity*)

*celeritas*, -a:tis\, f., *speed* (*celerity*)

*clamor, clamoris*, m., \_shout, clamor\_

*lenis, lenis*, mild, gentle (*lenient*)

*mulier, mulieris*, f., \_woman\_

*multitudo*, -itudinis\, f., *multitude*

*nequam, dat. nequamini*, acc. *nequamem* (*gen. nequamus*, abl.

*nequamum*, from *nequamus*), no plur., m. and f., *no one*

*notabilis, notabilis*, \_well known, noble\_

*nocturnus*, adv. (an old abl.), *by night* (*nocturnal*)

*statim*, adv., \_immediately, at once\_

*subito*, adv., *suddenly*

*tardus, -a, -um*, \_slow\_ (*tardy*)

*cupio, cupere, cupivi, cupidus*, *desire, wish* (*cupidity*)

307. The following six adjectives in -lis form the comparative regularly; but the superlative is formed by adding -limus to the base of the positive. Learn the meanings and comparison.

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE *facilis, -e, easy* *facilior, -ius* *facillimus, -a, -um* *difficilis, -e, hard* *difficilior, -ius* *difficillimus, -a, -um* *similis, -e, like* *similior, -ius* *simillimus, -a, -um* *dissimilis, -e, unlike* *dissimilior, -ius* *dissimillimus, -a, -um* *gracilis, -e, slender* *gracilior, -ius* *gracillimus, -a, -um* *humilis, -e, low* *humilior, -ius* *humillimus, -a, -um*

308. From the knowledge gained in the preceding lesson we should translate the sentence *Nothing is brighter than the sun*



Nihil est clarius quam sol

But the Romans, especially in negative sentences, often expressed the comparison in this way,

Nihil est clarius sole

which, literally translated, is *Nothing is brighter away from the sun*; that is, *starting from the sun as a standard, nothing is brighter*. This relation is expressed by the separative ablative *sole*. Hence the rule

309. RULE. Ablative with Comparatives. *The comparative degree, if /quam\ is omitted, is followed by the separative ablative.*

### 310. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.



## Page 103

I. 1. Nemo milites alacriores Romanis vidit. 2. Statim imperator iussit nuntios quam celerrimos litteras Romam portare. 3. Multa flumina sunt leniora Rheno. 4. Apud Romanos quis erat clarior Caesare? 5. Nihil pulchrius urbe Roma vidi. 6. Subito multitudo audacissima magno clamore proelium acrius commisit. 7. Num est equus tuus tardus? Non vero tardus, sed celerior aquila. 8. Ubi Romae fui, nemo erat mihi amicior Sexto. 9. Quaedam mulieres cibum militibus dare cupiverunt. 10. Rex vetuit civis ex urbe noctu discedere. 11. Ille puer est gracilior hac muliere. 12. Explorator duas (*two*) vias, alteram facilem, alteram difficiliorem, demonstravit.

II. 1. What city have you seen more beautiful than Rome? 2. The Gauls were not more eager than the Germans. 3. The eagle is not slower than the horse. 4. The spirited woman did not fear to make the journey by night. 5. The mind of the multitude was quite gentle and friendly. 6. But the king's mind was very different. 7. The king was not like (similar to) his noble father. 8. These hills are lower than the huge mountains of our territory.

[Illustration: ARMA ROMANA]

## LESSON LV

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Continued*)

[Special Vocabulary]

*aedificium*, *aedifi'ci:*\, *n.*, *\_building, dwelling\_ (edifice)*

*imperium*, *impe'ri:*\, *n.*, *command, chief power; empire*

*mors*, *mortis (-ium)*\, *f.*, *\_death\_ (mortal)*

*reliquus*, *-a, -um*\, *remaining, rest of*. As a noun, *m.* and *n. plur.*, *the rest (relic)*

*scelus*, *sceleris*\, *n.*, *\_crime\_*

*servitu:s*, *-u:tis*\, *f.*, *slavery (servitude)*

*valle:s*, *vallis (-ium)*\, *f.*, *\_valley\_*

*abdo:*, *abdere*, *abdidi:*, *abditus*\, *\_hide\_*

*contendo:*, *contendere*, *contendi:*, *contentus*\, *strain, struggle;*  
*hasten (contend)*

*occi:do:*, *occi:dere*, *occi:di:*, *occi:sus*\, *\_cut down, kill\_*. Cf.

*neco:*\, *interficio:*\

*perterreo:*, *perterre:re*, *perterrui:*, *perterritus*\, *terrify,*  
*frighten*

*recipio:*, *recipere*, *rece:pi:*, *receptus*\, *\_receive, recover\_;*

*se:* *recipere*\, *betake one's self, withdraw, retreat*



*tra:do:, tra:dere, tra:didi:, tra:ditus\, \_give over, surrender, deliver\_ (traitor)*

311. Some adjectives in English have irregular comparison, as *good, better, best; many, more, most*. So Latin comparison presents some irregularities. Among the adjectives that are compared irregularly are

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE bonus, -a, -um, *good* melior, melius  
optimus, -a, -um magnus, -a, -um, *great* maior, maius maximus, -a, -um malus, -a, -um,  
*bad* peior, peius pessimus, -a, -um multus, -a, -um, *much* —, plu:s plu:rimus, -a, -um  
multi:, -ae, -a, *many* plu:re:s, plu:ra plu:rimi:, -ae, -a parvus, -a, -um, *small* minor, minus  
minimus, -a, -um

312. The following four adjectives have two superlatives. Unusual forms are placed in parentheses.



# Page 104

exterus, -a, -um, (exterior, -ius, { extre:mus, -a, -um }  
*outward outer*) {(extimus, -a, -um) }

*outermost, last*

i:nferus, -a, -um, i:nferior, -ius, { i:nfimus, -a, -um }  
*low lower* { i:mus, -a, -um }

*lowest*

posterus, -a, -um, (posterior, -ius, { postre:mus, -a, -um }  
*next later*) {(postumus, -a, -um) }

*last*

superus, -a, -um, superior, -ius { supre:mus, -a, -um }  
*above higher* { summus, -a, -um }

*highest*

313. *Plu:s\, \_more\_ (plural \_more, many, several\_), is declined as follows:*

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom.	—	plu:s	plu:re:s	plu:ra
Gen.	—	plu:ris	plu:rium	plu:rium
Dat.	—	—	plu:ribus	plu:ribus
Acc.	—	plu:s	plu:ri:s, -e:s	plu:ra
Abl.	—	plu:re	plu:ribus	plu:ribus

a. In the singular *plu:s\* is used only as a neuter substantive.

## 314. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 296.

I. 1. Reliqui hostes, qui a dextro cornu proelium commiserant, de superiore loco fugerunt et sese in silvam maximam receperunt. 2. In extrema parte silvae castra hostium posita erant. 3. Plurimi captivi ab equitibus ad Caesarem ducti sunt. 4. Caesar vero iussit eos in servitutem tradi. 5. Postero die magna multitudo mulierum ab Romanis in valle ima reperta est. 6. Hae mulieres maxime perterritae adventu Caesaris sese occidere studebant. 7. Eae quoque pluris fabulas de exercitus Romani sceleribus audiverant. 8. Fama illorum militum optima non erat. 9. In barbarorum aedificiis maior copia frumenti reperta est. 10. Nemo crebris proeliis contendere sine aliquo periculo potest.



II. 1. The remaining women fled from their dwellings and hid themselves. 2. They were terrified and did not wish to be captured and given over into slavery. 3. Nothing can be worse than slavery. 4. Slavery is worse than death. 5. In the Roman empire a great many were killed because they refused to be slaves. 6. To surrender the fatherland is the worst crime.

## LESSON LVI

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (*Concluded*)  
ABLATIVE OF THE MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE

[Special Vocabulary]

*aditus*, -u:s\, m., *\_approach, access; entrance\_*

*ci:vita:s*, *ci:vita:tis\*, f., *citizenship; body of citizens, state*  
(city)

*inter\*, prep, with acc., *\_between, among\_* (*interstate commerce*)

*nam\*, conj., *for*

*obses*, *obsidis\*, m. and f., *\_hostage\_*

*paulo:\*, adv. (abl. n. of *paulus\*), *\_by a little, somewhat\_*



## Page 105

*incolo:, incolere, incolui:, —\, transitive, \_inhabit\_;  
 intransitive, \_dwell\_. Cf. habito:\, vi:vo:\*  
*relinquo:, relinquere, reli:qui:, relictus\, leave, abandon*  
*(relinquish)*  
*statuo:, statuere, statui:, statu:tus\, \_fix, decide\_ (statute),*  
*usually with infin.*

315. The following adjectives are irregular in the formation of the superlative and have no positive. Forms rarely used are in parentheses.

COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE *citerior, hither (citerius, hithermost) interior, inner*  
*(intimus, inmost) prior, former pri:us, first propior, nearer proximus, next, nearest*  
*ulterior, further ultimus, furthest*

316. In the sentence *Galba is a head taller than Sextus*, the phrase *a head taller* expresses the *measure of difference\ in height between Galba and Sextus*. The Latin form of expression would be *\_Galba is taller than Sextus by a head\_\*. This is clearly an ablative relation, and the construction is called the *ablative of the measure of difference\*.

## EXAMPLES

*Galba est altior capite quam Sextus*  
*Galba is a head taller (taller by a head) than Sextus.*  
*Illud iter ad Italiam est multo brevius*  
*That route to Italy is much shorter (shorter by much)*

317. RULE. Ablative of the Measure of Difference. *With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the measure of difference.*

a. Especially common in this construction are the neuter ablatives

*eo:, by this, by that nihilo:,[1] by nothing*  
*ho:c, by this paulo:, by a little*  
*multo:, by much*

[Footnote 1: *nihil\* was originally *nihilum\* and declined like *pilum\*. There is no plural.]

## 318. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.



I. 1. Barbari proelium committere statuerunt eo magis quod Romani infirmi esse videbantur. 2. Meum consilium est multo melius quam tuum quia multo facilius est. 3. Haec via est multo latior quam illa. 4. Barbari erant nihilo tardiores quam Romani. 5. Tuus equus est paulo celerior quam meus. 6. Ii qui paulo fortiores erant prohibuerunt reliquos aditum relinquere. 7. Inter illas civitates Germania milites habet optimos. 8. Propior via quae per hanc vallem ducit est inter portum et lacum. 9. Servi, qui agros citiores incolebant, priores dominos relinquere non cupiverunt, quod eos amabant. 10. Ultimae Germaniae partes numquam in fidem Romanorum venerunt. 11. Nam trans Rhenum aditus erat multo difficilior exercitui Romano.



## Page 106

II. 1. Another way much more difficult (more difficult by much) was left through hither Gaul. 2. In ancient times no state was stronger than the Roman empire. 3. The states of further Gaul did not wish to give hostages to Caesar. 4. Slavery is no better (better by nothing) than death. 5. The best citizens are not loved by the worst. 6. The active enemy immediately withdrew into the nearest forest, for they were terrified by Caesar's recent victories.

## LESSON LVII

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

[Special Vocabulary]

*aequus*, -a, -um\, *\_even, level; equal\_*  
*cohors*, *cohortis* (-ium)\, f., *cohort*, a tenth part of a legion,  
 about 360 men  
*curro*:, *currere*, *cucurri*:, *cursus*\, *\_run\_ (course)*  
*difficulta*:, -a:, -tis\, f., *difficulty*  
*fossa*, -a:, -is\, f., *\_ditch\_ (fosse)*  
*gens*, *gentis* (-ium)\, f., *race, tribe, nation* (Gentile)  
*negotium*, *negoti*:, -um\, n., *\_business, affair, matter\_ (negotiate)*  
*regio*:, -onis\, f., *region, district*  
*rumor*, *rumoris*\, m., *\_rumor, report\_*. Cf. *factum*\, *factus*\, m., *\_as soon as\_*

*suscipio*:, *suscipere*, *suscepi*:, *susceptus*\, *\_undertake\_*  
*trahō*:, *trahere*, *traxi*:, *tractus*\, *drag, draw* (ex-tract)  
*valeo*:, *valeo*:, *valui*:, *valitūrus*\, *\_be strong\_*; *plurimum valeo*:, *plurimum valeo*:, *plurimum valeo*:, *\_to be most powerful, have great influence\_ (value)*. Cf. *validus*

319. Adverbs are generally derived from adjectives, as in English (e.g. adj. *sweet*, adv. *sweetly*). Like adjectives, they can be compared; but they have no declension.

320. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions are formed and compared as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Adj. <i>carus</i> , <i>dear</i>	<i>carior</i>	<i>carissimus</i>
Adv. <i>carē</i> :, <i>dearly</i>	<i>carius</i>	<i>carissime</i> :
Adj. <i>pulcher</i> , <i>beautiful</i>	<i>pulchrior</i>	<i>pulcherrimus</i>
Adv. <i>pulchre</i> :, <i>beautifully</i>	<i>pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrime</i> :
Adj. <i>liber</i> , <i>free</i>	<i>liberior</i>	<i>liberrimus</i>

*Adv.* li:bere:, *freely*      li:berius      li:berrime:

*a.* The positive of the adverb is formed by adding -e: to the base of the positive of the adjective. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective in the same way.

*b.* The comparative of any adverb is the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

321. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension are formed like those described above in the comparative and superlative. The positive is usually formed by adding -iter to the base of adjectives of three endings or of two endings, and -ter to the base of those of one ending;[1] as,

## Page 107

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>Adj.</i> fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortior	fortissimus
<i>Adv.</i> fortiter, <i>bravely</i>	fortius	fortissime:
<i>Adj.</i> audax, <i>bold</i>	audacior	audacissimus
<i>Adv.</i> audacter, <i>boldly</i>	audacius	audacissime:

[Footnote 1: This is a good working rule, though there are some exceptions to it.]

322. Case Forms as Adverbs. As we learned above, the neuter accusative of comparatives is used adverbially. So in the positive or superlative some adjectives, instead of following the usual formation, use the accusative or the ablative singular neuter adverbially; as,

*Adj.* facilis, *easy* pri:mus, *first*  
*Adv.* facile (acc.), *easily* pri:mum (acc.), *first*  
 pri:mo: (abl.), *at first*  
*Adj.* multus, *many* plu:rimus, *most*  
*Adv.* multum (acc.), *much* plu:rimum (acc.), *most*  
 multo: (abl.), *by much*

323. Learn the following irregular comparisons:

bene, *well* melius, *better* optime:, *best* diu:, *long* (time) diu:tius, *longer* diu:tissime:, *longest* magnopere, *greatly* magis, *more* maxime:, *most* parum, *little* minus, *less* minime:, *least* prope, *nearly*, *near* propius, *nearer* proxime:, *nearest* saepe, *often* saepius, *oftener* saepissime:, *oftenest*

324. Form adverbs from the following adjectives, using the regular rules, and compare them: *laetus*\, *superbus*\, *molestus*\, *amicus*\, *acer*\, *brevis*\, *gravis*\, *recens*\.

325. RULE. Adverbs. *Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.*

### 326. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1. Nulla res melius gesta est quam proelium illud[2] ubi Marius multo minore exercitu multo maiores copias Germanorum in fugam dedit. 2. Audacter in Romanorum cohortis hostes impetus fecerunt 3. Marius autem omnes hos fortissime sustinuit. 4. Barbari nihilo fortiores erant quam Romani. 5. Primo barbari esse superiores videbantur, tum Romani acrius contenderunt. 6. Denique, ubi iam diutissime paene aequo proelio pugnatum est, barbari fugam petierunt. 7. Quaedam Germanorum gentes, simul atque



rumorem illius calamitatis audiverunt, sese in ultimis regionibus finium suorum abdiderunt. 8. Romani saepius quam hostes vicerunt, quod meliora arma habebant. 9. Inter omnis gentis Romani plurimum valebant. 10. Hae cohortes simul atque in aequiorem regionem se receperunt, castra sine ulla difficultate posuerunt.

II. 1. Some nations are easily overcome by their enemies. 2. Germany is much larger than Gaul. 3. Were not the Romans the most powerful among the tribes of Italy? 4. On account of (his) wounds the soldier dragged his body from the ditch with the greatest difficulty. 5. He was able neither to run nor to fight. 6. Who saved him? A certain horseman boldly undertook the matter. 7. The rumors concerning the soldier's death were not true.



# Page 108

[Footnote 2: *ille* standing after its noun means *that well-known, that famous*.]

## LESSON LVIII

### NUMERALS : THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

[Special Vocabulary]

*commeatus*, -u:s\, m., *provisions* *latitudo*:, -inis\, f., *width* (*latitude*) *longitudo*:, -inis\, f., *length* (*longitude*) *magnitudo*:, -inis\, f., *size, magnitude* *mercator*, *mercatoris*\, m., *trader, merchant* *munitionis*:, -onis\, f., *fortification* (*munition*) *spatium*, *spatii*:\, n., *room, space, distance; time*

*cognoscere*, *cognovimus*, *cognovimus*\, *learn*;

in the perfect tenses, *know* (*re-cognize*)

*coagere*, *coagere*, *coagere*\, *collect; compel* (*cogent*)

*defendere*, *defendere*, *defendi*:, *defensus*\, *defend*

*incendere*, *incendere*, *incendi*:, *incensus*\, *set fire to, burn*

(*incendiary*). Cf. *cremare*:\

*obtinere*, *obtinere*, *obtineui*:, *obtentus*\, *possess, occupy, hold* (*obtain*)

*pervenire*, *pervenire*, *perveni*:, *perventus*\, *come through, arrive*

327. The Latin numeral adjectives may be classified as follows:

1. *Cardinal Numerals*\, answering the question *how many?* as, *unus*\, *one*; *duo*\, *two*; etc.

2. *Ordinal Numerals*\, derived in most cases from the cardinals and answering the question *in what order?* as, *primus*\, *first*; *secundus*\, *second*; etc.

3. *Distributive Numerals*\, answering the question *how many at a time?* as, *singuli*:\, *one at a time*.

328. The Cardinal Numerals. The first twenty of the cardinals are as follows:

1, *unus* 6, *sex* 11, *undecim* 16, *sedecim* 2, *duo* 7, *septem* 12, *duodecim* 17, *septendecim* 3, *tres* 8, *octo* 13, *tredecim* 18, *duodeviginti* 4, *quattuor* 9, *novem* 14, *quattuordecim* 19, *undeviginti* 5, *quingenti* 10, *decem* 15, *quingenti* 20, *viginti*:

a. Learn also *centum* = 100, *ducenti* = 200, *milli* = 1000.



329. Declension of the Cardinals. Of the cardinals only *u:nus\*, *duo\*, *tre:s\*, the hundreds above one hundred, and *mi:lle\* used as a noun, are declinable.

a. *u:nus\* is one of the nine irregular adjectives, and is declined like *nu:llus\* (cf. Secs. 109, 470). The plural of *u:nus\* is used to agree with a plural noun of a singular meaning, as, *u:na castra\*, one camp; and with other nouns in the sense of *only*, as, *Galli u:ni\*, *\_only the Gauls\_*.

\_b.\_ Learn the declension of *duo\*, *two*; *tre:s\*, *\_three\_*; and *mi:lle\*, *a thousand*. (Sec. 479.)

## Page 109

c. The hundreds above one hundred are declined like the plural of *bonus*; as,

ducenti:, -ae, -a  
ducento:rum, -a:rum, -o:rum  
*etc. etc. etc.*

330. We have already become familiar with sentences like the following:

Omnium avium aquila est velocissima  
*Of all birds the eagle is the swiftest*  
Hoc oraculum erat omnium clarissimum  
*This oracle was the most famous of all*

In such sentences the genitive denotes the whole, and the word it modifies denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called a *partitive genitive*.

331. RULE. Partitive Genitive. *Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as the /partitive genitive\.*

a. Words denoting a part are especially pronouns, numerals, and other adjectives. But cardinal numbers excepting *mille* regularly take the ablative with *ex* or *de* instead of the partitive genitive. *b.* *Mille*, a thousand, in the singular is usually an indeclinable adjective (as, *mille milites*, a thousand soldiers), but in the plural it is a declinable noun and takes the partitive genitive (as, *decem milia militum*, ten thousand soldiers).

EXAMPLES:

Fortissimi horum sunt Germani  
*The bravest of these are the Germans*  
Decem milia hostium interfecta sunt  
*Ten thousand (lit. thousands) of the enemy were slain*  
Una ex captivis erat soror regis  
*One of the captives was the king's sister*

332. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 297.

I. 1. Caesar maximam partem aedificiorum incendit. 2. Magna pars munitionis aqua fluminis deleta est. 3. Galli huius regionis quinque milia hominum coegerant. 4. Duo ex meis fratribus eundem rumorem audiverunt. 5. Quis Romanorum erat clarior Caesare? 6. Quinque cohortes ex illa legione castra quam fortissime defendebant. 7. Hic locus aberat aequo spatio[1] ab castris Caesaris et castris Germanorum. 8. Caesar simul



atque pervenit, plus commeatus ab sociis postulavit. 9. Nonne mercatores magnitudinem insulae cognoverant? Longitudinem sed non latitudinem cognoverant. 10. Pauci hostium obtinebant collem quem exploratores nostri viderunt.

II. 1. I have two brothers, and one of them lives at Rome. 2. Caesar stormed that very town with three legions. 3. In one hour he destroyed a great part of the fortification. 4. When the enemy could no longer[2] defend the gates, they retreated to a hill which was not far distant.[3] 5. There three thousand of them bravely resisted the Romans.[4]

[Footnote 1: Ablative of the measure of difference.]



# Page 110

[Footnote 2: Not *longius*\. Why?]

[Footnote 3: Latin, *was distant by a small space.*]

[Footnote 4: Not the accusative.]

## LESSON LIX

### NUMERALS (*Continued*) : THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

[Special Vocabulary]

*agmen, agminis*\, *n.*, *\_line of march, column\_*;

*pri:mum agmen*\, *the van*;

*novissimum agmen*\, *\_the rear\_*

*atque*\, *ac*\, *conj.*, *\_and\_*; *atque*\ is used before vowels and consonants, *ac*\ *before consonants only*. Cf. *et*\ and */-que*\

*concilium, concili*\, *n.*, *\_council, assembly\_*

*Helvetii*\, *-orum*\, *m.*, *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe

*passus, passu*\, *m.*, *\_a pace\_*, five Roman feet;

*millē passuum*\, *a thousand (of) paces*, a Roman mile

*qua: de: causa*\, *\_for this reason, for what reason\_*

*vallum, -i*\, *n.*, *earth-works, rampart*

*cado*\, *cadere, cecidi*\, *ca:su:rus*\, *\_fall\_ (decadence)*

*de:do*\, *de:dere, de:didi*\, *de:ditus*\, *surrender, give up*;

with a reflexive pronoun, *surrender one's self, submit*, with the dative of the indirect object

*premo*\, *premere, pressi*\, *pressus*\, *\_press hard, harass\_*

*vexo*\, *vexa:re, vexa:vi*\, *vexa:tus*\, *annoy, ravage (vex)*

333. Learn the first twenty of the ordinal numerals (Sec. 478). The ordinals are all declined like *bonus*\.

334. The distributive numerals are declined like the plural of *bonus*\. *The first three are*

*singuli*\, *-ae, -a*, *one each, one by one*

*bi:ni*\, *-ae, -a*, *two each, two by two*

*terni*\, *-ae, -a*, *three each, three by three*

335. We have learned that, besides its use as object, the accusative is used to express space relations not covered by the ablative. We have had such expressions as *per plurimos annos*\, *\_for a great many years\_*; *per totum diem*\, *for a whole day*. Here the space relation is one of *extent of time*. We could also say *per decem pedes*\, *\_for ten*



*feet\_, where the space relation is one of \_extent of space\_. While this is correct Latin, the usual form is to use the accusative with no preposition, as,*

*Vir totum diem cucurrit, the man ran for a whole day*

*Caesar murum decem pedes movit, Caesar moved the wall ten feet*

336. RULE. Accusative of Extent. *Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.*

a. This accusative answers the questions *how long? how far?*

b. Distinguish carefully between the accusative of time *how long* and the ablative of time *when, or within which*.

Select the accusatives of time and space and the ablatives of time in the following:



## Page 111

When did the general arrive? He arrived at two o'clock. How long had he been marching? For four days. How far did he march? He marched sixty-five miles. Where has he pitched his camp? Three miles from the river, and he will remain there several days. The wall around the camp is ten feet high. When did the war begin? In the first year after the king's death.

### 337. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.

I. *Caesar in Gaul.* Caesar bellum in Gallia septem annos gessit. Primo anno Helvetios vicit, et eodem anno multae Germanorum gentes ei sese dediderunt. Multos iam annos Germani Gallos vexabant[1] et duces Germani copias suas trans Rhenum saepe traducebant.[1] Non singuli veniebant, sed multa milia hominum in Galliam contendebant. Qua de causa principes Galliae concilium convocaverunt atque statuerunt legates ad Caesarem mittere. Caesar, simul atque hunc rumorem audivit, copias suas sine mora coegit. Prima luce fortiter cum Germanis proelium commisit. Totum diem acriter pugnatum est. Caesar ipse a dextro cornu aciem duxit. Magna pars exercitus Germani cecidit. Post magnam caedem pauci multa milia passuum ad flumen fugerunt.

II. 1. Caesar pitched camp two miles from the river. 2. He fortified the camp with a ditch fifteen feet wide and a rampart nine feet high. 3. The camp of the enemy was a great way off (was distant by a great space). 4. On the next day he hastened ten miles in three hours. 5. Suddenly the enemy with all their forces made an attack upon (*in* *\_with acc.\_*) the rear. 6. *For two hours the Romans were hard pressed by the barbarians.* 7. *In three hours the barbarians were fleeing.*

[Footnote 1: Translate as if pluperfect.]

## LESSON LX

### DEPONENT VERBS

[Special Vocabulary]

*aut\, conj., \_or\_;* *aut ... aut\, either ... or*  
*causa:\, abl. of causa\, for the sake of, because of.* Always  
 stands *after* the gen. which modifies it  
*ferē:\, adv., \_nearly, almost\_*  
*opi:nio:, -o:nis\, f., opinion, supposition, expectation*  
*re:s fru:menta:ria, rei: fru:menta:riae\, f. (lit. \_the grain*  
*affair\_), \_grain supply\_*



timor, -o:ris\, m., *fear*. Cf. *timeo*:\  
undique\, adv., *from all sides*

*co:nor, co:na:ri:, co:na:tus sum\, \_attempt, try\_  
e:gredior, e:gredi:, e:gressus sum\, move out, disembark;  
\_pro:gredior\, \_move forward, advance\_ (egress, progress)  
moror, mora:ri:, mora:tus sum\, delay  
orior, oriri:, ortus sum\, \_arise, spring; begin; be born\_ (\_from\_)  
(origin)  
profici:scor, profici:sci:, profectus sum\, set out  
revertor, reverti:, reversus sum\, \_return\_ (revert). The forms of  
this verb are usually active,*





## Page 112

and not deponent, in the perfect

system. Perf. act., reverti:\

sequor, sequi:, secu:tus sum\, *\_follow\_ (sequence)*. Note the following compounds of sequor\ and the force of the different prefixes:

co:nsequor\ (*\_follow with\_*), *\_overtake\_*;

i:nsequor\ (*follow against*), *pursue*;

subsequor\ (*\_follow under\_*), *\_follow close after\_*

338. A number of verbs are passive in form but active in meaning; as, hortor\, *\_I encourage\_*; vereor\, *I fear*. Such verbs are called *deponent\* because they have laid aside (de-ponere\, *to lay aside*) the active forms.

a. Besides having all the forms of the passive, deponent verbs have also the future active infinitive and a few other active forms which will be noted later. (SecSecs. 375, 403.b.)

339. The principal parts of deponents are of course passive in form, as,

Conj. I hortor, hortari:, hortatus sum, *encourage*

Conj. II vereor, vere:ri:, veritus sum, *fear*

Conj. III (a) sequor, sequi:, secu:tus sum, *follow*

(b) patior, pati:, passus sum, *suffer, allow*

Conj. IV partior, parti:ri:, parti:tus sum, *share, divide*

Learn the synopsis of these verbs. (See Sec. 493.) Patior\ is conjugated like the passive of capio\ (Sec. 492).

### 340. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

The prepositions with the accusative that occur most frequently are

ante, *before* apud, *among* circum, *around* contra:, *against, contrary to* extra:, *outside of* in, *into, in, against, upon* inter, *between, among* intra:, *within* ob, *on account of* (quam ob rem, *wherefore, therefore*) per, *through, by means of* post, *after, behind* propter, *on account of, because of* tra:ns, *across, over*

a. Most of these you have had before. Review the old ones and learn the new ones. Review the list of prepositions governing the ablative, Sec. 209.

### 341. EXERCISES

First learn the special vocabulary, p. 298.



I. 1. Tres ex legatis, contra Caesaris opinionem, iter facere per hostium finis verebantur. 2. Quis eos hortatus est? Imperator eos hortatus est et iis persuadere conatus est, sed non potuit. 3. Quid legatos perterrituit? Aut timor hostium, qui undique premebant, aut longitudo viae eos perterrituit. 4. Tamen omnes fere Caesarem multo magis quam hostis veriti sunt. 5. Fortissimae gentes Galliae ex Germanis oriebantur. 6. Quam ob rem tam fortes erant? Quia nec vinum nec alia quae virtutem delent ad se portari patiebantur. 7. Caesar ex mercatoribus de insula Britannia quaesivit, sed nihil cognoscere potuit. 8. Itaque ipse statuit hanc terram petere, et media fere aestate cum multis navibus longis profectus est. 9. Magna celeritate iter confecit et in opportunissimo loco egressus est. 10. Barbari summis viribus eum ab insula prohibere conati sunt. 11. Ille autem barbaros multa milia passuum insecutus est; tamen sine equitatu eos consequi non potuit.



## Page 113

II. 1. Contrary to our expectation, the enemy fled and the cavalry followed close after them. 2. From all parts of the multitude the shouts arose of those who were being wounded. 3. Caesar did not allow the cavalry to pursue too far.[1] 4. The cavalry set out at the first hour and was returning[2] to camp at the fourth hour. 5. Around the Roman camp was a rampart twelve feet high. 6. Caesar will delay three days because of the grain supply. 7. Nearly all the lieutenants feared the enemy and attempted to delay the march.

[Footnote 1: Comparative of *longe*.]

[Footnote 2: Will this be a deponent or an active form?]

\* \* \* \* \*

Seventh Review, Lessons LIII-LX, Secs. 524-526

\* \* \* \* \*

[Illustration]

## PART III

### CONSTRUCTIONS

### INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The preceding part of this book has been concerned chiefly with forms and vocabulary. There remain still to be learned the forms of the Subjunctive Mood, the Participles, and the Gerund of the regular verb, and the conjugation of the commoner irregular verbs. These will be taken up in connection with the study of constructions, which will be the chief subject of our future work. The special vocabularies of the preceding lessons contain, exclusive of proper names, about six hundred words. As these are among the commonest words in the language, *they must be mastered*. They properly form the basis of the study of words, and will be reviewed and used with but few additions in the remaining lessons.

For practice in reading and to illustrate the constructions presented, a continued story has been prepared and may be begun at this point (see p. 204). It has been divided into chapters of convenient length to accompany progress through the lessons, but may be read with equal profit after the lessons are finished. The story gives an account of the life and adventures of Publius Cornelius Lentulus, a Roman boy, who fought in Caesar's campaigns and shared in his triumph. The colored plates illustrating the story are faithful representations of ancient life and are deserving of careful study.



## LESSON LXI

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

342. In addition to the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, which you have learned, Latin has a fourth mood called the subjunctive. The tenses of the subjunctive are

PRESENT }  
IMPERFECT } ACTIVE AND PASSIVE  
PERFECT }  
PLUPERFECT }

343. The tenses of the subjunctive have the same time values as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, and, in addition, *each of them may refer to future time*. No meanings of the tenses will be given in the paradigms, as the translation varies with the construction used.

# Page 114

344. The present subjunctive is inflected as follows:

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV  
ACTIVE VOICE  
SINGULAR

1. a'mem mo'neam re'gam ca'pam au'diam
2. a'me:s mo'nea:s re'ga:s ca'pia:s au'dia:s
3. a'met mo'neat re'gat ca'piat au'diat

PLURAL

1. ame:'mus monea:'mus rega:'mus capia:'mus audia:'mus
2. ame:'tis monea:'tis rega:'tis capia:'tis audia:'tis
3. a'ment mo'neant re'gant ca'pant au'diant

PASSIVE VOICE  
SINGULAR

1. a'mer mo'near re'gar ca'piar au'diar
  2. ame:'ris monea:'ris rega:'ris capia:'ris audia:'ris
  - (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re)
  3. ame:'tur monea:'tur rega:'tur capia:'tur audia:'tur
- PLURAL

1. ame:'mur monea:'mur rega:'mur capia:'mur audia:'mur
2. ame:'mini: monea:'mini: rega:'mini: capia:'mini: audia:'mini:
3. amen'tur monean'tur regan'tur capian'tur audian'tur

a. The present subjunctive is formed from the present stem.

b. The mood sign of the present subjunctive is -e:- in the first conjugation and -a:- in the others. It is shortened in the usual places (cf. Sec. 12), and takes the place of the final vowel of the stem in the first and third conjugations, but not in the second and fourth.

c. The personal endings are the same as in the indicative.

d. In a similar way inflect the present subjunctive of *curo*\, *iubeo*\, *sumo*\, *iacio*\, *munio*\.

345. The present subjunctive of the irregular verb *sum*\ is inflected as follows:

{ 1. sim                      { 1. si:mus  
SING. { 2. si:s              PLURAL { 2. si:tis

{ 3. sit                      { 3. sint

### 346. The Indicative and Subjunctive Compared.

1. The two most important of the finite moods are the indicative and the subjunctive. The indicative deals with facts either real or assumed. If, then, we wish to assert something as a fact or to inquire after a fact, we use the indicative. 2. On the other hand, if we wish to express a *desire* or *wish*, a *purpose*, a *possibility*, an *expectation*, or some such notion, we must use the subjunctive. The following sentences illustrate the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive ideas.

INDICATIVE IDEAS      SUBJUNCTIVE IDEAS



## Page 115

1. *He is brave* 1. *May he be brave*  
Fortis est Fortis sit (idea of wishing)
2. *We set out at once* 2. *Let us set out at once*  
Statim proficiscimur Statim proficiscamur  
(idea of willing)
3. *You hear him every day* 3. *You can hear him every day*  
Cotidie eum audis Cotidie eum audias  
(idea of possibility)
4. *He remained until the ship* 4. *He waited until the ship arrived should arrive*  
Mansit dum navis pervenit Exspectavit dum navis perveniret[1]  
(idea of expectation)
5. *Caesar sends men who find the bridge who are to find* 5. *Caesar sends men (or to find) the bridge*  
Caesar mittit homines qui Caesar homines mittit qui pontem reperiunt pontem reperiant  
(idea of purpose)

[Footnote 1: *perveniret*\, *imperfect subjunctive*.]

NOTE. From the sentences above we observe that the subjunctive may be used in either independent or dependent clauses; but it is far more common in the latter than in the former.

### 347. EXERCISE

Which verbs in the following paragraph would be in the indicative and which in the subjunctive in a Latin translation?

There have been times in the history of our country when you might be proud of being an American citizen. Do you remember the day when Dewey sailed into Manila Bay to capture or destroy the enemy's fleet? You might have seen the admiral standing on the bridge calmly giving his orders. He did not even wait until the mines should be removed from the harbor's mouth, but sailed in at once. Let us not despair of our country while such valor exists, and may the future add new glories to the past.

## LESSON LXII

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE

348. Observe the sentence



Caesar homines mittit qui pontem reperiant,  
*Caesar sends men to find the bridge*

The verb *reperiant* in the dependent clause is in the subjunctive because it tells us what Caesar wants the men to do; in other words, it expresses his will and the purpose in his mind. Such a use of the subjunctive is called the subjunctive of purpose.

349. RULE. Subjunctive of Purpose. *The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action in the principal clause.*

350. A clause of purpose is introduced as follows:

I. If something is wanted, by

*qui:*, the relative pronoun (as above)

*ut*, conj., in order that, that

*quo:* (abl. of *qui:*, by which), in order that, that, used when the purpose clause contains a comparative. The ablative *quo:* expresses the measure of difference. (Cf. Sec. 317.)





## Page 116

II. If something is not wanted, by

*ne:\, conj., \_in order that not, that not, lest\_*

### 351. EXAMPLES

1. Caesar copias cogit quibus hostis insequatur  
*Caesar collects troops with which to pursue the foe*
2. Pacem petunt ut domum revertantur  
*They ask for peace in order that they may return home*
3. Pontem faciunt quo facilius oppidum capiant  
*They build a bridge that they may take the town more easily*  
(lit. *by which the more easily*)
4. Fugiunt ne vulnerentur  
*They flee that they may not (or lest they) be wounded*

352. Expression of Purpose in English. In English, purpose clauses are sometimes introduced by *that* or *in order that*, but much more frequently purpose is expressed in English by the infinitive, as *We eat to live*, *She stoops to conquer*. In Latin prose, on the other hand, *purpose is never expressed by the infinitive*. *Be on your guard and do not let the English idiom betray you into this error.*

### 353. EXERCISES

I.

1. Veniunt ut { ducant, mittant, videant, audiant,  
                  { ducantur, mittantur, videantur, audiantur.
2. Fugimus ne: { capiamur, tradamur, videamus,  
                  { necemur, rapiamur, resistamus.
3. Mittit nuntios qui { dicant, audiant, veniant,  
                          { narrent, audiantur, in concilio sedeant.
4. Castra muniunt { sese defendant, impetum sustineant,  
                      quo: facilius { hostis vincant, salutem petant.

II. 1. The Helvetii send ambassadors to seek[1] peace. 2. They are setting out at daybreak in order that they may make a longer march before night. 3. They will hide the women in the forest (*acc. with in*) *that they may not be captured*. 4. *The Gauls wage many wars to free[1] their fatherland from slavery*. 5. *They will resist the Romans[2] bravely lest they be destroyed*.

[Footnote 1: Not infinitive.]



[Footnote 2: Not accusative.]

## LESSON LXIII

### INFLECTION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

354. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive.

CONJ. I CONJ. II CONJ. III CONJ. IV

ACTIVE

1. ama:’rem mone:’rem re’gerem ca’perem audi:’rem 2. ama:’re:s mone:’re:s re’gere:s  
ca’pere:s audi:’re:s 3. ama:’ret mone:’ret re’geret ca’peret audi:’ret

# Page 117

1. ama:re:'mus mone:re:'mus regere:'mus capere:'mus audi:re:'mus
2. ama:re:'tis mone:re:'tis regere:'tis capere:'tis audi:re:'tis
3. ama:'rent mone:'rent re'gerent ca'perent audi:'rent

## PASSIVE

1. ama:'rer mone:'rer re'gerer ca'perer audi:'rer
2. ama:re:'ris mone:re:'ris regere:'ris capere:'ris audi:re:'ris
- (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re) (-re)
3. ama:re:'tur mone:re:'tur regere:'tur capere:'tur audi:re:'tur

1. ama:re:'mur mone:re:'mur regere:'mur capere:'mur —re:'mur
2. ama:re:'mini mone:re:'mini regere:'mini capere:'mini —re'mini
3. ama:ren'tur mone:ren'tur regeren'tur caperen'tur —ren'tur

a. In a similar way inflect the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive, of *curo*\, *iubeo*\, *sumo*\, *iacio*\, *muni*\.

355. The imperfect subjunctive of the irregular verb *sum*\ is inflected as follows:

- |                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| { 1. es'sem        | { 1. esse:'mus        |
| SING. { 2. es'se:s | PLURAL { 2. esse:'tis |
| { 3. es'set        | { 3. es'sent          |

356. The three great distinctions of time are *present*, *past*, and *future*. All tenses referring to present or future time are called *primary tenses*\, and those referring to past time are called *secondary tenses*\. Now it is a very common law of language that in a complex sentence the tense in the dependent clause should be of the same kind as the tense in the principal clause. In the sentence *He /says\ that he /is\ coming*, the principal verb, *says*, is present, that is, is in a primary tense; and *is coming*, in the dependent clause, is naturally also primary. If I change *he says* to *he said*,—in other words, if I make the principal verb secondary in character,—I feel it natural to change the verb in the dependent clause also, and I say, *He /said\ that he /was\ coming*. This following of a tense by another of the same kind is called *tense sequence*, from *sequi*\, “to follow.”

In Latin the law of tense sequence is obeyed with considerable regularity, especially when an indicative in the principal clause is followed by a subjunctive in the dependent clause. Then a primary tense of the indicative is followed by a primary tense of the subjunctive, and a secondary tense of the indicative is followed by a secondary tense of the subjunctive. Learn the following table:

### 357. TABLE FOR SEQUENCE OF TENSES

+-----+-----+-----



PRINCIPAL VERB		DEPENDENT VERBS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE	
P	IN THE		
R	INDICATIVE	<i>Incomplete or</i>	<i>Completed Action</i>
I		<i>Continuing Action</i>	
M			
A	Present		
R	Future	Present	Perfect
T	Future perfect		
S D			
E A	Imperfect		
C R	Perfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect
O Y	Pluperfect		
N-			

### 359. EXAMPLES

Mittit }  
Mittet } homines ut agros vastent  
Misericordia }

253



Mittebat}  
Misit } homines ut agros vastarent  
Miserat }

{ *was sending* } { *that they might* }  
*He* { *sent or has sent* } *men* { *in order to* }  
{ *had sent* } { *to lay waste the fields* }

### 360. EXERCISES

#### I.

1. Venerant ut { ducerent, mitterent,  
viderent, audirent,  
                  { ducerentur,  
mitterentur, viderentur, audirentur
2. Fugiebat ne { caperetur, traderetur,  
videretur,  
{ necaretur, raperetur, resisteret.
3. Misit nuntios qui { dicerent,  
audirent, venirent  
{ narrarent, audirentur, in  
concilio sederent.
4. Castra muniverunt { sese defenderent,  
impetum sustinerent,  
quo facilius { hostis vincerent, salutem  
peterent.

II. 1. Caesar encouraged the soldiers in order  
that they might fight more bravely. 2. The Helvetii  
left their homes to wage war. 3. The scouts set  
out at once lest they should be captured by the Germans.  
4. Caesar inflicted punishment on them in order  
that the others might be more terrified. 5. He  
sent messengers to Rome to announce the victory.

# Page 119

## LESSON LXIV

### THE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

361. The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are inflected as follows:

CONJ. I	CONJ.
II	CONJ. III
CONJ. IV	
PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE	
SINGULAR	
1. ama:’verim	monu’erim re:’xerim
ce:’perim	audi:’verim
2. ama:’veris	monu’eris re:’xeris
ce:’peris	audi:’veris
3. ama:’verit	monu’erit
re:’xerit	ce:’perit audi:’verit

#### PLURAL

1. ama:ve’rimus	monue’rimus re:xe’rimus	ce:pe’rimus	audi:ve’rimus
2. ama:ve’ritis	monue’ritis re:xe’ritis	ce:pe’ritis	audi:ve’ritis
3. ama:’verint	monu’erint re:’xerint	ce:’perint	audi:’verint

#### PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE SINGULAR

1. ama:vis’sem	monuis’sem re:xis’sem	ce:pis’sem	audi:vis’sem
2. ama:vis’se:s	monuis’se:s re:xis’se:s	ce:pis’se:s	audi:vis’se:m
3. ama:vis’sent	monuis’sent re:xis’sent	ce:pis’sent	audi:vis’sent

#### PLURAL

1. ama:visse:’mus	—isse:’mus —isse:’mus	—isse:’mus	—isse:’mus
2. ama:visse:’tis	—isse:’tis —isse:’tis	—isse:’tis	—isse:’tis
3. ama:vis’sent	—is’sent —is’sent	—is’sent	—is’sent

*a.* Observe that these two tenses, like the corresponding ones in the indicative, are formed from the perfect stem.

*b.* Observe that the perfect subjunctive active is like the future



perfect indicative active,  
excepting that the first person singular  
ends in -m and not in -o:.

c. Observe that the  
pluperfect subjunctive active may be formed by  
adding /-issem, -isse:s\,  
*etc.* to the perfect stem.

d. In a similar way  
inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive  
active of *curo\*, *iubeo\*,  
*sumo\*, *iacio\*, *munio\*.

362. The passive of the perfect subjunctive  
is formed by combining the perfect passive participle  
with *sim\*, the present subjunctive of *sum\*.

CONJ. I    CONJ.  
II    CONJ. III            CONJ. IV  
PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE  
PASSIVE  
SINGULAR

1. ama:'tus    mo'nitus  
re:c'tus    cap'tus    audi:'tus  
sim

sim  
sim            sim            sim

2. ama:'tus    mo'nitus  
re:c'tus    cap'tus    audi:'tus  
si:s

si:s  
si:s            si:s            si:s

3. ama:'tus    mo'nitus  
re:c'tus    cap'tus    audi:'tus  
sit

sit  
sit            sit            sit

PLURAL

1. ama:'ti:    mo'niti:    re:c'ti:    cap'ti:    audi:'ti: si: mus  
si: mus    si: mus    si: mus    si: mus

2. ama:'ti:    mo'niti:    re:c'ti:    cap'ti:    audi:'ti: si: tis  
si: tis    si: tis    si: tis    si: tis

3. ama:'ti:    mo'niti:    re:c'ti:    cap'ti:    audi:'ti: sint  
sint    sint    sint    sint



363. The passive of the pluperfect subjunctive is formed by combining the perfect passive participle with *essem*\, *the imperfect subjunctive of sum*\.



# Page 120

CONJ. I CONJ.  
II CONJ. III CONJ. IV  
PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE  
PASSIVE

## SINGULAR

1. ama:tus monitus re:ctus  
captus audi:tus essem  
essem

essem essem essem

2. ama:tus monitus re:ctus  
captus audi:tus esse:s  
esse:s

esse:s esse:s esse:s

3. ama:tus monitus re:ctus  
captus audi:tus esset  
esset

esset esset esset

## PLURAL

1. ama:ti: moniti:  
re:cti: capti: audi:ti: esse:mus  
esse:mus

esse:mus esse:mus esse:mus

2. ama:ti: moniti:  
re:cti: capti: audi:ti: esse:tis  
esse:tis

esse:tis esse:tis esse:tis

3. ama:ti: moniti:  
re:cti: capti: audi:ti: essent  
essent

essent essent essent

a. In a similar way  
inflect the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive  
passive of *curo*\, *iubeo*\,  
*sumo*\, *iacio*\, *munio*\.

364. The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive  
of the irregular verb *sum*\ are inflected as follows: PERFECT PLUPERFECT  
fu'erim fue'rimus fuis'sem fuisse:'mus fu'eris fue'ritis fuis'se:s fuisse:'tis fu'erit fu'erint  
fuis'set fuis'sent

365. A substantive clause is a clause used  
like a noun, as,



*That the men are afraid* is clear  
enough (clause as subject)

He ordered *them to call on him*  
(clause as object)

We have already had many instances of infinitive clauses used in this way (cf. Sec. 213), and have noted the similarity between Latin and English usage in this respect. But the Latin often uses the *subjunctive* in substantive clauses, and this marks an important difference between the two languages.

366. RULE. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.

*A substantive clause of purpose with the subjunctive is used as the object of verbs of /commanding/, /urging/, /asking/, /persuading/, or /advising/, where in English we should usually have the infinitive.*

## EXAMPLES

1. *The general ordered the soldiers  
to run*

Imperator  
militibus imperavit ut currerent

2. *He urged them to resist bravely*

Hortatus  
est ut fortiter resisterent

3. *He asked them to give the children  
food*

Petivit  
ut liberis cibum darent

4. *He will persuade us not to set out*

Nobis persuadebit  
ne proficiscamur

5. *He advises us to remain at home*

Monet ut  
domi maneamus

a. The object clauses  
following these verbs all express the  
purpose or will of the principal

subject that something be done or  
not done. (Cf. Sec. 348.)



## Page 121

367. The following verbs are used with object clauses of purpose. Learn the list and the principal parts of the new ones.

hortor, *urge*  
impero, *order* (with the *dative*  
of the *person* ordered and a  
*subjunctive clause*  
of the *thing* ordered done)  
moneo, *advise*  
peto, quaero, rogo, *ask, seek*  
persuadeo, *persuade* (with the same  
construction as impero)  
postulo, *demand, require*  
suadeo, *advise* (cf. persuadeo)

N.B. Remember that *iubeo*\, *\_order\_*, takes  
the *infinitive* as in English. (Cf. Sec.  
213.1.) Compare the sentences

Iubeo eum venire, *I order him to come*  
Impero ei ut veniat, *I give orders*  
*to him that he is to come*

We ordinarily translate both of these sentences like  
the first, but the difference in meaning between *iubeo*  
and *impero* in the Latin requires the *infinitive*  
in the one case and the *subjunctive* in the other.

### 368. EXERCISES

I. 1. Petit atque hortatur ut ipse dicat. 2.  
Caesar Helvetiis imperravit ne per provinciam iter  
facerent. 3. Caesar non iussit Helvetios per  
provinciam iter facere. 4. Ille civibus persuasit  
ut de finibus suis discederent. 5. Caesar principes  
monebit ne proelium committant. 6. Postulavit  
ne cum Helvetiis aut cum eorum sociis bellum gererent.  
7. Ab iis quaesivi ne proficiscerentur. 8.  
Iis persuadere non potui ut domi manerent.

II. 1. Who ordered Caesar to make the march?  
(Write this sentence both with *impero*\ *\_and*



*with\_ iubeo\.*) 2. The faithless scouts persuaded him to set out at daybreak. 3. They will ask him not to inflict punishment. 4. He demanded that they come to the camp. 5. He advised them to tell everything (*omnia*).

NOTE. Do not forget that the English infinitive expressing purpose must be rendered by a Latin subjunctive. Review Sec. 352.

[Illustration: LEGIO ITER FACIT]

## LESSON LXV

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *POSSUM* : VERBS OF FEARING

369. Learn the subjunctive of *possum*\ (*Sec. 495*), and note especially the position of the accent.

370. Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.

We have learned that what we want done or not done is expressed in Latin by a subjunctive clause of purpose.

In this class belong also *clauses after verbs of fearing*, for we fear either that something will happen or that it will not, and we either want it to happen or we do not. If we want a thing to happen and fear that it will not, the purpose clause is introduced by *ut*\. *If we do not want it to happen and fear that it will*, *ne*:\ is used.

Owing to a difference between the English and Latin idiom we translate *ut*\ after a verb of fearing by *\_that not\_*, and *ne*:\ by *that* or *lest*.



## Page 122

### 371. EXAMPLES

timeo } { veniat  
timebo } ut {  
timuero } { venerit

*I fear, shall fear, shall have feared,  
that he will not come, has not come*

timebam } { veniret  
timui } ut {  
timueram } { venisset

*I was fearing, feared, had feared,  
that he would not come, had not come*  
The same examples with *ne:\* instead of *ut\*  
would be translated *I fear that or lest*  
*he will come, has come, etc.*

372. RULE. Subjunctive after Verbs of  
Fearing. *Verbs of fearing are followed by a substantive  
clause of purpose introduced by /ut\ (that not) or  
/ne:\ (that or lest).*

### 373. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar verebatur ut supplicium captivorum  
Gallis placeret. 2. Romani ipsi magnopere verebantur  
ne Helvetii iter per provinciam facerent. 3.  
Timebant ut satis rei frumentariae mitti posset. 4.  
Vereor ut hostium impetum sustinere possim. 5.  
Timuit ne impedimenta ab hostibus capta essent. 6.  
Caesar numquam timuit ne legiones vincerentur. 7.  
Legiones pugnare non timuerunt.[1]

II. 1. We fear that they are not coming. 2.  
We fear lest they are coming. 3. We feared that  
they had come. 4. We feared that they had not  
come. 5. They feared greatly that the camp could  
not be defended. 6. Almost all feared[1] to leave  
the camp.

[Footnote 1: Distinguish between what one is afraid *to do* (complementary infinitive as



here) and what one is afraid *will take place* or *has taken place* (substantive clause with the subjunctive).]

## LESSON LXVI

### THE PARTICIPLES

374. The Latin verb has the following Participles:[1]

[Transcriber's Note: For reasons of space, this table is given in two forms: first a reduced version without translation, and then the complete text, including translations, split into two elements.]

CONJ. I CONJ.

II CONJ. III CONJ. IV

ACTIVE

PRESENT ama:ns mone:ns rege:ns capie:ns  
audie:ns

FUTURE ama:tu:rus monitu:rus re:ctu:rus captu:rus  
audi:tu:rus

PASSIVE

PERFECT ama:tus monitus re:ctus captus audi:tus

FUTURE[2] amandus monendus regendus capiendus audiendus

CONJ. I

CONJ. II

ACTIVE

PRESENT ama:ns mone:ns  
*loving advising*

FUTURE ama:tu:rus monitu:rus  
*about to love about to advise*

PASSIVE

PERFECT ama:tus monitus  
*loved, having advised, having been advised*  
*been loved*

FUTURE[2] amandus monendus  
*to be loved to be advised*





# Page 123

CONJ. III

CONJ. IV

ACTIVE

PRESENT rege:ns capie:ns

audie:ns

*ruling taking hearing*

FUTURE re:ctu:rus captu:rus

audi:tu:rus

*about to rule about to take about to hear*

PASSIVE

PERFECT re:ctus captus audi:tus

*ruled, having taken, having heard, havinhbeen ruled been taken  
been heard*

FUTURE[2] regendus capiendus audiendus

*to be ruled to be taken to be heard*

[Footnote 1: Review Sec. 203.]

[Footnote 2: The future passive  
participle is often called the  
*gerundive*.]

a. The present active and  
future passive participles are formed  
from the present stem, and the future active and  
perfect passive  
participles are formed from the participial stem.

b. The present active participle is formed by adding -ns to the present stem. In -io:  
verbs of the third conjugation, and in the fourth conjugation, the stem is modified by the  
addition of -e:-, as *capi-e:-ns*, *audi-e:-ns*. It is declined like an adjective of one ending  
of the third declension. (Cf. Sec. 256.)

*amans, loving*

BASE amant- STEM amanti-

SINGULAR

PLURAL

MASC. AND FEM.

NEUT.

MASC. AND FEM.

NEUT.

Nom. ama:ns

ama:ns

amante:s

amantia

Gen. amantis

amantis

amantium

amantium

Dat. amanti:

amanti:

amantibus

amantibus

Acc. amantem

ama:ns

amanti:s or -e:s

amantia

Abl. amanti:

amanti:

amantibus

amantibus

or -e

or -e



(1) When used as an adjective the ablative singular ends in -i;; when used as a participle or as a substantive, in -e.

(2) In a similar way decline *monens*\\, *regens*\\, *capiens*\\, *audiens*\\.

c. The future active participle is formed by adding -u:rus to the base of the participial stem. We have already met this form combined with *esse*\\ to produce the future active infinitive. (Cf. Sec. 206.)

d. For the perfect passive participle see Sec. 201. The future passive participle or gerundive is formed by adding -ndus to the present stem.

e. All participles in -us are declined like *bonus*\\.

f. Participles agree with nouns or pronouns like adjectives.

g. Give all the participles of the following verbs: *curo*\\, *iubeo*\\, *sumo*\\, *iacio*\\, *munio*\\.

375. Participles of Deponent Verbs. Deponent verbs have the participles of the active voice as well as of the passive; consequently every deponent verb has four participles, as,



## Page 124

*Pres. Act.*

*horta:ns, urging*

*Fut. Act. horta:tu:rus,*

*about to urge*

*Perf. Pass. (in form) horta:tus,*

*having urged*

*Fut. Pass. (Gerundive) hortandus,*

*to be urged*. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is passive in form but active in meaning. *No other verbs have a perfect active participle.* On the other hand, the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning as in other verbs.

b. Give the participles

of *conor\*, *vereor\*, *sequor\*, *patior\*,

*partior\*.

376. Tenses of the Participle. The tenses express time as follows:

1. The present active participle corresponds to the English present active participle in *\_-ing\_*, but can be used only of an action occurring at the same time as the action of the main verb; as, *milites insequentes ceperunt multos\*, *\_the soldiers, while pursuing, captured many\_*. Here the *pursuing* and the *capturing* are going on together. 2. The perfect participle (excepting of deponents) is regularly passive and corresponds to the English past participle with or without the auxiliary *\_having been\_*; as, *auditus\*, *heard* or *having been heard*.

3. The future active participle, translated *about to*, *etc.*, denotes time after the action of the main verb.

377. Review Secs. 203, 204, and, note the following model sentences:

1. *Milites currentes erant defessi\*,  
*\_the soldiers who were running\_*  
(lit. *\_running\_*) *\_were weary\_*.

2. *Caesar profecturus Romam non exspectavit\*,  
*\_Caesar, when about to*  
*set out\_* (lit. *\_about to set out\_*) *\_for*  
*Rome, did not wait\_*.

3. *Oppidum captum vidimus\*, *\_we saw*  
*the town which had been captured\_*  
(lit. *\_captured town\_*).

4. *Imperator triduum moratus profectus*



*est*\, *\_the general, since\_  
(\_when\_, or \_after\_) \_he had delayed\_  
(lit. \_the general, having  
delayed\_) \_three days, set out\_.*  
*5. Milites victi terga non verterunt*\,  
*\_the soldiers, though they  
were conquered\_ (lit. \_the soldiers conquered\_),  
\_did not retreat\_.*

In each of these sentences the literal translation of the participle is given in parentheses. We note, however, that its proper translation usually requires a clause beginning with some conjunction (*when, since, after, though, etc.*), or a relative clause. Consider, in each case, what translation will best bring out the thought, and do not, as a rule, translate the participle literally.

### 378. EXERCISES

I. 1. Puer timens ne capiatu fugit. 2. Aquila ira commota avis reliquas interficere conata erat. 3. Milites ab hostibus pressi tela iacere non potuerunt. 4. Caesar decimam legionem laudaturus ad primum agmen progressus est. 5. Imperator hortatus equites ut fortiter pugnarent signum proelio dedit. 6. Milites hostis octo milia passuum insecuti multis cum captivis ad castra reverterunt. 7. Sol oriens multos interfectos vidit. 8. Romani consilium audax suspicati barbaris sese non commiserunt. 9. Navis e portu egressa nullo in periculo erat.



## Page 125

II.[3] 1. The army was in very great danger while marching through the enemy's country. 2. Frightened by the length of the way, they longed for home. 3. When the scouts were about to set out, they heard the shouts of victory. 4. When we had delayed many days, we set fire to the buildings and departed. 5. While living at Rome I heard orators much better than these. 6. The soldiers who are fighting across the river are no braver than we.

[Footnote 3: In this exercise use participles for the subordinate clauses.]

## LESSON LXVII

THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLO:*, *NO:LO:*, *MALO:*  
THE ABLATIVE WITH A PARTICIPLE, OR ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

379. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of *volo:*\, *\_wish\_*; *no:lo:*\ (*ne + volo:*), *be unwilling*; *malo:*\ (*magis + volo:*), *\_be more willing, prefer\_* (Sec. 497). Note the irregularities in the present indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, and in the imperfect subjunctive. (Cf. Sec. 354.) a. These verbs are usually followed by the infinitive with or without a subject accusative; as, *volunt venire*\, *\_they wish to come\_*; *volunt amico:s venire*\, *they wish their friends to come*. The English usage is the same.[1]

[Footnote 1: Sometimes the subjunctive of purpose is used after these verbs. (See Sec. 366.)]

[Conjugations given in Sec. 497:

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *volo:*, *velle*, *volui:*, —, *be willing, will, wish* *no:lo:*, *no:lle*, *no:lui:*, —, *be unwilling, will not* *ma:lo:*, *ma:lle*, *ma:lui:*, —, *be more willing, prefer*

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR



*Pres.* volo:                   no:lo:                   ma:lo:  
vi:s                   no:n vis                   ma:vi:s  
vult                   no:n vult                   ma:vult  
PLURAL volumus no:lumus ma:lumus vultis no:n vultis ma:vul'tis volunt no:lunt  
ma:lunt*Impf.* vole:bam                   no:le:bam                   ma:le:bam  
*Fut.* volam,                   no:lam,                   ma:lam, ma:le:s, *etc.*  
vole:s, *etc.*                   no:le:s, *etc.*  
*Perf.* volui:                   no:lui:                   ma:lui:  
*Plup.* volueram                   no:lueram                   ma:lueram  
*F. P.* voluero:                   no:luero:                   ma:luero:

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## SINGULAR

*Pres.* velim                   no:lim                   ma:lim  
veli:s                   no:li:s                   ma:li:s  
velit                   no:lit                   ma:lit  
PLURAL veli:'mus no:li:'mus ma:li:'mus veli:'tis no:li:'tis ma:li:'tis velint no:lint  
ma:lint*Impf.* vellem                   no:llem                   ma:llem  
*Perf.* voluerim                   no:luerim                   ma:luerim  
*Plup.* voluissem                   no:luissem                   ma:luissem

## IMPERATIVE

*Pres.* no:li:  
no:li:te  
*Fut.* no:li:to:, *etc.*



## Page 126

### INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i> velle	no:lle	ma:lle
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse	no:luisse	ma:luisse

### PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i> vole:ns, -entis	no:le:ns, -entis
—]	

380. Observe the following sentences:

1. Magistro laudante omnes pueri diligenter laborant, *with the teacher praising, or since the teacher praises, or the teacher praising, all the boys labor diligently.*

2. Caesare ducente nemo progredi timet, *with Caesar leading, or when Caesar leads, or if Caesar leads, or Caesar leading, no one fears to advance.*

3. His rebus cognitis milites fugerunt, *when this was known, or since this was known, or these things having been learned, the soldiers fled.*

4. Proelio commisso multi vulnerati sunt, *after the battle had begun, or when the battle had begun, or the battle having been*

*joined, many were wounded.* a. One of the fundamental ablative relations is expressed in English by the preposition *with* (cf. Sec. 50). In each of the sentences above we have a noun and a participle in agreement in the ablative, and the translation shows that in each instance the ablative expresses *attendant circumstance*. For example, in the first sentence the circumstance attending or accompanying the diligent labor of the boys is the praise of the teacher. This is clearly a *with* relation, and the ablative is the case to use. b. We observe, further, that the ablative and its participle are absolutely independent grammatically of the rest of the sentence. If we were to express the thought in English in a similar way, we should use the nominative independent or absolute. In Latin the construction is called the Ablative Absolute, or the Ablative with a Participle. This form of expression is exceedingly common in Latin, but rather rare in English, so we must not, as a rule, employ the English absolute construction to translate the ablative absolute. The attendant circumstance may be one of *time* (when or after), or



one of *cause* (since), or one of *concession* (though), or one of *condition* (if). In each case try to discover the precise relation, and translate the ablative and its participle by a clause which will best express the thought.

381. RULE. Ablative Absolute. *The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance.*

NOTE 1. The verb *sum* has no present participle.

*In consequence we often find two nouns or a noun and an adjective in the ablative absolute with no participle expressed; as, te duce\, you (being) leader, with you as leader; patre infirmo\, \_my father\_ (being) \_weak\_.*





## Page 127

NOTE 2. Be very careful not to put in the ablative absolute a noun and participle that form the subject or object of a sentence. Compare

*a. The Gauls, having been conquered by Caesar, returned home*

*b. The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar, the army returned home*

In *a* the subject is *The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar*, and we translate,

Galli a Caesare victi domum reverterunt

In *b* the subject is *the army*. *The Gauls having been conquered by Caesar* is nominative absolute in English, which requires the ablative absolute in Latin, and we translate,

Gallis a Caesare victis exercitus domum revertit

NOTE 3. The fact that only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle (cf. Sec. 375.a) often compels a change of voice when translating from one language to the other. For example, we can translate *Caesar having encouraged the legions* just as it stands, because *hortor* is a deponent verb. But if we wish to say *Caesar having conquered the Gauls*, we have to change the voice of the participle to the passive because *vinco* is not deponent, and say, *the Gauls having been conquered by Caesar* (see translation above).

### 382. EXERCISES

- I. 1. Mavis, non vis, vultis, nolumus. 2. Ut nolit, ut vellemus, ut malit. 3. Noli, velle, noluisse, malle. 4. Vult, mavultis, ut nollet, nolite. 5. Sole oriente, aves cantare inceperunt. 6. Clamoribus auditis, barbari progredi recusabant.



7. Caesare legiones hortato, milites paulo fortius pugnauerunt. 8. His rebus cognitis, Helvetii finitimis persuaserunt ut secum iter facerent. 9. Laboribus confectis, milites a Caesare quaerebant ut sibi praemia daret. 10. Concilio convocato, principes ita responderunt. 11. Dux pluris dies in Helvetiorum finibus morans multos vicos incendit. 12. Magnitudine Germanorum cognita, quidam ex Romanis timebant. 13. Mercatoribus rogatis, Caesar nihilo plus reperire potuit.

II. 1. He was unwilling, lest they prefer, they have wished. 2. You prefer, that they might be unwilling, they wish. 3. We wish, they had preferred, that he may prefer. 4. Caesar, when he heard the rumor (*the rumor having been heard*), commanded (imperare) the legions to advance more quickly. 5. Since Caesar was leader, the men were willing to make the journey. 6. A few, terrified[2] by the reports which they had heard, preferred to remain at home. 7. After these had been left behind, the rest hastened as quickly as possible. 8. After Caesar had undertaken the business (*Caesar, the business having been undertaken*), he was unwilling to delay longer.[3]

[Footnote 2: Would the ablative absolute be correct here?]

[Footnote 3: Not *longius*\. Why?]

## LESSON LXVIII

### THE IRREGULAR VERB *FIO*: : THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT



## Page 128

383. The verb *fi:o:\*, *\_be made, happen\_*, serves as the passive of *facio:\*, *make*, in the present system. The rest of the verb is formed regularly from *facio:\*. Learn the principal parts and conjugation (Sec. 500). Observe that the *i* is long except before *-er* and in *fit*.

a. The compounds of *facio* with prepositions usually form the passive regularly, as,  
 Active *conficio, conficere, confeci, confectus*  
 Passive *conficior, confici, confectus*  
*sum*

[ Conjugation given in Sec. 500:

PRINCIPAL PARTS *fi:o:*, *fieri:*,  
*factus sum*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE
------------	--	-------------	--	------------

<i>Pres. fi:o:</i>	—	<i>fi:am</i>	<i>2d Pers. fi:</i>	<i>fi:te</i>
--------------------	---	--------------	---------------------	--------------

<i>fi:s</i>	—			
-------------	---	--	--	--

<i>fit</i>	<i>fi:unt</i>			
------------	---------------	--	--	--

<i>Impf. fi:e:bam</i>	<i>fierem</i>			
-----------------------	---------------	--	--	--

<i>Fut. fi:am</i>	—			
-------------------	---	--	--	--

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE *Perf. factus, -a, -um sum factus, -a, -um sim Plup. factus, -a, -um eram factus, -a, -um essem F. P. factus, -a, -um ero:* INFINITIVE PARTICIPLES

*Pres. fieri: Perf. factus, -a, -um Perf. factus, -a, -um esse Ger. faciendus, -a, -um Fut.*

[[*factum i:ri:*]]

384. Observe the following sentences:

1. *Terror erat tantus ut omnes fugerent,*  
*the terror was so great*  
*that all fled.*

2. *Terror erat tantus ut non facile*  
*milites sese reciperent, the*  
*terror was so great that the soldiers*  
*did not easily recover*  
*themselves.*

3. *Terror fecit ut omnes fugerent,*  
*terror caused all to flee*  
*(lit. made that all fled).*



a. Each of these sentences  
is complex, containing a principal  
clause and a subordinate clause.

b. The principal clause  
names a cause and the subordinate clause  
states the *consequence*  
or *result* of this cause.

c. The subordinate clause has its verb in the subjunctive, though it is translated like an  
indicative. The construction is called the *subjunctive of consequence or result*, and the  
clause is called a consecutive or result clause.

d. In the last example  
the clause of result is the object of the  
verb *fecit*.

e. The conjunction  
introducing the consecutive or result clause is  
*ut* = *\_so that\_*; *negative*,  
*ut no:n* = *so that not*.

385. RULE. Subjunctive of Result. *Consecutive  
clauses of result are introduced by /ut\ or /ut no:n\  
and have the verb in the subjunctive.*

386. RULE. *Object clauses of result with  
/ut\ or /ut no:n\ are found after verbs of /effecting\  
or /bringing about\.*



## Page 129

### 387. Purpose and Result Clauses Compared.

There is great similarity in the expression of purpose and of result in Latin. If the sentence is affirmative, both purpose and result clauses may be introduced by *ut*\; *but if the sentence is negative, the purpose clause has ne*\ and the result clause *ut no:n*\.

*Result clauses are often preceded in the main clause by such words as tam*\, *ita*\, *sic*\ (*so*), and these serve to point them out. Compare

a. Tam graviter vulneratus

est ut caperetur

*He was so severely*

*wounded that he was captured*

b. Graviter vulneratus

est ut caperetur

*He was severely*

*wounded in order that he might be captured*

Which sentence contains a result clause, and how is it pointed out?

### 388. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fit, fiet, ut fiat, fiebamus. 2. Fio, fies, ut fierent, fieri, fiunt. 3. Fietis, ut fiamus, fis, fiemus. 4. Milites erant tam tardi ut ante noctem in castra non pervenirent. 5. Sol facit ut omnia sint pulchra. 6. Eius modi pericula erant ut nemo proficisci vellet. 7. Equites hostium cum equitatu nostro in itinere contenderunt, ita tamen[1] ut nostri omnibus in partibus superiores essent. 8. Virtus militum nostrorum fecit ut hostes ne unum quidem[2] impetum sustinerent. 9. Homines erant tam audaces ut nullo modo contineri possent. 10. Spatium erat tam parvum ut milites tela iacere non facile possent. 11. Hoc proelio facto barbari ita perterriti sunt ut ab ultimis gentibus legati ad Caesarem mitterentur. 12. Hoc proelium factum est ne legati ad Caesarem mitterentur.

[Footnote 1: *ita tamen*\,



*\_with such a result however\_.]*

[Footnote 2: *ne*:

*... quidem\, \_not even\_. The emphatic word is placed between.]*

II. 1. It will happen, they were being made, that it may happen. 2. It happens, he will be made, to happen. 3. They are made, we were being made, lest it happen. 4. The soldiers are so brave that they conquer. 5. The soldiers are brave in order that they may conquer. 6. The fortification was made so strong that it could not be taken. 7. The fortification was made strong in order that it might not be taken. 8. After the town was taken,[3] the townsmen feared that they would be made slaves. 9. What state is so weak that it is unwilling to defend itself?

[Footnote 3: Ablative absolute.]

## LESSON LXIX

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC OR DESCRIPTION THE PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE

389. Akin to the subjunctive of consequence or result is the use of the subjunctive in clauses of characteristic or description.

This construction is illustrated in the following sentences:

1. Quis est qui suam domum non amet?  
*who is there who does not love  
his own home?*
2. Erant qui hoc facere nollent,  
*there were (some) who were  
unwilling to do this.*

## Page 130

3. Tu non is es qui amicos tradas,  
*you are not such a one as to,*  
*or you are not the man to, betray your*  
*friends.*

4. Nihil video quod timeam, *I*  
*see nothing to fear* (nothing of such  
as character as to fear it).

a. Each of these examples contains a descriptive relative clause which tells what kind of a person or thing the antecedent is. To express this thought the subjunctive is used. A relative clause that merely states a fact and does not describe the antecedent uses the indicative. Compare the sentences

*Caesar is the*  
*man who is leading us,*

Caesar  
est is qui nos ducit  
(mere  
statement of fact, no description, with the indicative)

*Caesar is the*  
*man to lead us,*

Caesar  
est is qui nos ducat  
(descriptive  
relative clause with the subjunctive)

b. Observe that in  
this construction a demonstrative pronoun and a  
relative, as is *qui*, *are*  
*translated \_such a one as to, the man*  
*to\_.*

c. In which of the  
following sentences would you use the  
indicative and in which the  
subjunctive?

*These*  
*are not the men who did this*

*These*  
*are not the men to do this*

390. RULE. Subjunctive of Characteristic.  
*A relative clause with the subjunctive is often*  
*used to describe an antecedent. This is called*



*the /subjunctive of characteristic or description\.*

391. Observe the sentences

1. Romani Caesarem consulem\ fecerunt,  
     \_the Romans  
 made Caesar consul\.

2. Caesar consul\ a Romanis factus  
 est,  
     \_Caesar\

was made consul\ by the Romans\_. a. Observe in 1 that the transitive verb *fecerunt*\, \_made\_, has two objects: (1) the direct object, *Caesarem*\; (2) a second object, *consulem*\, referring to the same person as the direct object and completing the predicate. The second accusative is called a Predicate Accusative. \_b.\_ Observe in 2 that when the verb is changed to the passive both of the accusatives become nominatives, the \_direct object\_ becoming the \_subject\_ and the \_predicate accusative\_ the \_predicate nominative\_.

\_392.\_ RULE. Two Accusatives. \_Verbs of making\, choosing\, calling\, showing\, and the like, may take a predicate accusative along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives.\_

393. The verbs commonly found with two accusatives are

creo, creare, creavi, creatus, choose appello, appellare, appellavi, appellatus } nomino, nominare, nominavi, nominatus } call voco, vocare, vocavi, vocatus } facio, facere, feci, factus, make

394. EXERCISES



## Page 131

I. 1. In Germaniae silvis sunt[1] multa genera ferarum quae reliquis in locis non visa sint. 2. Erant[1] itinera duo quibus Helvetii domo discedere possent. 3. Erat[1] manus nulla, nullum oppidum, nullum praesidium quod se armis defenderet. 4. Toto frumento raptο, domi nihil erat quo mortem prohibere possent. 5. Romani Galbam ducem creaverunt et summa celeritate profecti sunt. 6. Neque erat[1] tantae multitudinis quisquam qui morari vellet. 7. Germani non ii sunt qui adventum Caesaris vereantur. 8. Consulibus occisis erant qui[2] vellent cum regem creare. 9. Pace facta erat nemo qui arma tradere nollet. 10. Inter Helvetios quis erat qui nobilior illo esset?

II. 1. The Romans called the city Rome. 2. The city was called Rome by the Romans. 3. The better citizens wished to choose him king. 4. The brave soldier was not the man to run. 5. There was no one [3]to call me friend. 6. These are not the men to[4] betray their friends. 7. There were (some) who called him the bravest of all.

[Footnote 1: Remember that when the verb *sum* precedes its subject it is translated *\_there is\_*, *\_there are\_*, *\_there were\_*, etc.]

[Footnote 2: *erant* *qui*, *\_there were\_* (some) *\_who\_*. A wholly indefinite antecedent of *qui* does not need to be expressed.]

[Footnote 3: A relative clause of characteristic or description.]

[Footnote 4: See Sec. 389.b.]

\* \* \* \*  
\*



Eighth Review, Lessons LXI-LXIX, Secs.  
527-528

\* \* \* \*  
\*

## LESSON LXX

### THE CONSTRUCTIONS WITH THE CONJUNCTION *CUM* THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

395. The conjunction *cum* has the following meanings and constructions:

*cum* TEMPORAL = *when*, followed by the indicative or the subjunctive

*cum* CAUSAL = *since*, followed by the subjunctive

*cum* CONCESSIVE = *although*, followed by the subjunctive

As you observe, the mood after *cum* is sometimes indicative and sometimes subjunctive. The reason for this will be made clear by a study of the following sentences:

1. *Caesarem vidi tum cum in Gallia eram,*  
*I saw*  
*Caesar at the time when I was in Gaul.*

2. *Caesar in eos impetum fecit cum pacem peterent,*  
*Caesar*  
*made an attack upon them when they were seeking peace.*

3. *Hoc erat difficile cum pauci sine vulneribus essent,*  
*this*  
*was difficult, since only a few were without wounds.*

4. *Cum primi ordines fugissent, tamen reliqui fortiter consistebant,*  
*though*

*the front ranks had fled, yet the rest bravely stood  
their ground.*



## Page 132

a. The underlying principle is one already familiar to you (cf. Sec. 389.a). When the *cum*\ clause states a fact and simply *\_fixes the time\_* at which the main action took place, the indicative mood is used. So, in the first example, *cum* in *Gallia eram*\ fixes the time when I saw Caesar. b. On the other hand, when the *cum*\ clause *\_describes the circumstances\_* under which the main act took place, the subjunctive mood is used. So, in the second example, the principal clause states that Caesar made an attack, and the *cum*\ clause describes the circumstances under which this act occurred. The idea of *time* is also present, but it is subordinate to the idea of *description*. Sometimes the descriptive clause is one of *cause* and we translate *cum*\ by *\_since\_*; sometimes it denotes *\_concession\_* and *cum*\ is translated *although*.

396. RULE. Constructions with *Cum*.

*The conjunction /cum\ means /when\, /since\, or /although\. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means /when\ and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place.*

NOTE. *Cum\ in clauses of description with the subjunctive is much more common than its use with the indicative.*

397. Note the following sentences:

1. Oppidum erat parvum magnitudine  
sed magnum multitudine hominum,  
*the town was small in size*  
*but great in population.*

2. Homo erat corpore infirmus sed  
validus animo,  
*the man*  
*was weak in body but strong in courage.*

a. Observe that *magnitudinē\, multitudinē\, corpore\, and animo\* tell in what respect something is true. The relation is one covered by the ablative case, and the construction is called the *ablative of specification*.

398. RULE. Ablative of Specification.

*The ablative is used to denote /in what respect\ something is true.*

399. IDIOMS

*aliquem certiore facere, to inform*  
*some one (lit. to make some*  
*one more certain)*

*certior fieri, to be informed (lit.*  
*to be made more certain)*

*iter dare, to give a right of way,*  
*allow to pass*



obsides inter se dare, *to give hostages  
to each other*

400. EXERCISES

I. 1. Helvetii cum patrum nostrorum tempore domo  
perfecti essent, consulis exercitum in fugam dederant.  
2. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, Helvetii alios  
agros petebant. 3. Caesar cum in citeriore Gallia  
esset, tamen de Helvetiorum consiliis certior fiebat.  
4. Cum Helvetii bello clarissimi essent, Caesar  
iter per provinciam dare recusavit. 5. Legatus  
cum haec audivisset, Caesarem certiores fecit. 6.  
Cum principes inter se obsides darent, Romani bellum  
paraverunt. 7. Caesar, cum id nuntiatum esset,  
maturat ab urbe proficisci. 8. Ne virtute quidem  
Galli erant pares Germanis. 9. Caesar neque corpore  
neque animo infirmus erat. 10. Illud bellum tum  
incepit cum Caesar fuit consul.

## Page 133

Observe in each case what mood follows *cum*\, and try to give the reasons for its use. In the third sentence the *cum*\ clause is concessive, in the fourth and sixth causal.

II. 1. That battle was fought at the time when (tum cum) I was at Rome. 2. Though the horsemen were few in number, nevertheless they did not retreat. 3. When the camp had been sufficiently fortified, the enemy returned home. 4. Since the tribes are giving hostages to each other, we shall inform Caesar. 5. The Gauls and the Germans are very unlike in language and laws.

## LESSON LXXI

### VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE : THE PREDICATE GENITIVE

401. Review the word lists in Secs. 510, 511.

402. The Gerund. Suppose we had to translate the sentence

*By overcoming the Gauls Caesar won great glory*

We can see that *overcoming* here is a verbal noun corresponding to the English infinitive in *-ing*\_, and that the thought calls for the ablative of means. To translate this by the Latin infinitive would be impossible, because the infinitive is indeclinable and therefore has no ablative case form. Latin, however, has another verbal noun of corresponding meaning, called the *gerund*\, *declined as a neuter of the second declension in the \_genitive\_, \_dative\_, \_accusative\_, and \_ablative singular\_, and thus supplying the cases that the infinitive lacks.[1] Hence, to decline in Latin the verbal noun *\_overcoming\_*, we should use the infinitive for the nominative and the*



*gerund for the other cases, as follows:*

Nom.	supera:re, <i>overcoming, to overcome</i>	INFINITIVE
Gen.	superandi:, <i>of overcoming</i>	}
Dat.	superando:, <i>for overcoming</i>	}
Acc.	superandum, <i>overcoming</i>	} GERUND
Abl.	superando:, <i>by overcoming</i>	}

Like the infinitive, the gerund governs the same case as the verb from which it is derived. So the sentence given above becomes in Latin

Superando Gallos Caesar magnam gloriam  
reportavit

[Footnote 1: Sometimes, however, the infinitive is used as an accusative.]

403. The gerund[2] is formed by adding /-ndi:, -ndo, -ndum, -ndo\, to the present stem, which is shortened or otherwise changed, as shown below:

## PARADIGM OF THE GERUND

CONJ. I	CONJ. II	CONJ. III	CONJ. IV	
Gen. amandi:	monendi:	regendi:	capiendi:	audiendi:
Dat. amando:	monendo:	regendo:	capiendo:	audiendo:
Acc. amandum	monendum	regendum	capiendum	audiendum
Abl. amando:	monendo:	regendo:	capiendo:	audiendo:

- a.* Give the gerund  
of *curo\*, *deleo\*, *sumo\*, *iacio\*, *venio\*.  
*b.* Deponent verbs have  
the gerund of the active voice (see Sec.  
493). Give the gerund  
of *conor\*, *vereor\*, *sequor\*, *patior\*,  
*partior\*.



## Page 134

[Footnote 2: The gerund is the neuter singular of the future passive participle used as a noun, and has the same formation. (Cf. Sec. 374.d.)]

404. The Gerundive. The gerundive is the name given to the future passive participle (Sec. 374.d) when the participle approaches the meaning of a verbal noun and is translated like a gerund. It is the adjective corresponding to the gerund. For example, to translate *the plan of waging war*, we may use the gerund with its direct object and say *consilium gerendi bellum*; or we may use the gerundive and say *consilium belli gerendi*, which means, literally, *the plan of the war to be waged*, but which came to have the same force as the gerund with its object, and was even preferred to it.

405. Compare the following parallel uses of the gerund and gerundive:

### GERUND

#### GERUNDIVE

Gen. Spes faciendi pacem	Spes faciendae pacis
Dat. Locus idoneus pugnando	Locus idoneus castris ponendis
<i>A place suitable for fighting_</i>	<i>A place suitable for pitching camp_</i>
Acc. Misit equites ad insequendum	Misit equites ad insequendos hostis
<i>He sent horsemen to pursue the enemy</i>	<i>He sent horsemen to pursue the enemy</i>
Abl. Narrando fabulas magister	Narrandis fabulis magister
pueris placuit	pueris





placuit

*The teacher pleased the*      The  
teacher pleased the  
boys by telling stories\_      boys  
by telling stories\_

a. We observe

(1) That the gerund is a noun and the gerundive an adjective. (2) That the gerund, being a noun, may stand alone or with an object. (3) That the gerundive, being an adjective, is used only in agreement with a noun.

406. RULE. Gerund and Gerundive.

1. *The Gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.*

*The constructions of these*

*cases are in general the same as those*

*of other nouns.* 2. *The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual.*

407. RULE. Gerund or Gerundive of Purpose.

*The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with ad\, \_or the genitive with causa\[3] (= for the sake of), is used to express purpose.\_*

## GERUND

## GERUNDIVE

Ad audiendum venerunt or Ad urbem videndam venerunt or

Audiendi causa venerunt Urbis videndae causa venerunt

*They came to hear      They came to see the city*

[Footnote 3: *causa\*  
*always \_follows\_ the genitive.]*

NOTE. These sentences might, of course, be written

with the subjunctive of purpose,—*venerunt*

*ut audirent\; venerunt ut urbem viderent\.*

In short expressions, however, the gerund and gerundive of purpose are rather more common.



## Page 135

408. We have learned that the word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the genitive, as, *equus Galbae*\, *\_Galba's horse.\_* If, now, we wish to express the idea *\_the horse is Galba's\_, Galba remains the possessor, and hence in the genitive as before, but now stands in the predicate, as, equus est Galbae*\. Hence this is called the predicate genitive.

409. RULE. Predicate Genitive. *The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of /sum\, and is then called the predicate genitive.*

### 410. IDIOMS

*alicui negotium dare, to employ someone*  
(lit. *to give business to some one*)

*novis rebus studere, to be eager for a revolution*

(lit. *to be eager for new things*)

*rei militaris peritissimus, very skillful in the art of war*

*se suaque omnia, themselves and all their possessions*

### 411. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar cum in Gallia bellum gereret, militibus decimae legionis maxime favit quia rei militaris peritissimi erant. 2. Sociis negotium dedit rei frumentariae curandae. 3. Legati non solum audiendi causa sed etiam dicendi causa venerunt. 4. Imperator iussit exploratores locum idoneum munido reperire. 5. Nuper hae gentes novis rebus studebant; mox iis persuadebo ut Caesari se suaque omnia dedant. 6. Iubere est reginae[4] et parere est multitudinis.[4] 7. Hoc proelio facto quidam ex hostibus ad pacem petendam venerunt. 8. Erant qui arma tradere nollent. 9. Hostes tam celeriter progressi sunt ut spatium pila in hostis iaciendi non daretur. 10. Spatium



neque arma capiendi[5] neque auxili petendi[5] datum est.

II. 1. These ornaments [6]belong to Cornelia.  
2. Men very skillful in the art of war were sent [7]to capture the town. 3. The scouts found a hill suitable for fortifying very near to the river.  
4. Soon the cavalry will come [8]to seek supplies.  
5. The mind of the Gauls is eager for revolution and for undertaking wars. 6. To lead the line of battle [9]belongs to the general. 7. [10]Whom shall we employ to look after the grain supply?

[Footnote 4: Predicate genitive.]

[Footnote 5: Which of these expressions is gerund and which gerundive?]

[Footnote 6: *belong to = are of.*]

[Footnote 7: Use the gerundive with *ad*\.]

[Footnote 8: Use the genitive with *causa*\. *Where should causa*\ stand?]

[Footnote 9: Compare the first sentence.]

[Footnote 10: Compare the second sentence in the Latin above.]

## LESSON LXXII

### THE IRREGULAR VERB *EO*: : INDIRECT STATEMENTS

412. Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of *eo*:\, *\_go\_* (Sec. 499).

a. Notice that i:-, the root of *eo*:\, is changed to *e-* before a vowel, excepting in *iens*\,

the nominative of the present  
participle. In the perfect  
system -v- is regularly dropped.



# Page 136

[ Conjugation given in Sec. 499:

PRINCIPAL PARTS eo:, i:re, ii: (i:vi:), itum (n. perf. part.)

PRES. STEM i:-

PERF. STEM i:- or i:v-

PART. STEM it-

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

IMPERATIVE

SING. PLUR.

Pres. eo: i:mus eam

2d Pers. i: i:te

i:s i:tis

it eunt

Impf. i:bam i:rem

Fut. i:bo: —

2d Pers.\_ i:to: i:to:te

3d

Pers. i:to: eunto:

Perf. ii: (i:vi:) ierim (i:verim)

Plup. ieram (i:veram) i:ssem (i:vissem)

F. P. iero: (i:vero:)

INFINITIVE

Pres. i:re

Perf. i:sse (i:visse)

Fut. itu:rus, -a, -um esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres. ie:ns, gen. euntis (Sec. 472)

Fut. itu:rus, -a, -um

Ger. eundum

GERUND

Gen. eundi:

Dat. eundo:

Acc. eundum

Abl. eundo:

SUPINE

Acc. [[itum]]

Abl. [[itu:]] ]

413. Learn the meaning and principal parts



of the following compounds of *eo:* \ *with prepositions:*

ad'eo:, adi:'re, ad'ii:,  
 ad'itus, *go to, visit*, with the accusative  
 ex'eo:, exi:'re, ex'ii:,  
 ex'itus, *go forth*, with *ex* \ *or de* \  
 and the ablative of the place  
 from which  
 in'eo:, ini:'re, in'ii:,  
 in'itus, *begin, enter upon*,  
 with the accusative  
 red'eo:, redi:'re, red'ii:,  
 red'itus, *return*, with *ad* \ *or in* \  
 and  
 the accusative of the place  
 to which  
 tra:ns'eo:, tra:nsi:'re, tra:ns'ii:,  
 tra:ns'itus, *cross*,  
 with the accusative

414. Indirect Statements in English. Direct statements are those which the speaker or writer makes himself or which are quoted in his exact language. Indirect statements are those reported in a different form of words from that used by the speaker or writer. Compare the following direct and indirect statements:

{ 1. The  
 Gauls are brave  
 Direct statements { 2. The Gauls were brave  
 { 3. The Gauls will be  
 brave

Indirect statements { 1. *He says*  
 that the Gauls *are* brave  
 after a verb in { 2. *He says* that the  
 Gauls *were* brave  
 the present tense { 3. *He says* that the  
 Gauls *will be* brave

Indirect statements { 1. *He said* that the Gauls *were* brave  
 after a verb in { 2. *He said* that the Gauls *had been* brave  
 a past tense { 3. *He said* that the Gauls *would be* brave

We see that in English

a. The indirect statement

forms a clause introduced by the conjunction *that*.

*b.* The verb is finite (cf. Sec. 173) and its subject is in the nominative.

*c.* The tenses of the verbs originally used are changed after the past tense, *He said*.

## Page 137

415. Indirect Statements in Latin. In Latin the direct and indirect statements above would be as follows:

DIRECT { 1. Galli sunt fortes  
STATEMENTS { 2. Galli erant fortes  
{ 3. Galli erunt fortes  
  
{ 1. *Dicit\ or Dixit*  
Gallos esse fortis\  
{ (*He says or He said*  
{ (*the Gauls to be brave*)[1]  
INDIRECT { 2. *Dicit\ or Dixit* Gallos fuisse  
fortis\  
STATEMENTS { (*He says or He said*  
{ (*the Gauls to have been brave*)[1]  
{ 3. *Dicit\ or Dixit* Gallos futuros  
esse fortis\  
{ (*He says or He said*  
{ (*the Gauls to be about to be*  
*brave*)[1]

[Footnote 1: These parenthetical renderings are not inserted as translations, but merely to show the literal meaning of the Latin.]

Comparing these Latin indirect statements with the English in the preceding section, we observe three marked differences:

- a. There is no conjunction corresponding to *that*.
- b. The verb is in the infinitive and its subject is in the accusative.
- c. The tenses of the infinitive are not changed after a past tense of the principal verb.





416. RULE. Indirect Statements. *When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive.*

417. Tenses of the Infinitive. When the sentences in Sec. 415 were changed from the direct to the indirect form of statement, *sunt\ became esse\, erant\ became fuisse\, and erunt\ became futuros esse\.*

418. RULE. Infinitive Tenses in Indirect Statements. *A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive.*

NOTE. When translating into Latin an English indirect statement, first decide what tense of the indicative would have been used in the direct form. That will show you what tense of the infinitive to use in the indirect.

419. RULE. Verbs followed by Indirect Statements. *The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of /saying\, /telling\, /knowing\, /thinking\, and /perceiving\.*

420. Verbs regularly followed by indirect statements are:

a. Verbs of saying and telling:

dico, dicere, dixi, dictus,

*say*

nego, negare, negavi, negatus,

*deny, say not*

nuntio, nuntiare, nuntiavi,

*nuntiatus, announce*

respondeo, respondere, respondi,

*responsus, reply*

b. Verbs of knowing:

cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi,

*cognitus, learn,*

*(in the perf.)*

*know*

scio, scire, scivi, scitus,

*know*



## Page 138

c. Verbs of thinking:

arbitror, arbitrari, arbitratus

sum, *think, consider*

existimo, existimare, existimavi,

existimatus, *think, believe*

iudico, iudicare, iudicavi,

iudicatus, *judge, decide*

puto, putare, putavi, putatus,

*reckon, think*

spero, sperare, speravi, speratus,

*hope*

d. Verbs of perceiving:

audio, audire, audivi, auditus,

*hear*

sentio, sentire, sensi, sensus,

*feel, perceive*

video, videre, vidi, visus,

*see*

intellego, intellegere, intellexi,

intellectus, *understand,*

*perceive*

Learn such of these verbs as are new to you.

### 421. IDIOMS

postridie eius diei, *on the next day*

(lit. *on the next day of  
that day*)

inita aestate, *at the beginning of  
summer*

memoria tenere, *to remember* (lit.  
*to hold by memory*)

per exploratores cognoscere, *to learn  
through scouts*

### 422. EXERCISES

I. 1. It, imus, ite, ire. 2. Eunti, iisse

or isse, ibunt, eunt. 3. Eundi, ut eant,

ibitis, is. 4. Ne irent, i, ibant, ierat. 5.

Caesar per exploratores cognovit Gallos flumen transisse.

6. Romani audiverunt Helvetios inita aestate

de finibus suis exituros esse. 7. Legati responderunt



neminem ante Caesarem illam insulam adisse. 8. Principes Gallorum dicunt se nullum consilium contra Caesaris imperium inituros esse. 9. Arbitramur potentiam reginae esse maiorem quam civium. 10. Romani negant se libertatem Gallis erepturos esse. 11. His rebus cognitis sensimus legatos non venisse ad pacem petendam. 12. Helvetii sciunt Romanos priores victorias memoria tenere. 13. Socii cum intellegerent multos vulnerari, statuerunt in suos finis redire. 14. Aliquis nuntiavit Marcum consulem creatum esse.

II. 1. The boy is slow. He says that the boy is, was, (and) will be slow. 2. The horse is, has been, (and) will be strong. He judged that the horse was, had been, (and) would be strong. 3. We think that the army will go forth from the camp at the beginning of summer. 4. The next day we learned through scouts that the enemy's town was ten miles off.[2] 5. The king replied that the ornaments belonged to[3] the queen.

[Footnote 2: *to be off, to be distant, abesse*.]

[Footnote 3: Latin, *were of* (Sec. 409).]

[Illustration: TUBA]

## LESSON LXXIII

### VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERO*: THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

423. Review the word lists in Secs. 513, 514.

424. Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the verb *fero*:\, *\_bear\_* (Sec. 498).

1. Learn the principal parts and meanings of the following compounds of *fero*:\, *bear*:



# Page 139

ad'fero:, adfer're, at'tuli:,  
 adla:tus, *bring to; report*  
 co:n'fero:, co:nfer're, con'tuli:,  
 conla:tus, *bring together,*  
*collect*  
 de'fero:, defer're, de'tuli:,  
 dela:tus, *bring to; report;*  
*grant, confer*  
 i:n'fero:, i:nfer're, in'tuli:,  
 inla:tus, *bring in, bring against*  
 re'fero:, refer're, ret'tuli:,  
 rela:tus, *bear back, report*  
 [ Conjugation given in Sec. 498:

PRINCIPAL PARTS fero:, ferre, tuli:,  
 la:tus  
 PRES. STEM fer- PERF. STEM tul-  
 PART. STEM la:t-

## INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Pres. fero:	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	ferti:s	ferris, -re	ferimimi:
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
Impf. fere:bam		fere:bar	
Fut. feram, fere:s, etc.		ferar, fere:ris, etc.	
Perf. tuli:		la:tus, -a, -um	sum
Plup. tuleram		la:tus, -a, -um	eram
F. P. tulero:		la:tus, -a, -um	ero:

## SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. feram, fera:s, etc.	ferar, fera:ris, etc.
Impf. ferrem	ferrer
Perf. tulerim	la:tus, -a, -um
Plup. tulissem	la:tus, -a, -um
	essem

## IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d Pers. fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini:
Fut. 2d Pers. ferto:	ferto:te	fertor	
3d Pers. ferto:	ferunto	fertor	feruntor



## INFINITIVE

Pres. ferre                                  ferri:  
 Perf. tulisse                                la:tus, -a, -um esse  
 Fut. la:tu:rus, -a, -um esse        —

## PARTICIPLES

Pres. fere:ns, -entis                      Pres. —  
 Fut. la:tu:rus, -a, -um                  Ger. ferendus, -a, -um  
 Perf. —                                      Perf. la:tus, -a, -um

## GERUND

Gen. ferendi:  
 Dat. ferendo:  
 Acc. ferendum  
 Abl. ferendo:

## SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [[la:tum]]  
 Abl. [[la:tu:]] ]

425. The dative is the case of the indirect object. Many intransitive verbs take an indirect object and are therefore used with the dative (cf. Sec. 153). Transitive verbs take a direct object in the accusative; but sometimes they have an indirect object or dative as well. *The whole question, then, as to whether or not a verb takes the dative, depends upon its capacity for governing an indirect object.* A number of verbs, some transitive and some intransitive, which in their simple form would not take an indirect object, when compounded with certain prepositions, have a meaning which calls for an indirect object. Observe the following sentences:

1. Haec res exercitui magnam calamitatem attulit, *this circumstance brought great disaster to the army.*
2. Germani Gallis bellum inferunt, *the Germans make war upon the Gauls.*
3. Hae copiae proelio non intererant, *these troops did not take part in the battle.*



## Page 140

4. Equites fugientibus hostibus occurrunt,  
*the horsemen meet the  
fleeing enemy.*

5. Galba copiis filium praefecit,  
*Galba put his son in command of  
the troops.*

In each sentence there is a dative, and in each a verb combined with a preposition. In no case would the simple verb take the dative.

426. RULE. Dative with Compounds. *Some verbs compounded with /ad\, /ante\, /con\, /de\, /in\, /inter\, /ob\, /post\, /prae\, /pro\, /sub\, /super\, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

NOTE 1. Among such verbs are[1]

ad'fero, adfer're, at'tuli,  
adla'tus, *bring to; report*  
ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fui,  
adfutu'rus, *assist; be present*  
de'fero, defer're, de'tuli,  
delatus, *report; grant, confer*  
de'sum, dees'se, de'fui,——,  
*be wanting, be lacking*  
in'fero, infer're, in'tuli,  
inla'tus, *bring against, bring upon*  
inter'sum, interes'se, inter'fui,  
interfutu'rus, *take part in*  
occur'ro, occur'rere, occur'ri,  
occur'sus, *run against, meet*  
praefi'cio, praefi'cere, praefe'ci,  
praefec'tus, *appoint over,*  
*place in command of*  
prae'sum, praees'se, prae'fui,  
——, *be over, be in command*

[Footnote 1: But the accusative with *ad\* or *in\* is used with some of these, when the idea of motion to or against is strong.]



## 427. IDIOMS

graviter or moleste ferre, *to be annoyed at, to be indignant at,*

followed by the accusative  
and infinitive

se conferre ad or in, with the accusative,  
*to betake one's self*

*to*

alicui bellum inferre, *to make war upon some one*

pedem referre, *to retreat* (lit.  
*to bear back the foot*)

## 428. EXERCISES

I. 1. Fer, ferent, ut ferant, ferunt. 2. Ferte, ut ferrent, tulisse, tulerant. 3. Tulimus, ferens, latus esse, ferre. 4. Cum navigia insulae adpropinquarent, barbari terrore commoti pedem referre conati sunt. 5. Galli moleste ferebant Romanos agros vastare. 6. Caesar sociis imperavit ne finitimis suis bellum inferrent. 7. Exploratores, qui Caesari occurrerunt, dixerunt exercitum hostium vulneribus defessum sese in alium locum contulisse. 8. Hostes sciebant Romanos frumento egere et hanc rem Caesari summum periculum adlaturam esse. 9. Impedimentis in unum locum conlatis, aliqui militum flumen quod non longe aberat transierunt. 10. Hos rex hortatus est ut oraculum adirent et res auditas ad se referrent. 11. Quem imperator illi legioni praefecit? Publius illi legioni praeerat. 12. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, crebri ad eum[2] rumores adferebantur litterisque quoque certior fiebat Gallos obsides inter se dare.

II. 1. The Gauls will make war upon Caesar's allies. 2. We heard that the Gauls would make war upon Caesar's allies. 3. Publius did not take part in that battle. 4. We have been informed that Publius did not take part in that battle. 5. The man who was in command of the cavalry was wounded and began to retreat. 6. Caesar did not place you in command of the cohort to bring[3] disaster upon the army.



# Page 141

[Footnote 2: Observe that when *adfero*\ denotes *\_motion to\_*, it is not followed by the dative; cf. footnote, p. 182.]

[Footnote 3: Not the infinitive. (Cf. Sec. 352.)]

## LESSON LXXIV

### VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

429. Review the word lists in Secs. 517, 518.

430. When we report a statement instead of giving it directly, we have an indirect statement. (Cf. Sec. 414.) So, if we report a question instead of asking it directly, we have an indirect question.

#### DIRECT QUESTION

*Who conquered the Gauls?*

a. An indirect question

depends, usually as object, upon a verb of asking (as *peto*, *postulo*, *quaero*, *rogo*) or upon some verb or expression of saying or mental action. (Cf. Sec. 420.)

#### INDIRECT QUESTION

*He asked who conquered the Gauls*

431. Compare the following direct and indirect questions:

#### DIRECT INDIRECT

*Quis Gallos vincit?* { a.

*Rogat quis Gallos vincat*

*Who is conquering the* { *He asks*

*who is conquering the*

*Gauls?* { *Gauls*

{ b. *Rogavit quis*





Gallos vinceret

{ *He asked who  
was conquering*

{ *the Gauls*

{ *a. Rogat ubi sit Roma*

Ubi est Roma? { *He asks where Rome is* *Where is Rome?* { *b.*

Rogavit ubi esset Roma

{ *He asked where Rome was*

{ *a.*

Rogat num Caesar Gallos vicerit

{ *He asks whether*

*Caesar conquered*

Caesarne Gallos vicit? { *the Gauls*

*Did Caesar conquer the* { *b. Rogavit*

*num Caesar Gallos*

*\_Gauls?\_* { *vicisset*

{ *\_He asked whether*

*Caesar had\_*

{ *\_conquered the*

*Gauls\_*

*a. The verb in a direct  
question is in the indicative mood, but  
the mood is subjunctive in an indirect question.*

*b. The tense of the subjunctive  
follows the rules for tense  
sequence.*

*c. Indirect questions are introduced by the same interrogative words as introduce direct  
questions, excepting that \_yes\_-or-no direct questions (cf. Sec. 210) on becoming  
indirect are usually introduced by num\, \_whether\_.*

*\_432.\_ RULE. Indirect Questions. \_In an indirect  
question the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense  
is determined by the law for tense sequence.\_*

### 433. IDIOMS

*de tertia vigilia, about the third watch iniurias alicui inferre, to inflict injuries upon some  
one facere verba pro, with the ablative, to speak in behalf of in reliquum tempus, for the  
future*

### 434. EXERCISES



## Page 142

I. 1. Rex rogavit quid legati postularent et cur ad se venissent. 2. Quaesivit quoque num nec recentis iniurias nec dubiam Romanorum amicitiam memoria tenerent. 3. Videtisne quae oppida hostes oppugnaverint? 4. Nonne scitis cur Galli sub montem sese contulerint? 5. Audivimus quas iniurias tibi Germani intulissent. 6. De tertia vigilia imperator misit homines qui cognoscerent quae esset natura montis. 7. Pro his orator verba fecit et rogavit cur consules navis ad plenam summi periculi locum mittere vellent. 8. Legatis convocatis demonstravit quid fieri vellet. 9. Nuntius referebat quid in Gallorum concilio de armis tradendis dictum esset. 10. Moneo ne in reliquum tempus pedites et equites trans flumen ducas.

II. 1. What hill did they seize? I see what hill they seized. 2. Who has inflicted these injuries upon our dependents? 3. They asked who had inflicted those injuries upon their dependents. 4. Whither did you go about the third watch? You know whither I went. 5. At what time did the boys return home? I will ask at what time the boys returned home.

## LESSON LXXV

### VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR END FOR WHICH

435. Review the word lists in Secs. 521, 522.

436. Observe the following sentences:

1. Exploratores locum castris delegerunt,  
*the scouts chose a place  
for a camp.*

2. Hoc erat magno impedimento Gallis,  
*this was (for) a great*



*hindrance to the Gauls.*

3. *Duas legiones praesidio castris*  
*reliquit, he left two legions*  
*as (lit. for) a guard to*  
*the camp.*

In each of these sentences we find a dative expressing the *purpose or end for which* something is intended or for which it serves. These datives are *castris*\, *impedimento*\, and *praesidio*\. In the second and third sentences we find a second dative expressing the *\_person or thing affected\_* (*Gallis and castris*). As you notice, these are true datives, covering the relations of *\_for which\_* and *\_to which\_*. (Cf. *Sec. 43.*)

437. RULE. Dative of Purpose or End. *The dative is used to denote the /purpose or end for which\, often with another dative denoting the /person or thing affected\.*

#### 438. IDIOMS

*consilium omittere, to give up a plan*  
*locum castris deligere, to choose a*  
*place for a camp*  
*alicui magno usui esse, to be of great*  
*advantage to some one*  
*(lit. for great advantage*  
*to some one)*

#### 439. EXERCISES

## Page 143

I. 1. Rogavit cur illae copiae relictæ essent. Responderunt illas copias esse praesidio castris. 2. Caesar misit exploratores ad locum deligendum castris. 3. Quisque existimavit ipsum nomen Caesaris magno terrori barbaris futurum esse. 4. Prima luce idem exercitus proelium acre commisit, sed gravia suorum vulnera magnæ curæ imperatori erant. 5. Rex respondit amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio debere esse. 6. Quis praeerat equitatu quem auxilio Caesari socii miserant? 7. Aliquibus res secundæ sunt summæ calamitati et res adversæ sunt miro usui. 8. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento quod equitatus a dextro cornu premebat. 9. Memoria pristinae virtutis non minus quam metus hostium erat nostris magno usui. 10. Tam densa erat silva ut progredi non possent.

II. 1. I advise you [1]to give up the plan [2]of making war upon the brave Gauls. 2. Do you know [3]where the cavalry has chosen a place for a camp? 3. The fear of the enemy will be of great advantage to you. 4. Caesar left three cohorts as (for) a guard to the baggage. 5. In winter the waves of the lake are so great [4]that they are (for) a great hindrance to ships. 6. Caesar inflicted severe[5] punishment on those who burned the public buildings.

[Footnote 1: Subjunctive of purpose. (Cf. Sec. 366.)]

[Footnote 2: Express by the genitive of the gerundive.]

[Footnote 3: Indirect question.]

[Footnote 4: A clause of result.]

[Footnote 5: *gravis*, -e\.]



## LESSON LXXVI

### VOCABULARY REVIEW : THE GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR DESCRIPTION

440. Review the word lists in Secs. 524, 525.

441. Observe the English sentences

- (1) *A man /of\ great courage*, or
  - (2) *A man /with\ great courage*
  - (3) *A forest /of\ tall trees*, or
  - (4) *A forest /with\ tall trees*
- Each of these sentences contains a phrase of quality or description. In the first two a man is described; in the last two a forest. The descriptive phrases are introduced by the prepositions *of* and *with*.

In Latin the expression of quality or description is very similar.

The prepositions *of* and *with* suggest the genitive and the ablative respectively, and we translate the sentences above

- (1) *Vir magnae virtutis\*, or (2) *Vir magna virtute\*
- (3) *Silva altarum arborum\*, or (4) *Silva altis arboribus\*

There is, however, one important difference between the Latin and the English. In English we may say, for example, *a man of courage*, using the descriptive phrase without an adjective modifier. *In Latin, however, an adjective modifier must always be used*, as above.

a. Latin makes a distinction between the use of the two cases in that *numerical descriptions of measure are in the genitive* and *descriptions of physical characteristics are in the ablative*. Other descriptive phrases may be in either case.

442. EXAMPLES



## Page 144

1. Fossa duodecim pedum, *a ditch of twelve feet.*

2. Homo magnis pedibus et parvo capite, *a man with big feet and a small head.*

3. Rex erat vir summa audacia\ or rex erat vir summae audaciae\, *the king was a man of the greatest boldness.*

443. RULE. Genitive of Description. *Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective.*

444. RULE. Ablative of Description. *Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective.*

445. RULE. Genitive or Ablative of Description. *Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective.*

### 446. IDIOMS

Helvetiis in animo est, *the Helvetii intend,*

(lit. *it is in mind to the Helvetians*)

in matrimonium dare, *to give in marriage*

nihil posse, *to have no power*

fossam perducere, *to construct a ditch*

(lit. *to lead a ditch through*)

### 447. EXERCISES

I. 1. Milites fossam decem pedum per eorum finis perduxerunt. 2. Princeps Helvetiorum, vir summae audaciae, principibus gentium finitimarum sorores in matrimonium dedit. 3. Eorum amicitiam confirmare voluit quo facilius Romanis bellum inferret. 4. Germani et Galli non erant eiusdem gentis. 5.



Omnes fere Germani erant magnis corporum viribus.[1]

6. Galli qui oppidum fortiter defendebant saxa ingentis magnitudinis de muro iaciebant. 7. Cum Caesar ab exploratoribus quaereret qui illud oppidum incolerent, exploratores responderunt eos esse homines summa virtute et magno consilio. 8. Moenia viginti pedum a sinistra parte, et a dextra parte flumen magnae altitudinis oppidum defendebant. 9. Cum Caesar in Galliam pervenisset, erat rumor Helvetiis in animo esse iter per provinciam Romanam facere. 10. Caesar, ut eos ab finibus Romanis prohiberet, munitionem [2]multa milia passuum longam fecit.

II. 1. Caesar was a general of much wisdom and great boldness, and very skillful in the art of war. 2. The Germans were of great size, and thought that the Romans had no power. 3. Men of the highest courage were left in the camp as (for) a guard to the baggage. 4. The king's daughter, who was given in marriage to the chief of a neighboring state, was a woman of very beautiful appearance. 5. The soldiers will construct a ditch of nine feet around the camp. 6. A river of great width was between us and the enemy.

[Footnote 1: From *vis*].  
(Cf. *Sec. 468.*)]



## Page 145

[Footnote 2: Genitives and ablatives of description are adjective phrases. When we use an *adverbial* phrase to tell *how long* or *how high* or *how deep* anything is, we must use the accusative of extent. (Cf. Sec. 336.) For example, in the sentence above *multa milia passuum* is an *adverbial phrase (accusative of extent) modifying longam*. If we should omit *longam* and say *\_a fortification of many miles\_*, the *genitive of description (an adjective phrase) modifying munitionem* would be used, as *munitionem multorum milium passuum*.]

[Illustration: GLADII]

## LESSON LXXVII

### REVIEW OF AGREEMENT, AND OF THE GENITIVE, DATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE

448. There are four agreements:

1. That of the predicate noun or of the appositive with the noun to which it belongs (Secs. 76, 81).
2. That of the adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle with its noun (Sec. 65).
3. That of a verb with its subject (Sec. 28).
4. That of a relative pronoun with its antecedent (Sec. 224).

449. The relation expressed by the *genitive* is, in general, denoted in English by the preposition *\_of\_*. It is used to express

- {
  - a. As attributive (Sec. 38).
    1. Possession {
  - b. In the predicate (Sec. 409).
    2. The whole of which a part is taken





(partitive genitive) (Sec. 331).

3. Quality or description (Secs. 443, 445).

450. The relation expressed by the *dative* is, in general, denoted in English by the prepositions *\_to\_ or \_for\_ when they do not imply motion through space. It is used to express*

{  
a. With intransitive verbs and with  
{  
transitive verbs in connection with a  
{  
direct object in the accusative (Sec. 45).

1. The indirect object { *b*.  
With special intransitive verbs

{  
(Sec. 154).

{  
c. With verbs compounded with *ad*\, *ante*\,  
{  
*con*\, *de*\, *in*\, *inter*\, *ob*\, *post*\,  
{  
*prae*\, *pro*\, *sub*\, *super*\ (Sec. 426).

2. The object to which the quality  
of an adjective is directed  
(Sec. 143).

3. The purpose, or end for which,  
often with a second dative denoting  
the person or thing affected (Sec. 437).

451. The *accusative* case corresponds, in general, to the English objective. It is used to express

1. The direct object of a transitive  
verb (Sec. 37).

2. The predicate accusative together  
with the direct object after  
verbs of *making*, *choosing*, *falling*,  
*showing*, and the like (Sec.  
392).



## Page 146

3. The subject of the infinitive (Sec. 214).

4. The object of prepositions that do not govern the ablative (Sec. 340).

5. The duration of time and the extent of space (Sec. 336).

6. The place to which (Secs. 263, 266).

### 452. EXERCISES

I. 1. Milites quos vidimus dixerunt imperium belli esse Caesaris imperatoris. 2. Helvetii statuerunt quam[1] maximum numerum equorum et carrorum cogere. 3. Totius Galliae Helvetii plurimum valuerunt. 4. Multas horas acriter pugnatum est neque quisquam poterat videre hostem fugientem. 5. Viri summae virtutis hostis decem milia passuum insecuti sunt. 6. Caesar populo Romano persuasit ut se consulem crearet. 7. Victoria exercitus erat semper imperatori gratissima. 8. Triduum iter fecerunt et Genavam, in oppidum[2] hostium, pervenerunt. 9. Caesar audivit Germanos bellum Gallis intulisse. 10. Magno usui militibus Caesaris erat quod prioribus proeliis sese exercuerant.

II. 1. One[3] of the king's sons and many of his men were captured. 2. There was no one who wished[4] to appoint her queen. 3. The grain supply was always a care (for a care) to Caesar, the general. 4. I think that the camp is ten miles distant. 5. We marched for three hours through a very dense forest. 6. The plan [5]of making war upon the allies was not pleasing to the king. 7. When he came to the hill he fortified it [6]by a twelve-foot wall.



[Footnote 1: What is the force of *quam*\ *with superlatives*?]

[Footnote 2: *urbs*\ *or oppidum*\, appositive to a name of a town, takes a preposition.]

[Footnote 3: What construction is used with numerals in preference to the partitive genitive?]

[Footnote 4: What mood? (Cf. Sec. 390.)]

[Footnote 5: Use the gerund or gerundive.]

[Footnote 6: Latin, *by a wall of twelve feet*.]

## LESSON LXXVIII

### REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE

453. The relations of the ablative are, in general, expressed in English by the prepositions *with* (or *by*), *from* (or *by*), and *in* (or *at*). The constructions growing out of these meanings are

- I. Ablative rendered *with* (or *by*):
  1. Cause (Sec. 102)
  2. Means (Sec. 103)
  3. Accompaniment (Sec. 104)
  4. Manner (Sec. 105)
  5. Measure of difference (Sec. 317)
  6. With a participle (ablative absolute) (Sec. 381)
  7. Description or quality (Secs. 444, 445)
  8. Specification (Sec. 398)



II. Ablative rendered *from*  
(or *by*):

1. Place from which (Secs. 179, 264)
2. Ablative of separation (Sec. 180)
3. Personal agent with a passive verb (Sec. 181)
4. Comparison without *quam* (Sec. 309)



## Page 147

III. Ablative rendered *in*  
(or *at*):

1. Place at or in which  
(Secs. 265, 266)
2. Time when or within  
which (Sec. 275)

### 454. EXERCISES

I. 1. Galli locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. 2. Omnes oppidani ex oppido egressi salutem fuga petere inceperunt. 3. Caesar docet se militum vitam sua salute habere multo cariores. 4. Cum celerius omnium opinione pervenisset, hostes ad eum obsides miserunt. 5. Vicus in valle positus montibus altissimis undique continetur. 6. Plurimum inter Gallos haec gens et virtute et hominum numero valebat. 7. Secunda vigilia nullo certo ordine neque imperio e castris egressi sunt. 8. Duabus legionibus Genavae relictis, proximo die cum reliquis domum profectus est. 9. Erant itinera duo quibus itineribus Helvetii domo exire possent. 10. Rex erat summa audacia et magna apud populum potentia. 11. Galli timore servitutis commoti bellum parabant. 12. Caesar monet legatos ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius[1] progrediantur. 13. Bellum acerrimum a Caesare in Gallos gestum est.

II. 1. The lieutenant after having seized the mountain restrained his (men) from battle. 2. All the Gauls differ from each other in laws. 3. This tribe is much braver than the rest. 4. This road is [2]ten miles shorter than that. 5. In summer Caesar carried on war in Gaul, in winter he returned to Italy. 6. At midnight the general set out from the camp with three legions. 7. I fear that you cannot protect[3] yourself from these enemies. 8. [4]After this battle was finished peace was made by all the Gauls.



[Footnote 1: *longius*\,  
\_too far\_. (Cf. Sec. 305.)]

[Footnote 2: Latin, *by*  
*ten thousands of paces*.]

[Footnote 3: *defendere*\.]

[Footnote 4: Ablative  
absolute.]

## LESSON LXXIX

### REVIEW OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE, THE INFINITIVE, AND THE SUBJUNCTIVE

455. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns (Secs. 402, 406.1).

456. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual (Sec. 406.2).

457. The infinitive is used:

I. As in English.

*a.* As subject or predicate  
nominative (Sec. 216).

*b.* To complete the  
predicate with verbs of incomplete predication  
(complementary infinitive)  
(Sec. 215).

*c.* As object with subject  
accusative after verbs of *wishing*,  
*commanding*, *forbidding*,  
and the like (Sec. 213).



## Page 148

II. In the principal sentence of an indirect statement after verbs of *saying* and *mental action*. The subject is in the accusative (Secs. 416, 418, 419).

458. The subjunctive is used:

1. To denote purpose (Secs. 349, 366, 372).
2. To denote consequence or result (Secs. 385, 386).
3. In relative clauses of characteristic or description (Sec. 390).
4. In *cum* clauses of time, cause, and concession (Sec. 396).
5. In indirect questions (Sec. 432).

### 459. EXERCISES

I. 1. Caesar, cum pervenisset, milites hortabatur ne consilium oppidi capiendi omitterent. 2. Rex, castris prope oppidum positus, misit exploratores qui cognoscerent ubi exercitus Romanus esset. 3. Nemo relinquebatur qui arma ferre posset. 4. Nuntii viderunt ingentem armorum multitudinem de muro in fossani iactam esse. 5. Dux suos transire flumen iussit. Transire autem hoc flumen erat difficillimum. 6. Romani cum hanc calamitatem moleste ferrant, tamen terga vertere recusaverunt. 7. Hoc rumore audito, tantus terror omnium animos occupavit ut ne fortissimi quidem proelium committere vellent. 8. Erant qui putarent tempus anni idoneum non esse itineri faciendo. 9. Tam acriter ab utraque parte pugnabatur ut multa milia hominum occiderentur. 10. Quid times? Timeo ne Romanis in animo sit totam Galliam superare et nobis iniurias inferre.



II. 1. Do you not see who is standing on the wall? 2. We hear that the plan of taking the town has been given up. 3. Since the Germans thought that the Romans could not cross the Rhine, Caesar ordered a bridge to be made. 4. When the bridge was finished, the savages were so terrified that they hid themselves. 5. They feared that Caesar would pursue them. 6. Caesar [1]asked the traders what the size of the island was. 7. The traders advised him not [2]to cross the sea. 8. He sent scouts [3]to choose a place for a camp.

[Footnote 1: *quaerere*  
*ab\.*]

[Footnote 2: Not infinitive.]

[Footnote 3: Use the  
gerundive with *ad\.*]

## READING MATTER

### INTRODUCTORY SUGGESTIONS

*How to Translate.\ You have already had considerable practice in translating simple Latin, and have learned that the guide to the meaning lies in the endings of the words. If these are neglected, no skill can make sense of the Latin. If they are carefully noted and accurately translated, not many difficulties remain. Observe the following suggestions:*

1. Read the Latin sentence through to the end, noting endings of nouns, adjectives, verbs, *etc.*
2. Read it again and see if any of the words you know are nominatives or accusatives. This will often give you what may be called the backbone of the sentence; that is, subject, verb, and object.



## Page 149

3. Look up the words you do not know, and determine their use in the sentence from their endings.

4. If you cannot yet translate the sentence, put down the English meanings of all the words *in the same order as the Latin words*. You will then generally see through the meaning of the sentence.

5. Be careful to

*a.* Translate adjectives with the nouns to which they belong.

*b.* Translate together prepositions and the nouns which they govern.

*c.* Translate adverbs with the words that they modify.

*d. Make sense.*

If you do not make sense, you have made a mistake. One mistake will spoil a whole sentence.

6. When the sentence is correctly translated, read the Latin over again, and try to understand it as Latin, without thinking of the English translation.

*The Parts of a Sentence.* \ You will now meet somewhat longer sentences than you have had before. To assist in translating them, remember, first of all, that every sentence conveys a meaning and either tells us something, asks a question, or gives a command. Every sentence must have a subject and a verb, and the verb may always have an adverb, and, if transitive,



*will have a direct object.*

However long a sentence is, you will usually be able to recognize its subject, verb, and object or predicate complement without any difficulty. These will give you the leading thought, and they must never be lost sight of while making out the rest of the sentence. The chief difficulty in translating arises from the fact that instead of a single adjective, adverb, or noun, we often have a phrase or a clause taking the place of one of these; for Latin, like English, has adjective, adverbial, and substantive clauses and phrases. For example, in the sentence *The idle boy does not study*, the word *idle* is an adjective. In *The boy wasting his time does not study*, the words *wasting his time* form an adjective phrase modifying *boy*. In the sentence *The boy who wastes his time does not study*, the words *who wastes his time* form an adjective clause modifying *boy*, and the sentence is complex. These sentences would show the same structure in Latin.

In translating, it is important to keep the parts of a phrase and the parts of a clause together and not let them become confused with the principal sentence. To distinguish between the subordinate clauses and the principal sentence is of the first importance, and is not difficult if you remember that a clause regularly contains a word that marks it as a clause and that this word usually stands first. These words join clauses to the words they depend on, and are called *subordinate conjunctions*. They are not very numerous, and you will soon learn to recognize them. In Latin they are the equivalents for such words as *when, while, since, because, if, before, after, though, in order that, that, etc.* Form the habit of memorizing the Latin subordinate conjunctions as you meet them, and of noting carefully the mood of the verb in the clauses which they introduce.

## Page 150

[Illustration: HERCULES]

### THE LABORS OF HERCULES

Hercules, a Greek hero celebrated for his great strength, was pursued throughout his life by the hatred of Juno. While yet an infant he strangled some serpents sent by the goddess to destroy him. During his boyhood and youth he performed various marvelous feats of strength, and on reaching manhood he succeeded in delivering the Thebans from the oppression of the Minyae. In a fit of madness, sent upon him by Juno, he slew his own children; and, on consulting the Delphic oracle as to how he should cleanse himself from this crime, he was ordered to submit himself for twelve years to Eurystheus, king of Tiryns, and to perform whatever tasks were appointed him. Hercules obeyed the oracle, and during the twelve years of his servitude accomplished twelve extraordinary feats known as the Labors of Hercules. His death was caused, unintentionally, by his wife Deianira. Hercules had shot with his poisoned arrows a centaur named Nessus, who had insulted Deianira. Nessus, before he died, gave some of his blood to Deianira, and told her it would act as a charm to secure her husband's love. Some time after, Deianira, wishing to try the charm, soaked one of her husband's garments in the blood, not knowing that it was poisoned. Hercules put on the robe, and, after suffering terrible torments, died, or was carried off by his father Jupiter.

[Illustration: HERCULES ET SERPENTES]

#### LIII.[1] THE INFANT HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Di[2] grave supplicium summit de malis, sed ii qui  
legibus[3] deorum parent, etiam post mortem curantur.  
Illa vita dis[2] erat gratissima quae hominibus miseris  
utilissima fuerat. Omnium autem praemiorum summum  
erat immortalitas. Illud praemium Herculi datum  
est.

Herculis pater fuit Iuppiter, mater Alcmena, et omnium  
hominum validissimus fuisse dicitur. Sed Iuno,  
regina deorum, eum, adhuc infantem, interficere studebat;  
nam ei[1] et[2] Hercules et Alcmena erant invisi.  
Itaque misit duas serpentis, utramque saevissimam,  
quae media nocte domum[3] Alcmenae venerunt.  
Ibi Hercules, cum fratre suo, non in lectulo sed in  
scuto ingenti dormiebat. Iam audaces serpentes  
adpropinquaverant, iam scutum movebant. Tum frater,  
terrore commotus, magna voce matrem vocavit, sed Hercules



ipse, fortior quam frater, statim ingentis serpentis  
manibus suis rapuit et interfecit.

[Footnote 1: This number  
refers to the lesson after which the  
selection may be read.]

[Footnote 2: *Di:*\  
and *di:s*\ are from *deus*\. Cf. *Sec.*  
*468.*]

[Footnote 3: *legibus*\,  
*Sec. 501.14.*]

[Footnote 1: *ei*\,  
\_to her\_, referring to *Juno.*]

[Footnote 2: *et* ...  
*et*\, \_both ... and\_.]

[Footnote 3: *domum*\,  
*Sec. 501.20.*]

## LIV. HERCULES CONQUERS THE MINYAE

## Page 151

Hercules a puero[1] corpus suum gravissimis et difficillimis laboribus exercebat et hoc modo vires[2] suas confirmavit. Iam adulescens Thebis[3] habitabat. Ibi Creon quidam erat rex. Minyae, gens validissima, erant finitimi Thebanis, et, quia olim Thebanos vicerant, quotannis legatos mittebant et vectigal postulabant. Hercules autem constituit civis suos hoc vectigali liberare et dixit regi, “Da mihi exercitum tuum et ego hos superbos hostis superabo.” Hanc condicionem rex non recusavit, et Hercules nuntios in omnis partis dimisit et copias coegit.[4] Tum tempore opportunissimo proelium cum Minyis commisit. Diu pugnatum est, sed denique illi impetum Thebanorum sustinere non potuerunt et terga verterunt fugamque ceperunt.

[Footnote 1: *a puero*\\, *\_from boyhood\_*.]

[Footnote 2: *vires*\\, *from vis*\\, Cf. Sec. 468.]

[Footnote 3: *Thebis*\\, *Sec. 501.36.1.*]

[Footnote 4: *coegit*\\, *from cogo*\\.]

## HE COMMITS A CRIME AND GOES TO THE DELPHIAN ORACLE TO SEEK EXPIATION

Post hoc proelium Creon rex, tanta victoria laetus, filiam suam Herculi in matrimonium dedit. Thebis Hercules cum uxore sua diu vivebat et ab omnibus magnopere amabatur; sed post multos annos subito [1]in furorem incidit et ipse sua manu liberos suos interfecit. Post breve tempus [2]ad sanitatem reductus tantum scelus expiare cupiebat et constituit ad oraculum Delphicum iter facere. Hoc autem oraculum erat omnium clarissimum. Ibi sedebat femina quaedam



quae Pythia appellabatur. Ea consilium dabat  
iis qui ad oraculum veniebant.

[Footnote 1: *in furorem*  
*incidit*\, *\_went mad\_*.]

[Footnote 2: *ad sanitatem*  
*reductus*\, *lit. \_led back to sanity\_*.  
*What in good English?*]

[Illustration: HERCULES LEONEM SUPERAT]

#### LV. HERCULES BECOMES SUBJECT TO EURYSTHEUS[1]

:

##### HE STRANGLES THE NEME'AN LION

Itaque Hercules Pythiae totam rem demonstravit nec  
scelus suum abdidit. Ubi iam Hercules finem fecit,  
Pythia iussit eum ad urbem Tiryntha[2] discedere et  
ibi regi Eurystheo sese committere. Quae[3] ubi  
audivit, Hercules ad illam urbem statim contendit  
et Eurystheo se in servitutem tradidit et dixit, “Quid  
primum, O rex, me facere iubes?” Eurystheus,  
qui perterrebat vi et corpore ingenti Herculis et  
eum occidi[4] studebat, ita respondit: “Audi,  
Hercules! Multa mira[5] narrantur de leone saevissimo  
qui hoc tempore in valle Nemea omnia vastat.  
Iubeo te, virorum omnium fortissimum, illo monstro  
homines liberare.” Haec verba Herculi maxime  
placuerunt. “Properabo,” inquit, “et  
parebo imperio[6] tuo.” Tum in silvas in  
quibus leo habitabat statim iter fecit. Mox feram  
vidit et pluris impetus fecit; frustra tamen, quod  
neque sagittis neque ullo alio telo monstrum vulnerare  
potuit. Denique Hercules saevum leonem suis ingentibus  
bracchiis rapuit et faucis eius omnibus viribus compressit.  
Hoc modo brevi tempore eum interfecit. Tum corpus  
leonis ad oppidum in umeris reportavit et pellem postea  
pro[7] veste gerebat. Omnes autem quo eam regionem  
incolebant, ubi famam de morte leonis ingentis acceperunt,  
erant laetissimi et Herculem laudabant verbis amplissimis.

## Page 152

[Footnote 1: *Eu-rys'theus*\  
(pronounced *\_U-ris'thus\_*) was king of  
*\_Ti'ryns\_*, a Grecian  
city, whose foundation goes back to prehistoric  
times.]

[Footnote 2: *Tiryntha*\  
the acc. case of *Tiryns*\\, a Greek noun.]

[Footnote 3: *Quae*\  
obj. of *audivit*\\. It is placed first to make  
a  
close connection with the  
preceding sentence. This is called a  
connecting relative.]

[Footnote 4: *occidi*\  
*pres. pass. infin.*]

[Footnote 5: *mira*\  
*\_marvelous things\_*, the adj. being used as a  
noun. Cf. *omnia*\  
in the next line.]

[Footnote 6: *imperio*\  
*Sec. 501.14.*]

[Footnote 7: *pro*\  
*\_for, instead of\_*.]

## LVI. SLAYING THE LERNE'AN HYDRA

Deinde Hercules ab Eurystheo iussus est Hydram occidere.  
Itaque cum amico Iolao[1] contendit ad paludem Lernaean  
ubi Hydra incolebat. Hoc autem monstrum erat  
serpens ingens quae novem capita habebat. Mox  
is monstrum repperit et summo[2] cum periculo collum  
eius sinistra manu rapuit et tenuit. Tum dextra  
manu capita novem abscidere incepit, sed frustra laborabat,  
quod quotiens hoc fecerat totiens alia nova capita  
videbat. Quod[3] ubi vidit, statuit capita igni  
cremare. Hoc modo octo capita delevit, sed extremum



caput vulnerari non potuit, quod erat immortale.  
Itaque illud sub ingenti saxo Hercules posuit et ita  
victoriam reportavit.

[Footnote 1: *Iolao* \,  
*abl. of \_I-o-la'us\_, the hero's best friend.*]

[Footnote 2: Note the  
emphatic position of this adjective.]

[Footnote 3: *Quod*  
*ubi* \, *\_when he saw this\_, another instance of the*  
*connecting relative.*  
*Cf. p. 199, l. 3.*]

## LVII. THE ARCADIAN STAG AND THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Postquam Eurystheo mors Hydrae nuntiata est, summus  
terror animum eius occupavit. Itaque iussit Herculem  
capere et ad se reportare cervum quendam; nam minime  
cupivit tantum virum in regno suo tenere. Hic  
autem cervus dicebatur aurea cornua et pedes multo[1]  
celeriores vento[2] habere. Primum Hercules vestigia  
animalis petivit, deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vidit,  
omnibus viribus currere incepit. Per plurimos  
dies contendit nec noctu cessavit. Denique postquam  
per totum annum cucurrerat—ita dicitur—cervum  
iam defessum cepit et ad Eurystheum portavit.

Tum vero iussus est Hercules aprum quendam capere  
qui illo tempore agros Erymanthios vastabat et homines  
illius loci magnopere perterrebat. Hercules laete  
negotium suscepit et in Arcadium celeriter se recepit.  
Ibi mox aprum repperit. Ille autem; simul atque  
Herculem vidit, statim quam[3] celerrime fugit et  
metu perterritus in fossam altam sese abdidit.  
Hercules tamen summa cum difficultate eum extraxit,  
nec aper ullo modo sese liberare potuit, et vivus  
ad Eurystheum portatus est.





## Page 153

[Footnote 1: *multo*\  
*Sec. 501.27.*]

[Footnote 2: *vento*\  
*Sec. 501.34.*]

[Footnote 3: *quam*\  
*What is the force of quam* with a  
superlative?]

### LVIII. HERCULES CLEANS THE AUGÉAN STABLES AND KILLS THE STYMPHALIAN BIRDS

Deinde Eurystheus Herculi hunc laborem multo graviores imperavit. Augeas[1] quidam, qui illo tempore regnum Elidis[2] obtinebat, tria milia boum[3] habebat. Hi[4] ingenti stabulo continebantur. Hoc stabulum, quod per triginta annos non purgatum erat, Hercules intra spatium unius diei purgare iussus est. Ille negotium alacriter suscepit, et primum labore gravissimo maximam fossam fodit per quam fluminis aquam de montibus ad murum stabuli duxit. Tum partem parvam muri delevit et aquam in stabulum immisit. Hoc modo finem operis fecit uno die facillime.

Post paucos dies Hercules ad oppidum Stymphalum iter fecit; nam Eurystheus iusserat eum avis Stymphalides occidere. Hae aves rostra ferrea habebant et homines miseros devorabant. Ille, postquam ad locum pervenit, lacum vidit in quo aves incolebant. Nullo tamen modo Hercules avibus adpropinquare potuit; lacus enim non ex aqua sed e limo constitit.[5] Denique autem aves [6]de aliqua causa perterritae in auras volaverunt et magna pars earum sagittis Herculis occisa est.

[Footnote 1: *Augeas*\  
*pronounced in English \_Aw-je'as\_.]*

[Footnote 2: *Elidis*\  
*gen. case of Elis*, a district of Greece.]

[Footnote 3: *boum*\  
*gen. plur. of bo:s*]. For construction see  
Sec. 501.11.]



[Footnote 4: *ingenti stabulo*\, *abl. of means, but in our idiom we should say \_in a huge stable\_.*]

[Footnote 5: *constitit*\, *from consto*\.]

[Footnote 6: *de aliqua causa perterritae*\, *\_frightened for some reason\_.*]

[Illustration: HERCULES ET TAURUS]

## LIX. HERCULES CAPTURES THE CRETAN BULL AND CARRIES HIM LIVING TO EURYSTHEUS

Tum Eurystheus iussit Herculem portare vivum ex insula Creta taurum quendam saevissimum. Ille igitur navem conscendit—nam ventus erat idoneus—atque statim solvit. Postquam triduum navigavit, incolumis insulae adpropinquavit. Deinde, postquam omnia parata sunt, contendit ad eam regionem quam taurus vexabat. Mox taurum vidit ac sine ullo metu cornua eius corripuit. Tum ingenti labore monstrum ad navem traxit atque cum hac praeda ex insula discessit.

## THE FLESH-EATING HORSES OF DIOME'DES

Postquam ex insula Creta domum pervenit, Hercules ab Eurystheo in Thraciam missus est. Ibi Diomedes quidam, vir saevissimus, regnum obtinebat et omnis a finibus suis prohibebat. Hercules iussus erat equos Diomedis rapere et ad Eurystheum ducere. Hi autem equi homines miserrimos devorabant de quibus rex supplicium sumere cupiebat. Hercules ubi pervenit, primum equos a rege postulavit, sed rex eos dedere recusavit. Deinde ille ira commotus regem occidit et corpus eius equis tradidit. Itaque is qui antea multos necaverat, ipse eodem supplicio necatus est. Et equi, nuper saevissima animalia, postquam domini sui corpus devoraverunt, mansueti erant.

## Page 154

### LX. THE BELT OF HIPPOLYTE, QUEEN OF THE AMAZONS

Gens Amazonum[1] dicitur[2] omnino ex mulieribus fuisse. Hae cum viris proelium committere non verebantur. Hippolyte, Amazonum regina, balteum habuit pulcherrimum. Hunc balteum possidere filia Eurysthei vehementer cupiebat. Itaque Eurystheus iussit Herculem impetum in Amazones facere. Ille multis cum copiis navem conscendit et paucis diebus in Amazonum finis pervenit, ac balteum postulavit. Eum tradere ipsa Hipporyte quidem cupivit; reliquis tamen Amazonibus[3] persuadere non potuit. Postridie Hercules proelium commisit. Multas horas utrimque quam fortissime pugnatum est Denique tamen mulieres terga verterunt et fuga salutem petierunt. Multae autem captae sunt, in quo numero erat ipsa Hippolyte. Hercules postquam balteum accepit, omnibus captivis libertatem dedit.

[Footnote 1: A fabled tribe of warlike women living in Asia Minor.]

[Footnote 2: *omnino*\, etc., *\_to have consisted entirely of women.\_*]

[Footnote 3: *Amazonibus*\, *Sec. 501.14.*]

[Illustration: HERCULES ET CERBERUS]

### THE DESCENT TO HADES AND THE DOG CER'BERUS

Iamque unus modo e duodecim laboribus relinquebatur sed inter omnis hic erat difficillimus. Iussus est enim canem Cerberum[4] ex Orco in lucem trahere. Ex Orco autem nemo antea reverterat. Praeterea Cerberus erat monstrum maxime horribile et tria capita habebat. Hercules postquam imperia Eurysthei accepit, statim profectus est et in Orcum descendit.



Ibi vero non sine summo periculo Cerberum manibus rapuit  
et ingenti cum labore ex Orco in lucem et adurbem  
Eurysthei traxit.

Sic duodecim labores illi[5] intra duodecim annos  
confecti sunt. Demum post longam vitam Hercules  
a deis receptus est et Iuppiter filio suo dedit immortalitatem.

[Footnote 4: The dog  
Cerberus guarded the gate of Orcus, the abode  
of the dead.]

[Footnote 5: *illi*],  
*\_those famous.\_*]  
[Illustration: PUERI ROMANI]

P. CORNELIUS LENTULUS: THE STORY OF A ROMAN BOY[1]

## LXI. PUBLIUS IS BORN NEAR POMPE'II

P. Cornelius Lentulus,[2] adulescens Romanus, amplissima  
familia[3] natus est; nam pater eius, Marcus, erat  
dux peritissimus, cuius virtute[4] et consilio multae  
victoriae reportatae erant; atque mater eius, Iulia,  
a clarissimis maioribus orta est. Non vero in  
urbe sed ruri[5] Publius natus est, et cum matre habitabat  
in villa quae in maris litore et sub radicibus magni  
montis sita erat. Mons autem erat Vesuvius et  
parva urbs Pompeii octo milia[6] passuum[7] aberat.  
In Italia antiqua erant plurimae quidem villae et  
pulchrae, sed inter has omnis nulla erat pulchrior  
quam villa Marci Iuliaeque. Frons villae muro  
a maris fluctibus muniebatur. Hinc mare et litora



## Page 155

et insulae longe lateque conspici[8] ac saepe naves longae et onerariae poterant. A tergo et ab utroque latere agri feracissimi patebant. Undique erat magna variorum florum copia et multa ingentium arborum genera quae aestate[9] umbram defessis agricolis gratissimam adferebant. Praeterea erant[10] in agris stabulisque multa animalium genera, non solum equi et boves sed etiam rarae aves. Etiam erat[10] magna piscina plena piscium; nam Romani piscis diligenter colebant.

[Footnote 1: This story is fiction with certain historical facts in Caesar's career as a setting. However, the events chronicled might have happened, and no doubt did happen to many a Roman youth.]

[Footnote 2: A Roman had three names, as, *Publius* \ (*given name*), *Cornelius* \ (name of the *gens* or clan), *Lentulus* \ (*family name*).]

[Footnote 3: Abl. of source, which is akin to the abl. of separation (Sec. 501.32).]

[Footnote 4: *virtute* \, *Sec. 501.24.*]

[Footnote 5: *ruri* \, *Sec. 501.36.1.*]

[Footnote 6: *milia* \, *Sec. 501.21.*]

[Footnote 7: *passuum* \, *Sec. 501.11.*]

[Footnote 8: *conspici* \, *infin. with poterant, Sec. 215. Consult the map of Italy for the approximate location of the villa.*]

[Footnote 9: *aestate* \, *Sec. 501.35.*]

[Footnote 10: How are the forms of *sum* \ *translated when they*

*precede the subject?]*  
[Illustration: CASA ROMANA]

## LXII. HIS LIFE ON THE FARM

Huius villae Davus, servus Marci, est vilicus[1] et cum Lesbia uxore omnia curat. Vilicus et uxor in casa humili, mediis in agris sita, habitant. A prima luce usque ad vesperum se[2] gravibus laboribus exercent ut omni res bene gerant.[3] Plurima enim sunt officia Davi et Lesbiae. Vilicus servos regit ne tardi sint[3]; mittit alios qui agros arent,[3] alios qui hortos inrigent,[3] et opera in[4] totum diem imponit. Lesbia autem omnibus vestimenta parat, cibum coquit, panem facit.

Non longe ab horum casa et in summo colle situm surgebat domicilium ipsius domini dominaeque amplissimum. Ibi pluris annos[5] Publius cum matre vitam felicem agebat; nam pater eius, Marcus, in terris longinquis gravia rei publicae bella gerebat nec domum[6] reverti poterat. Neque puero quidem molestum est ruri[7] vivere. Eum multae res delectant. Magnopere amat silvas, agros, equos, boves, gallinas, avis, reliquaque animalia. Saepe pluris horas[8] ad mare sedet quo[9] melius fluctus et navis spectet. Nec omnino sine comitibus erat, quod Lydia, Davi filia, quae erat eiusdem aetatis, cum eo adhuc infante ludebat, inter quos cum annis amicitia crescebat. Lydia nullum alium ducem deligebat et Publius ab puellae latere raro discedebat. Itaque sub claro Italiae sole Publius et Lydia, amici fidelissimi, per campos collisque cotidie vagabantur. Modo in silva finitima ludebant ubi Publius sagittis[10] celeribus avis deiciebat et Lydia coronis variorum florum comas suas ornabat; modo aquam et cibum portabant ad Davum servosque defessos qui agros colebant: modo in casa parva aut horas lactas in ludo consumeabant aut auxilium dabant Lesbiae, quae cibum viro et servis parabat vel alias res domesticas agebat.

## Page 156

[Footnote 1: The *vilicus*\  
*was a slave who acted as overseer of a*  
*farm. He directed the*  
*farming operations and the sale of the*  
*produce.*]

[Footnote 2: *se*\,  
*reflexive pron., object of exercent*\.]

[Footnote 3: For the  
construction, see Sec. 501.40.]

[Footnote 4: *in*\,  
*\_for\_*.]

[Footnote 5: *annos*\,  
*Sec. 501.21.*]

[Footnote 6: *domum*\,  
*Sec. 501.20.*]

[Footnote 7: *ruri*\,  
*Sec. 501.36.1.*]

[Footnote 8: *horas*\,  
*cf. annos*\, line 17.]

[Footnote 9: *quo ...*  
*spectet*\, *Secs. 349, 350.*]

[Footnote 10: *sagittis*\,  
*Sec. 501.24.*]

LXIII. MARCUS LENTULUS, THE FATHER OF PUBLIUS, IS  
SHIPWRECKED :

JULIA RECEIVES A LETTER FROM HIM

Iam Publius[1] decem annos habebat cum M. Cornelius  
Lentulus, pater eius, qui quinque annos[2] grave bellum  
in Asia gerebat, non sine gloria domum[3] revertebatur.  
Namque multa secunda proelia fecerat, maximas hostium  
copias deleverat, multas urbis populo[4] Romano inimicas  
ceperat. Primum nuntius pervenit qui a Lentulo[5]  
missus erat[6] ut profectionem suam nuntiaret.  
Deinde pluris dies[7] reditum viri optimi mater filiusque  
expectabant et animis[8] sollicitis deos immortalis  
frustra colebant. Tum demum has litteras summo  
cum gaudio acceperunt:



[9]"Marcus Iuliae suae salutem dicit. Si vales, bene est; ego valeo. Ex Graecia, quo[10] praeter spem et opinionem hodie perveni, has litteras ad te scribo. Namque navis nostra fracta est; nos autem—[11]dis est gratia—incolumes sumus. Ex Asiae[12] portu navem leni vento solvimus. Postquam[13] altum mare tenuimus [14]nec iam ullae terrae apparuerunt, caelum undique et undique fluctus, subito magna tempestas coorta est et navem vehementissime adflixit. Ventis fluctibusque adflicti[15] nec solem discernere nec cursum tenere poteramus et omnia praesentem mortem intentabant. Tris dies[16] et tris noctis[16] sine remis velisque agimur. Quarto die[17] primum terra visa est et violenter in saxa, quae non longe a litore aberant, deiecti sumus. Tum vero maiora pericula timebamus; sed nauta quidam, vir fortissimus, ex nave in fluctus iratos desiluit [18]ut funem ad litus portaret; quam rem summo labore vix effecit. Ita omnes servati sumus. Gratias igitur et honorem Neptuno debemus, qui deus nos e periculo eripuit. Nunc Athenis[19] sum, quo confugi ut mihi paucas horas ad quietem darem.[20] Quam primum autem aliam navem conducam ut iter ad Italiam reliquum conficiam et domum[21] ad meos caros revertar. Saluta nostrum Publium amicissime et valetudinem tuam cura diligenter. [22]Kalendis Martiis."

[Footnote 1: *was ten years old.*]

[Footnote 2: *annos\, Sec. 501.21.*]

[Footnote 3: *domum\, Sec. 501.20.*]

[Footnote 4: *populo\, dat. with inimicas, cf. Sec. 501.16.*]



## Page 157

[Footnote 5: *Lentulo*\\, *Sec. 501.33.*]

[Footnote 6: *ut ... nuntiaret*\\, *Sec. 501.40.*]

[Footnote 7: *dies*\\, *cf. annos, l. 9.*]

[Footnote 8: *animis*\\, *abl. of manner. Do you see one in line 15?*][Footnote 9: This is the usual form for the beginning of a Latin letter. First we have the greeting, and then the expression *Si vales, etc.* The date of the letter is usually given at the end, and also the place of writing, if not previously mentioned in the letter.]

[Footnote 10: *quo*\\, *\_where\_.*]

[Footnote 11: *dis est gratia*\\, *\_thank God\_, in our idiom.*]

[Footnote 12: Asia refers to the Roman province of that name in Asia Minor.]

[Footnote 13: *altum mare tenuimus*\\, *\_we were well out to sea.\_*]

[Footnote 14: *nec iam*\\, *\_and no longer\_.*]

[Footnote 15: *adflicti*\\, *perf. passive part. \_tossed about\_.*]

[Footnote 16: What construction?]

[Footnote 17: *die*\\, *Sec. 501.35.*]

[Footnote 18: *ut ... portaret*\\, *Sec. 501.40.*]

[Footnote 19: *Athenis*\\, *Sec. 501.36.1.*]

[Footnote 20: *darem*\\, *cf. portaret, l. 6.*]

[Footnote 21: Why not *ad domum*\\?]

[Footnote 22: *Kalendis Martiis*\\, *\_the Calends\_ or \_first of March\_;*



*abl. of time, giving the date  
of the letter.]*

## LXIV. LENTULUS REACHES HOME : PUBLIUS VISITS POMPEII WITH HIS FATHER

Post paucos dies navis M. Corneli Lentuli portum Miseni[1] petiit, qui portus non longe a Pompeiis situs est; quo in portu classis Romana ponebatur et ad pugnas navalis ornabatur. Ibi naves omnium generum conspici poterant. Iamque incredibili celeritate navis longa qua Lentulus vehebatur litori adpropinquavit; nam non solum vento sed etiam remis impellebatur. In alta puppe stabat gubernator et non procul aliqui milites Romani cum armis splendidis, inter quos clarissimus erat Lentulus. Deinde servi remis contendere cessaverunt[2]; nautae velum contraxerunt et ancoras iecerunt. Lentulus statim e navi egressus est et[3] ad villam suam properavit. Eum Iulia, Publius, totaque familia exceperunt. [4]Qui complexus, quanta gaudia fuerunt!

Postridie eius diei Lentulus filio suo dixit, “Veni, mi Publi, mecum. Pompeios iter hodie faciam. Mater tua suadet[5] ut fructus et cibaria emam. Namque pluris amicos ad cenam vocavimus et multis rebus[6] egemus. Ea hortatur ut quam primum proficiscamur.” “Libenter, mi pater,” inquit Publius. “Tecum esse mihi semper est gratum; nec Pompeios umquam vidi. Sine mora proficisci paratus sum.” Tum celeriter currum conscenderunt et ad urbis muros vecti sunt. Stabiana porta[7] urbem ingressi sunt. Publius stratas vias miratur et saxa altiora quae in medio disposita erant et altas orbitas quas rotae inter haec saxa fecerant. Etiam strepitum miratur, multitudinem, carros, fontis, domos, tabernas, forum[8] cum statuīs, templis, reliquisque aedificiis publicis.

## Page 158

[Footnote 1: Misenum had an excellent harbor, and under the emperor Augustus became the chief naval station of the Roman fleet. See map of Italy.]

[Footnote 2: Why is the infinitive used with *cessaverunt*?]

[Footnote 3: See Plate I, Frontispiece.]

[Footnote 4: Observe that these words are exclamatory.]

[Footnote 5: What construction follows *suadeo*? *Sec. 501.41.*]

[Footnote 6: *rebus*, *Sec. 501.32.*][Footnote 7: This is the abl. of the way by which motion takes place, sometimes called the abl. of route. The construction comes under the general head of the abl. of means. For the scene here described, see Plate II, p. 53, and notice especially the stepping-stones for crossing the street (*saxa quae in medio disposita erant*).]

[Footnote 8: The forum of Pompeii was surrounded by temples, public halls, and markets of various sorts. Locate Pompeii on the map.]

## LXV. A DAY AT POMPEII

Apud forum e curru descenderunt et Lentulus dixit,  
“Hic sunt multa tabernarum genera, mi Publi.  
Ecce, trans viam est popina! [1]Hoc genus tabernarum  
cibaria vendit. Fructus quoque ante ianuam stant.  
Ibi cibaria mea emam.” “Optime,”  
respondit Publius. “At ubi, mi pater, crustula  
emere possumus? Namque mater nobis imperavit [2]ut  
haec quoque pararemus. Timeo ut[3] ista popina  
vendat crustula.” “Bene dicis,”



inquit Lentulus. “At nonne vides illum fontem a dextra ubi aqua per leonis caput fluit? In illo ipso loco est taberna pistoris qui sine dubio vendit crustula.”

Brevi tempore[4] omnia erant parata, iamque [5]quinta hora erat. Deinde Lentulus et filius ad cauponam properaverunt, quod fame[6] et siti[7] urgebantur. Ibi sub arboris umbra sederunt et puero imperaverunt ut sibi[8] cibum et vinum daret. Huic imperio[9] puer celeriter paruit. Tum laeti se[10] ex labore refecerunt.

Post prandium prefecti sunt ut alia urbis spectacula viderent. Illo tempore fuerunt Pompeiis[11] multa templa, duo theatra, thermae magnumque amphitheatrum, quae omnia post paucos annos flammis atque incendiis Vesuvi et terrae motu deleta sunt. Ante hanc calamitatem autem homines [12]nihil de monte veriti sunt. In amphitheatro quidem Publius morari cupivit ut spectacula gladiatoria videret, quae in[13] illum ipsum diem proscripta erant et iam [14]re vera inceperant. Sed Lentulus dixit, “Morari, Publi, [15]vereor ut possimus. Iam decima hora est et via est longa. Tempus suadet ut quam primum domum revertamur.” Itaque servo imperavit ut equos iungeret, et solis occasu[16] ad villam pervenerunt.

[Footnote 1: We say,  
*this kind of shop*; Latin, *this kind of shops*.]

[Footnote 2: *ut ...*  
*pararemus*\, Sec. 501.41.]

[Footnote 3: How is *ut*\  
*translated after a verb of fearing*? How  
ne:\? Cf. Sec.  
501.42.]



## Page 159

[Footnote 4: *tempore*\,  
*Sec. 501.35.*]

[Footnote 5: *quinta*  
*hora*\. *The Romans numbered the hours of the day*  
*consecutively from sunrise*  
*to sunset, dividing the day, whether long*  
*or short, into twelve equal*  
*parts.*]

[Footnote 6: *fame*\  
*shows a slight irregularity in that the abl.*  
*ending -e is long.*]

[Footnote 7: *sitis*\,  
*\_thirst\_*, *has -im in the acc. sing., -i in*  
*the abl. sing., and no plural.*][Footnote 8: Observe that the reflexive pronoun  
*sibi* does not here refer to the subject of the subordinate clause in which it stands, but  
to the subject of the main clause. This so-called *\_indirect\_* use of the reflexive is often  
found in object clauses of purpose.]

[Footnote 9: What case?  
Cf. *Sec. 501.14.*]

[Footnote 10: *se*\,  
*cf. p. 205, l. 7, and note.*]

[Footnote 11: *Pompeis*\,  
*Sec. 501.36.1.*]

[Footnote 12: *nihil*  
*... veriti sunt*\, *\_had no fears of the*  
*mountain\_.*]

[Footnote 13: *in*\,  
*\_for\_.*]

[Footnote 14: *re vera*\,  
*\_in fact\_.*]

[Footnote 15: *vereor*  
*ut*\, *Sec. 501.42.*]

[Footnote 16: *occasu*\,  
*Sec. 501.35.*]

## LXVI. LENTULUS ENGAGES A TUTOR FOR HIS SON



A primis annis quidem Iulia ipsa filium suum docuerat,  
et Publius non solum [1]pure et Latine loqui poterat  
sed etiam commode legebat et scribebat. Iam Ennium[2]  
aliosque poetas legerat. Nunc vero Publius [3]duodecim  
annos habebat; itaque ei pater bonum magistrum, [4]virum  
omni doctrina et virtute ornatissimum, paravit, [5]qui  
Graeca, musicam, aliasque artis doceret. [6]Namque  
illis temporibus omnes fere gentes Graece loquebantur.  
Cum Publio alii pueri, Lentuli amicorum filii,[7]  
discebant. Nam saepe apud Romanos mos erat [8]non  
in ludum filios mittere sed domi per magistrum docere.  
Cotidie discipuli cum magistro in peristylo[9] Marci  
domus sedebant. Omnes pueri bullam auream, originis  
honestae signum, in collo gerebant, et omnes toga praetexta  
amicti erant, [10]quod nondum sedecim annos[11] nati  
sunt.

- [Footnote 1: *pure*  
... *poterat*\, *freely*, *\_could speak Latin well\_*.  
*What is the literal translation?*]
- [Footnote 2: *Ennium*\,  
*the father of Latin poetry.*]
- [Footnote 3: *duodecim*  
... *habebat*\, *cf. p. 206, l. 8, and note.*]
- [Footnote 4: *virum*\,  
*etc.*, *\_a very well-educated and worthy man\_*.  
*Observe the Latin equivalent.*]
- [Footnote 5: *qui* ...  
*doceret*\, *a relative clause of purpose. Cf.*  
*Secs. 349, 350.*]
- [Footnote 6: In Caesar's  
time Greek was spoken more widely in the  
Roman world than any other  
language.]
- [Footnote 7: *fili*i\,  
*in apposition with pueri*\.]



## Page 160

[Footnote 8: *non ... mittere*. This infinitive clause is the subject of *erat*. Cf. Sec. 216. The same construction is repeated in the next clause, *domi ... docere*. The object of *docere* is *filios* understood.]

[Footnote 9: The peristyle was an open court surrounded by a colonnade.]

[Footnote 10: At the age of sixteen a boy laid aside the *bulla* and the *toga praetexta* and assumed *toga virilis* or manly gown.]

[Footnote 11: *annos*, Sec. 501.21. The expression *nondum sedecim annos nati sunt* means literally, *they were born not yet sixteen years*. This is the usual expression for age. What is the English equivalent?]

[Illustration: TABULA ET STILUS]

## SCENE IN SCHOOL : AN EXERCISE IN COMPOSITION

DISCIPULI. Salve, magister.

MAGISTER. Vos quoque omnes, salvete. [1]Tabulasne portavistis et stilos?

D. Portavimus.

M. Iam fabulam Aesopi[2] discemus. Ego legam, vos in tabulis scribite.

Et tu, Publi, da mihi e capsula[3] Aesopi volumen.[4] Iam audite omnes: *Vulpes et Uva*.

*Vulpes* olim fame coacta uvam dependentem vidit.

Ad uvam saliebat,

sumere conans. Frustra diu conata, tandem irata erat et salire

cessans dixit: "Illa uva est acerba; acerbam uvam [5]nihil moror."

Omnia'ne scripsistis, pueri?

D. Omnia, magister.

[Footnote 1: Tablets were thin boards of wood smeared with wax. The writing was done with a stylus, a pointed instrument like a pencil, made of bone or metal, with a knob at the other end. The knob was used to smooth over the wax in making erasures and corrections.]



[Footnote 2: *Aesopi*\,  
*the famous Greek to whom are ascribed most of  
the fables current in the  
ancient world.*]

[Footnote 3: A cylindrical  
box for holding books and papers, shaped  
like a hatbox.]

[Footnote 4: Ancient  
books were written on rolls made of papy'rus.]

[Footnote 5: *nihil*  
*moror*\, *\_I care nothing for\_.*]

## LXVII. PUBLIUS GOES TO ROME TO FINISH HIS EDUCATION

Iamque Publius, [1]quindecim annos natus, [2]primis  
litterarum elementis confectis, Romam petere voluit  
ut scholas grammaticorum et philosophorum frequentaret.  
Et facillime patri[3] suo, qui ipse philosophiae studio  
tenebatur, persuasit. Itaque [4]omnibus rebus  
ad profectionem comparatis, pater filiusque equis  
animosis vecti[5] ad magnam urbem profecti sunt.  
Eos proficiscentis Iulia totaque familia votis precibusque  
prosecutae sunt. Tum per loca[6] plana et collis  
silvis vestitos viam ingressi sunt ad Nolum, quod  
oppidum eos hospitio modico excepit. Nolae[7]  
duas horas morati sunt, quod sol meridianus ardebat.  
Tum recta via[8] circiter viginti milia[9] passuum[9]





## Page 161

Capuam,[9] ad insignem Campaniae urbem, contenderunt. Eo[10] multa nocte defessi pervenerunt. [11]Postridie eius diei, somno et cibo recreati, Capua discesserunt et [13]viam Appiam ingressi, quae Capuam tangit et usque ad urbem Romam ducit, ante meridiem Sinuessam pervenerunt, quod oppidum tangit mare. Inde prima luce proficiscentes Formias[13] properaverunt, ubi Cicero, orator clarissimus, qui forte apud villam suam erat, eos benigne excepit. Hinc [14]itinere viginti quinque milium passuum facto, Tarracinam, oppidum in saxis altissimis situm, viderunt. Iamque non longe aberant paludes magnae, quae multa milia passuum undique patent. Per eas pedestris via est gravis et in nave viatores vehuntur. Itaque [15]equis relictis Lentulus et Publius navem conscenderunt, et, una nocte in transitu consumpta, Forum Appi venerunt. Tum brevi tempore Aricia eos excepit. Hoc oppidum, in colle situm, ab urbe Roma sedecim milia passuum abest. Inde declivis via usque ad latum campum ducit ubi Roma stat. Quem ad locum ubi Publius venit et Romam adhuc remotam, maximam totius orbis terrarum urbem, conspexit, summa admiratione et gaudio adfectus est. Sine mora descenderunt, et, medio intervallo quam celerrime superato, urbem porta Capena ingressi sunt.

[Footnote 1: *quindecim*\,  
*etc.*, *cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note.*]

[Footnote 2: *primis*  
*... confectis*\, *abl. abs. Cf. Sec. 501.28.*]

[Footnote 3: *patri*\,  
*dat. with persuasit*\.]

[Footnote 4: *omnibus*  
*... comparatis*\, *cf. note 2.*]

[Footnote 5: *vecti*\,  
*perf. pass. part. of veho*\.]

[Footnote 6: What is  
there peculiar about the gender of this word?]



[Footnote 7: *Nolae*\,  
*locative case, Sec. 501.36.2.*]

[Footnote 8: *via*\,  
*cf. porta*\, p. 208, l. 7, and note.]

[Footnote 9: What construction?]

[Footnote 10: *Eo*\,  
*adv. \_there\_.*]

[Footnote 11: *Postridie eius diei*\, *\_on the next day\_.*][Footnote 12: *viam Appiam*\, *the most famous of all Roman roads, the great highway from Rome to Tarentum and Brundisium, with numerous branches. Locate on the map the various towns that are mentioned in the lines that follow.*]

[Footnote 13: *Formias*\,  
*Formiae*, one of the most beautiful spots  
on this coast, and a favorite  
site for the villas of rich Romans.]

[Footnote 14: *itinere*  
*... facto*\, *abl. abs. The gen. milium*\  
*modifies itinere*\.]

[Footnote 15: *equis relictis*\. *What construction? Point out a  
similar one in the next line.*]

[Illustration: BULLA]

## LXVIII. PUBLIUS PUTS ON THE TOGA VIRILIS



## Page 162

Publius iam totum annum Romae morabatur[1] multaque urbis spectacula viderat et multos sibi[2] amicos paraverat. Ei[3] omnes favebant; [4]de eo omnes bene sperare poterant. Cotidie Publius scholas philosophorum et grammaticorum tanto studio frequentabat [5]ut aliis clarum exemplum praeberet. Saepe erat cum patre in curia[6]; quae res effecit [7]ut summos rei publicae viros et audiret et videret. Ubi [8]sedecim annos natus est, bullam[9] auream et togam praetextam more Romano deposuit atque virilem togam sumpsit. Virilis autem toga erat omnino alba, sed praetexta clavum purpureum in margine habebat. [10]Deponere togam praetextam et sumere togam virilem erat res gratissima puero Romano, quod postea vir et civis Romanus habebatur.

[11]His rebus gestis Lentulus ad uxorem suam has litteras scripsit:

[12]"Marcus Iuliae suae salutem dicit. Si vales, bene est; ego valeo. Accepi tuas litteras. Has nunc Roma per servum fidelissimum mitto ut de Publio nostro quam celerrime scias. Nam hodie ei togam virilem dedi. Ante lucem surrexi[13] et primum bullam auream de collo eius removi. Hac Laribus[14] consecrata et sacris factis, eum toga virili vestivi. Interim plures amici cum multitudine optimorum civium et honestorum clientium pervenerant [15]qui Publium domo in forum deducerent. Ibi in civitatem receptus est et nomen, Publius Cornelius Lentulus, apud civis Romanos ascriptum est. Omnes ei amicissimi fuerunt et magna[16] de eo praedicunt. Sapientior enim aequalibus[17] est et magnum ingenium habet. [18]Cura ut valeas."

[Footnote 1: *morabatur*\\, *translate as if pluperfect.*]

[Footnote 2: *sibi*\\, *\_for himself\_.*]

[Footnote 3: *Ei*\\, *why dat.?*]



[Footnote 4: *de ... poterant*\, in English, *\_all regarded him as a very promising youth;\_ but what does the Latin say?*]

[Footnote 5: *ut ... praeberet*\, *Sec. 501.43.*]

[Footnote 6: *curia*\, *a famous building near the Roman Forum.*]

[Footnote 7: *ut ... audiret et videret*\, *Sec. 501.44.*]

[Footnote 8: *sedecim, etc.*\, *cf. p. 210, l. 5, and note.*]

[Footnote 9: *bullam*\, *cf. p. 210, l. 3, and note 4.*]

[Footnote 10: These infinitive clauses are the subject of *erat*\. *Cf. Sec. 216.*]

[Footnote 11: *His rebus gestis*\, *i.e. the assumption of the \_toga virilis\_ and attendant ceremonies.*]

[Footnote 12: Compare the beginning of this letter with the one on page 206.]

[Footnote 13: *surrexi*\, *from surgo*\.]

[Footnote 14: The Lares were the spirits of the ancestors, and were worshiped as household gods. All that the house contained was confided to their care, and sacrifices were made to them daily.]

[Footnote 15: *qui ... deducerent*\, *Sec. 350.*]



## Page 163

[Footnote 16: *magna*\, *\_great things\_, a neuter adj. used as a noun.*]

[Footnote 17: *aequalibus*\, *Sec. 501.34.*]

[Footnote 18: *Cura ut valeas*\, *\_take good care of your health\_. How does the Latin express this idea?]*

### LXIX. PUBLIUS JOINS CAESAR'S ARMY IN GAUL

Publius iam adulescens postquam togam virilem sumpsit, aliis rebus studere incepit et praesertim usu[1] armorum se[2] diligenter exercuit. Magis magisque amavit illas artis quae militare animum delectant. Iamque erant [3]qui ei cursum militare praedicerent. Nec sine causa, quod certe patris isigne exemplum [4]ita multum trahebat. [5]Paucis ante annis C. Iulius Caesar, ducum Romanorum maximus, consul creatus erat et hoc tempore in Gallia bellum grave gerebat. Atque in exercitu eius plures adulescentes militabant, apud quos erat amicus quidam Publi. Ille Publium crebris litteris vehementer hortabatur [6]ut iter in Galliam faceret. Neque Publius recusavit, et, multis amicis ad portam urbis prosequentibus, ad Caesaris castra profectus est. Quarto die postquam iter ingressus est, ad Alpis, montis altissimos, pervenit. His summa difficultate superatis, tandem Gallorum in finibus erat. Primo autem veritus est ut[7] castris Romanis adpropinquare posset, quod Galli, maximis copiis coactis, Romanos obsidebant et vias omnis iam clausuerant. His rebus commotus Publius vestem Gallicam induit ne a Gallis caperetur, et ita per hostium copias incolumis ad castra pervenire potuit. Intra munitiones acceptus, a Caesare benigne exceptus est. Imperator fortem adulescentem amplissimis verbis laudavit et eum [8]tribunum militum creavit.



[Footnote 1: Abl. of means.]

[Footnote 2: *se*\, reflexive object of *exercuit*\.]

[Footnote 3: *qui ... praedicerent*\, *Sec. 501.45.*]

[Footnote 4: *ita multum trahebat*\, *\_had a great influence in that direction\_.*]

[Footnote 5: *Paucis ante annis*\, *\_a few years before\_*; in Latin, *\_before by a few years\_*, *ante*\ being an adverb and *annis*\ *abl. of degree of difference.*]

[Footnote 6: *ut ... faceret*\, *Sec. 501.41.*]

[Footnote 7: *ut*\, *how translated here? See Sec. 501.42.*]

[Footnote 8: The *military tribune* was a commissioned officer nearly corresponding to our rank of colonel. The tribunes were often inexperienced men, so Caesar did not allow them much responsibility.]

[Illustration: IMPEDIMENTA]

## HOW THE ROMANS MARCHED AND CAMPED



## Page 164

Exercitus qui in hostium finibus bellum genit multis periculis circumdatus est. [1]Quae pericula ut vitaret, Romani summam curam adhibere solebant. Adpropinquantes copias hostium agmen ita disponebant [2]ut imperator ipse cum plaribus legionibus expeditis[3] primum agmen duceret. Post eas copias impedimenta[4] totius exercitus conlocabant. [5]Tum legiones quae proxime conscriptae erant totum agmen claudebant. Equites quoque in omnis partis dimittebantur qui loca explorarent; et centuriones praemittebantur ut locum castris idoneum deligerent. Locus habebatur idoneus castris [6]qui facile defendi posset et prope aquam esset. Quae de causa castra[7] in colle ab utraque parte arduo, a fronte leniter declivi saepe ponebantur; vel locus paludibus cinctus vel in fluminis ripis situs deligebatur. Ad locum postquam exercitus pervenit, alii militum [8]in armis erant, alii castra munire incipiebant. Nam [9]quo tutiores ab hostibus milites essent, neve incauti et imparati opprimerentur, castra fossa lata et vallo alto muniebant. In castris portae quattuor erant ut eruptio militum omnis in partis fieri posset. In angulis castrorum erant turres de quibus tela in hostis coniciebantur. [10]Talibus in castris qualia descripsimus Publius a Caesare exceptus est.

[Footnote 1: *Quae pericula*\, *object of* vitarent\. It is placed first to make a proper connection with the preceding sentence.]

[Footnote 2: *ut ... duceret*\, *Sec. 501.43.*]

[Footnote 3: *expeditis*\, *i.e. without baggage and ready for action.*][Footnote 4: *impedimenta*\. *Much of the baggage was carried in carts and on beasts of burden, as is shown above; but, besides this, each soldier (unless expeditus) carried a heavy pack. See also picture, p. 159.*]

[Footnote 5: The newest legions were placed in the rear, because they were the least reliable.]



[Footnote 6: *qui ...  
posset ... esset*\, *Sec. 501.45.*]

[Footnote 7: *castra*\,  
*subject of ponebantur*\.]

[Footnote 8: *in armis  
erant*\, *\_stood under arms\_.*]

[Footnote 9: *quo ...  
essent*\. *When is quo*\ used to introduce a  
purpose clause? See *Sec.*  
*350.I.*]

[Footnote 10: *Talibus  
in castris qualia*\, *\_in such a camp as\_.*  
*It is important to remember  
the correlatives talis ... qualis*\,  
*such ... as.*]

[Illustration: CENTURIO]

## LXX. THE RIVAL CENTURIONS



## Page 165

Illis in castris erant duo centuriones,[1] fortissimi viri, T. Pullo et L. Vorenius, quorum neuter alteri virtute[2] cedere volebat. Inter eos iam multos annos infensum certamen gerebatur. Tum demum finis controversiae hoc modo[3] factus est. Die tertio postquam Publius pervenit, hostes, maioribus copiis coactis, acerrimum impetum in castra fecerunt. Tum Pullo, [4]cum Romani tardiores[5] viderentur, “Cur dubitas,” inquit, “Vorene? Quam commodiorem occasionem expectas? Hic dies de virtute nostra iudicabit.” Haec[6] cum dixisset, extra munitiones processit et in eam hostium partem quae cofertissima [7]videbatur inrupit. Neque Vorenius quidem tum vallo[8] sese continet, sed Pullonem subsequitur. Tum Pullo pilum in hostis immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit. Hunc percussum et exanimatum hostes scutis protegunt et in Pullonem omnes tela coniciunt. Eius scutum transfigitur et telum in balteo defigitur. Hic casus vaginam avertit et dextram manum eius gladium educere conantis[9] moratur. Eum ita impeditum hostes circumsistunt.

Tum vero [10]ei laboranti Vorenius, cum sit inimicus, tamen auxilium dat. Ad hunc confestim [11]a Pullone omnis multitudo se convertit. Gladio comminus pugnat Vorenius, atque, uno interfecto, reliquos paulum propellit. Sed instans cupidius[12] infelix, [13]pede se fallente, concidit.

Huic rursus circumvento auxilium dat Pullo, atque ambo incolumes, pluribus interfectis, summa cum laude intra munitiones se recipiunt. Sic inimicorum alter alteri auxilium dedit nec de eorum virtute quisquam iudicare potuit.

[Footnote 1: A centurion commanded a company of about sixty men. He was a common soldier who had been promoted from the ranks for his courage and fighting qualities. The centurions were the real leaders of the men in battle. There were sixty of them in a legion. The centurion in the picture (p. 216) has in his hand a staff with a crook at one end, the symbol of his authority.]

[Footnote 2: *virtute*],  
*Sec. 501.30.*]



[Footnote 3: Abl. of manner.]

[Footnote 4: *cum ... viderentur*\, *Sec. 501.46.*]

[Footnote 5: *tardiores*\, *\_too slow\_, a not infrequent translation of the comparative degree.*]

[Footnote 6: *Haec*\, *obj. of dixisset*\. It is placed before *cum* to make a close connection with the preceding sentence. What is the construction of *dixisset*\?]

[Footnote 7: *videbatur*, *inrupit*\. Why is the imperfect used in one case and the perfect in the other? Cf. *Sec. 190.*]

[Footnote 8: *vallo*\, *abl. of means, but in English we should say \_within the rampart\_.* Cf. *ingenti stabulo*\, p. 201, l. 13, and note.]

[Footnote 9: *conantis*\, *pres. part. agreeing with eius*\.]

[Footnote 10: *ei laboranti*\, *indir. obj. of dat.*]



## Page 166

[Footnote 11: *a Pullone*\  
\_from Pullo\_, abl. of separation.]

[Footnote 12: *cupidius*\  
\_too eagerly\_.]

[Footnote 13: *pede*  
*se fallente*\  
lit. *the foot deceiving itself*;  
in our idiom, *his foot slipping*\_.]

### LXXI. THE ENEMY BESIEGING THE CAMP ARE REPULSED

Cum iam sex horas pugnatum esset[1] ac non solum vires sed etiam tela Romanos deficerent[1], atque hostes acrius instarent,[1] et vallum scindere fossamque complere incepissent,[1] Caesar, vir rei militaris peritissimus, suis imperavit ut proelium paulisper intermitterent,[2] et, signo dato, ex castris erumperent.[2] [3]Quod iussi sunt faciunt, et subito ex omnibus portis erumpunt. Atque tam celeriter milites concurrerunt et tam propinqui erant hostes[4] ut spatium pila coniciendi[5] non daretur. Itaque reiectis pilis [6]comminus gladiis pugnatum est. Diu et audacter hostes restiterunt et in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt ut a dextro cornu vehementer [7]multitudine suorum aciem Romanam premerent. [8]Id imperator cum animadvertisset, Publium adolescentem cum equitatu misit qui laborantibus[9] auxilium daret. Eius impetum sustinere non potuerunt hostes[10] et omnes terga verterunt. Eos in fugam datos Publius subsecutus est usque ad flumen Rhenum, quod ab eo loco quinque milia passuum aberat. Ibi pauci salutem sibi reppererunt. Omnibus reliquis interfectis, Publius et equites in castra sese receperunt. De hac calamitate finitimae gentes cum certiores factae essent, ad Caesarem legatos miserunt et se suaque omnia dediderunt.

[Footnote 1: *pugnatum*  
*esset, deficerent, instarent, incepissent*].



*These are all subjunctives  
with cum\.* Cf. Sec. 501.46.]

[Footnote 2: *intermitterent*,  
*erumperent\*. What use of the  
subjunctive?]

[Footnote 3: *Quod\*,  
*etc.*, *\_they do as ordered\_*. The antecedent of  
*quod\* is *id\* understood,  
*which would be the object of faciunt\*.]

[Footnote 4: *ut ...*  
*daretur\*. Is this a clause of purpose or of  
result?]

[Footnote 5: *coniciendi\*,  
Sec. 402.]

[Footnote 6: *comminus*  
*gladiis pugnatum est\*, *\_a hand-to-hand*  
*conflict was waged with swords\_*.]

[Footnote 7: *multitudine*  
*suorum\*, *\_by their numbers\_*. *suorum\* is  
used as a noun. What  
is the literal translation of this expression?]

[Footnote 8: *Id* *imperator*.  
*Id\* is the obj. and *imperator\* the  
subj. of *animadvertisset\*.]

[Footnote 9: *laborantibus\*.  
*This participle agrees with iis\*  
understood, the indir. obj.  
of *daret*; *qui ... daret\* is a purpose  
clause, Sec. 501.40.]

[Footnote 10: *hostes\*,  
*subj. of potuerunt\*.]

## LXXII. PUBLIUS GOES TO GERMANY : ITS GREAT FORESTS AND STRANGE ANIMALS



## Page 167

Inita aestate Caesar litteris certior fiebat et per exploratores cognoscebat pluris civitates Galliae novis rebus studere,[1] et contra populum Romanum coniurare[1] obsidesque [2]inter se dare,[1] atque cum his Germanos quosdam quoque sese coniuncturos esse.[1] His litteris nuntiisque commotus Caesar constituit quam celerrime in Gallos proficisci,[3] ut eos inopinantis opprimeret, et Labienum legatum cum duabus legionibus peditum et duobus milibus equitum in Germanos mittere.[3] [4]Itaque re frumentaria comparata castra movit. Ab utroque[5] res bene gesta est; nam Caesar tam celeriter in hostium finis pervenit ut spatium [6]copias cogendi non daretur[4]; et Labienus de Germanis tam grave supplicium sumpsit ut nemo ex ea gente in reliquum tempus Gallis auxilium dare auderet.[7]

Hoc iter in Germaniam Publius quoque fecit et, [8]cum ibi moraretur, multa mirabilia vidit. Praesertim vero ingentem silvam mirabatur, quae tantae magnitudinis esse dicebatur [9]ut nemo eam transire posset, nec quisquam sciret aut initium aut finem. Qua de re plura cognoverat a milite quodam qui olim captus a Germanis multos annos ibi incoluit. Ille[10] de silva dicens, “Infinitae magnitudinis est haec silva,” inquit; “neque quisquam est [11]huius Germaniae [12]qui initium eius sciat aut ad finem adierit. Nascuntur illic multa talia animalium genera qualia reliquis in locis non inveniuntur. Sunt boves qui unum[13] cornu habent; sunt etiam animalia quae appellantur alces. Hae nullos crurum[14] articulos habent. Itaque, si forte conciderunt, sese erigere nullo modo possunt. Arbores habent pro[15] cubilibus; ad eas se applicant atque ita reclinatae quietem capiunt. Tertium est genus eorum qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt paulo minores elephantis.[16] Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas. Neque homini neque ferae parcunt.[17]”

[Footnote 1: Observe that all these infinitives are in indirect statements after *certior*



*fiebat\, \_he was informed\_, and  
cognoscebat\, he learned.  
Cf. Sec. 501.48, 49.]*

[Footnote 2: *inter  
se\, \_to each other\_.]*

[Footnote 3: *proficisci,  
mittere\, These infinitives depend upon  
constituit\,.*]

[Footnote 4: Before beginning a campaign, food had to be provided. Every fifteen days grain was distributed. Each soldier received about two pecks. This he carried in his pack, and this constituted his food, varied occasionally by what he could find by foraging.]

[Footnote 5: Abl. of  
personal agent, Sec. 501.33.]

[Footnote 6: *copias  
cogendi\, Sec. 501.37.1.]*

[Footnote 7: *daretur,  
auderet\, Sec. 501.43. auderet\ is not from  
audio\,.*]

[Footnote 8: *cum ...  
moraretur\, Sec. 501.46.]*

[Footnote 9: *ut ...  
posset, ... sciret\, Sec. 501.43.]*

[Footnote 10: *Ille\,  
subj. of inquit\,.*]



## Page 168

[Footnote 11: *huius Germaniae*\, *\_of this part of Germany\_*.]

[Footnote 12: *qui ... sciat ... adierit*\, *Sec. 501.45.*]

[Footnote 13: *unum*\, *\_only one\_*.]

[Footnote 14: *crurum*\, *from crus*.]

[Footnote 15: *pro*\, *\_for, in place of\_*.]

[Footnote 16: *elephantis*\, *Sec. 501.34.*]

[Footnote 17: *parcunt*\, *What case is used with this verb?*]

[Illustration: VINEA]

## LXXIII. THE STORMING OF A CITY

Publius pluris dies in Germania moratus[1] in Galliam rediit, et ad Caesaris castra se contulit. Ille quia moleste ferebat Gallos[2] eius regionis obsides dare recusavisse et exercitui frumentum praebere noluisse, constituit eis[3] bellum inferre. Agris vastatis, vicis incensis, pervenit ad oppidum validissimum quod et natura et arte munitum erat. Cingebatur muro viginti quinque pedes[4] alto. A lateribus duositum, praerupto fastigio ad planitiem vergegat; a quarto tantum[5] latere aditus erat facilis. Hoc oppidum oppugnare, [6]cum opus esset difficillimum, tamen constituit Caesar. Et castris munitis Publio negotium dedit ut res [7]ad oppugnandum necessarias pararet.

Romanorum autem oppugnatio est haec.[8] Primum turres aedificantur quibus milites in summum murum evadere possint[9]; vineae[10] fiunt quibus tecti milites ad murum succedant; plutei[11] parantur post quos



milites tormenta[12] administrent; sunt quoque arietes qui murum et portas discutiant. His omnibus rebus comparatis, deinde [13]agger ab ea parte ubi aditus est facillimus exstruitur et cum vineis ad ipsum oppidum agitur. Tum turris in aggere promovetur; arietibus qui sub vineis conlocati erant murus et portae discutuntur; ballistis, catapultis, reliquisque tormentis lapides et tela in oppidum coniciuntur. Postremo cum iam turris et agger altitudinem muri adaequant et arietes moenia perfregerunt,[14] signo dato milites inruunt et oppidum expugnant.

[Footnote 1: *moratus*\\.

*Is this part. active or passive in meaning?]*

[Footnote 2: *Gallos*\\,

*subj. acc. of the infins. recusavisse*\\ and

*noluisse*\\.

*The indirect statement depends upon moleste ferebat*\\.]

[Footnote 3: *eis*\\,

*Sec. 501.15.]*

[Footnote 4: *pedes*\\,

*Sec. 501.21.]*

[Footnote 5: *tantum*\\,

*adv. \_only\_.]*

[Footnote 6: *cum ...*

*esset*\\, *a clause of concession, Sec. 501.46.]*

[Footnote 7: *ad oppugnandum*\\,

*a gerund expressing purpose.]*

[Footnote 8: *haec*\\,

*\_as follows\_.]*

[Footnote 9: *possint*\\,

*subjv. of purpose. Three similar*

*constructions follow.]*



## Page 169

[Footnote 10: *vineae*. These *vineae* were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were working to take a fortification. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers.]

[Footnote 11: *plutei*,  
*large screens or shields with small wheels*  
*attached to them. These*  
*were used to protect besiegers while moving*  
*up to a city or while serving*

*the engines of war.][Footnote 12: tormenta. The engines of war were chiefly the catapult for shooting great arrows, and the ballista, for hurling large stones. They had a range of about two thousand feet and were very effective.][Footnote 13: The agger, or mound, was of chief importance in a siege. It was begun just out of reach of the missiles of the enemy, and then gradually extended towards the point to be attacked. At the same time its height gradually increased until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. It was made of earth and timber, and had covered galleries running through it for the use of the besiegers. Over or beside the agger a tower was moved up to the wall, often with a battering-ram (aries) in the lowest story. (See picture, p. 221.)]*

[Footnote 14: *perfrugerunt*,  
*from perfringo*.]

[Illustration: BALLISTA]

[Illustration: TURRES, ARIETES, VINEA]

## LXXIV. THE CITY IS TAKEN : THE CAPTIVES ARE QUESTIONED

Omnibus rebus necessariis ad oppugnandum a Publio comparatis, deliberatur in concilio quod consilium [1]oppidi expugnandi ineant.[2] Tum unus[3] ex centurionibus, vir rei militaris peritissimus, “Ego suadeo,” inquit, “ut ab ea parte, ubi aditus sit[5] facillimus, aggerem exstruamus[4] et turrim promoveamus[6] atque ariete admoto simul murum discutere conemur.[5]” [6]Hoc consilium cum omnibus placeret, Caesar concilium dimisit. Deinde milites hortatus ut priores victorias memoria[7] tenerent, iussit aggerem exstrui, turrim et arietem admoveri. Neque oppidanis[8] consilium



defuit. Alii ignem et omne genus telorum de muro in turrim coniecerunt, alii ingentia saxa in vineas et arietem devolverunt. Diu utrimque acerrime pugnatum est. Ne vulnerati quidem pedem rettulerunt. Tandem, [9]de tertia vigilia, Publius, quem Caesar illi operi[10] praefecerat, nuntiavit partem[11] muri ictibus arietis labefactam concidisse. Qua re audita Caesar signum dat; milites inruunt et magna cum caede hostium oppidum capiunt.

Postridie eius diei, hoc oppido expugnato, [12]captivorum qui nobilissimi sunt ad imperatorem ante praetorium[13] adducuntur. Ipse, lorica aurata et paludamento purpureo insignis, captivos per interpretem in hunc modum interrogat:[14] Vos qui estis[15]?

INTERPRES. Rogat imperator qui sitis.



## Page 170

CAPTIVI. Filii regis sumus.

INTERPRES. Dicunt se filios esse regis.

IMPERATOR. Cur mihi tantas iniurias intulistis?

INTERPRES. Rogat cur sibi tantas iniurias intuleritis.

CAPTIVI. Iniurias ei non intulimus sed pro patria bellum gessimus. Semper volumus Romanis esse amici, sed Romani sine causa nos domo patriaque expellere conati sunt.

INTERPRES. [16]Negant se iniurias tibi intulisse, sed pro patria bellum gessisse. [17]Semper se voluisse amicos Romanis esse, sed Romanos sine causa se domo patriaque expellere conatos esse.

IMPERATOR. [18]Manebitisne in reliquum tempus in fide, hac rebellione condonata?

Tum vero captivi multis cum lacrimis iuraverunt se in fide mansuros esse, et Caesar eos incolumis domum dimisit.

[Footnote 1: *oppidi expugnandi*\. Is this a gerund or a gerundive construction? Cf. Sec. 501.37.]

[Footnote 2: *ineant*\. Sec. 501.50.]

[Footnote 3: *unus*\. subj. of inquit\.]

[Footnote 4: *sit*\. This is a so-called subjunctive by attraction, which means that the clause beginning with *ubi*\ stands in such close connection with the subjv. clause beginning with *ut*\, that its verb is attracted into the same mood.]

[Footnote 5: All these verbs are in the same construction.]

[Footnote 6: *Hoc consilium*\, subj. of placeret\. For the order



cf. *Haec cum*\, *etc.*, p.  
215, l. 22, and *note*; *Id imperator cum*\,  
p. 217, l. 8.]

[Footnote 7: *memoria*\,  
*abl. of means*.]

[Footnote 8: *oppidanis*\,  
*Sec. 501.15*.]

[Footnote 9: Between  
twelve and three o'clock in the morning.  
The  
night was divided into four  
watches.]

[Footnote 10: *operi*\,  
*Sec. 501.15*.]

[Footnote 11: *partem*\,  
*subj. acc. of concidisse*\.]

[Footnote 12: *captivorum*  
... *sunt*\, *\_the noblest of the captives\_*.]

[Footnote 13: The general's  
headquarters.]

[Footnote 14: Study carefully  
these direct questions, indirect  
questions, and indirect statements.]

[Footnote 15: See Plate  
III, p. 148.]

[Footnote 16: *Negant*\,  
*etc.*, *\_they say that they have not\_*, *etc.*  
*Negant*\ is equivalent  
to *dicunt non*\, and the negative modifies  
*intulisse*\, but not the  
remainder of the indirect statement.]

[Footnote 17: *Semper*\,  
*etc.*, *\_that they have always\_*, *etc.*]

[Footnote 18: *Manebitisne*  
*in fide*\, *\_will you remain loyal?\_*]

#### LXXV. CIVIL WAR BREAKS OUT BETWEEN CAESAR AND POMPEY THE BATTLE OF PHARSALIA

Ne confecto[1] quidem bello Gallico, [2]bellum civile  
inter Caesarem et Pompeium exortum est. Nam Pompeius,



qui summum imperium petebat, senatui persuaserat ut Caesarem rei publicae hostem[3] iudicaret et exercitum eius dimitti iuberet. Quibus cognitis rebus Caesar exercitum suum dimittere recusavit, atque, hortatus milites ut ducem totiens victorem ab inimicorum iniuriis defenderent, imperavit ut se Romam sequerentur. Summa cum alacritate milites paruerunt, et transito Rubicone[4] initium belli civilis factum est.

## Page 171

Italiae urbes quidem omnes fere [5]rebus Caesaris favebant et eum benigne exceperunt. Qua re commotus Pompeius ante Caesaris adventum Roma excessit et Brundisium[6] pervenit, inde [7]paucis post diebus cum omnibus copiis ad Epirum mare transiit. Eum Caesar cum septem legionibus et quingentis equitibus secutus est, et insignis inter Caesaris comitatum erat Publius.

Pluribus levioribus proeliis factis, tandem copiae adversae ad Pharsalum[8] in Thessalia sitam castra posuerunt. Cum Pompei exercitus esset bis tantus quantus Caesaris, tamen erant multi qui veteranas legiones quae Gallos et Germanos superaverant vehementer timebant. Quos[9] [10]ante proelium commissum Labienus[11] legatus, qui ab Caesare nuper defecerat, ita adlocutus est: “[12]Nolite existimare hunc esse exercitum veteranorum militum. Omnibus interfui proeliis[13] neque temere incognitam rem pronuntio. Perexigua pars illius exercitus qui Gallos superavit adhuc superest. Magna pars occisa est, multi domum discesserunt, multi sunt relict in Italia. Hae copiae quas videtis in [14]citeriore Gallia nuper conscriptae sunt.” Haec[15] cum dixisset, iuravit se nisi victorem in castra non reversurum esse. [16]Hoc idem Pompeius et omnes reliqui iuraverunt, et magna spe et laetitia, sicut certam ad victoriam, copiae e castris exierunt.

Item Caesar, animo[17] ad dimicandum paratus, exercitum suum eduxit et septem cohortibus [18]praesidio castris relictis copias triplici acie instruxit. Tum, militibus studio pugnae ardentibus, tuba signum dedit. Milites procurrerunt et pilis missis gladios strinxerunt. Neque vero virtus hostibus defuit. Nam et tela missa sustinuerunt et impetum gladiatorum exceperunt et ordines conservaverunt. Utrisque diu et acriter pugnatum est nec quisquam pedem rettulit. Tum equites Pompei aciem Caesaris circumire conati sunt. Quod[19] ubi Caesar animadvertit, tertiam aciem,[20] quae ad id tempus quieta fuerat, procurrare iussit. Tum vero integrorum impetum[21] defessi hostes sustinere



non potuerunt et omnes terga verterunt. Sed Pompeius de fortunis suis desperans se in castra equo contulit, inde mox cum paucis equitibus effugit.

[Footnote 1: With *ne*:

... *quidem*\ *the emphatic word stands between*

*the two.*][Footnote 2: The Civil War was caused by the jealousy and rivalry between Caesar and Pompey. It resulted in the defeat and subsequent death of Pompey and the elevation of Caesar to the lordship of the Roman world.]

[Footnote 3: *hostem*\,

*predicate accusative, Sec. 501.22.*][Footnote 4: The Rubicon was a small stream in northern Italy that marked the boundary of Caesar's province. By crossing it with an armed force Caesar declared war upon Pompey and the existing government. Caesar crossed the Rubicon early in the year 49 B.C.]

[Footnote 5: *rebus*

*Caesaris favebant*\, *“favored Caesar's side”*.

*In*

*what case is rebus*\?]



## Page 172

[Footnote 6: *Brundisium*\, a famous port in southern Italy whence ships sailed for Greece and the East. See map.]

[Footnote 7: *paucis post diebus*\, *\_a few days later\_*; literally, *\_afterguards by a few days\_*. Cf. *paucis ante annis*\, p. 213, l. 12, and note.]

[Footnote 8: The battle of Pharsalia was fought on August 9, 48 B.C. In importance it ranks as one of the great battles of the world.]

[Footnote 9: *Quos*\, *obj. of adlocutus est*\.]

[Footnote 10: *ante proelium commissum*\, *\_before the beginning of the battle\_*.][Footnote 11: *Labienus*\, Caesar's most faithful and skillful lieutenant in the Gallic War. On the outbreak of the Civil War, in 49 B.C., he deserted Caesar and joined Pompey. His defection caused the greatest joy among the Pompeian party; but he disappointed the expectations of his new friends, and never accomplished anything of importance. He fought against his old commander in several battles and was slain at the battle of Munda in Spain, 45 B.C.]

[Footnote 12: *Nolite existimare*\, *don't think*.]

[Footnote 13: *proeliis*\, *Sec. 501.15*.]

[Footnote 14: *citeriore Gallia*\. This name is applied to Cisalpine Gaul, or Gaul south of the Alps.]

[Footnote 15: *Haec*\, *obj. of dixisset*\.]

[Footnote 16: *Hoc idem*\, *obj. of iuraverunt*\.]





[Footnote 17: *animo*\\,  
*Sec. 501.30.*]

[Footnote 18: *praesidio*  
*castris*\\, *Sec. 501.17.*]

[Footnote 19: *Quod*\\,  
*obj. of animadvertit*\\.]

[Footnote 20: *aciem*\\,  
*subj. of procurrare*\\.]

[Footnote 21: *impetum*\\,  
*obj. of sustinere*\\.]

[Illustration: SIGNIFER]

## LXXVI. THE TRIUMPH OF CAESAR

Pompeio amicisque eius superatis atque omnibus hostibus ubique victis, Caesar imperator Romam rediit et [1]extra moenia urbis in campo Martio castra posuit. Tum vero amplissimis honoribus adfectus est. Dictator creatus est, et ei triumphus a senatu est decretus. [2]Quo die de Gallis triumphum egit, tanta multitudo hominum in urbem undique confluit [3]ut omnia loca essent conferta. Tempia patebant, arae fumabant, columnae sertis ornatae erant. [4]Cum vero pompa urbem intraret, quantus hominum fremitus ortus est! Primum per portam ingressi sunt senatus et magistratus. Secuti sunt tibicines, signiferi, pedites laurea coronati canentes: “Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat, qui subegit Galliam,” et “Mille, mille, mille, mille Gallos trucidavimus.” Multi praedam captarum urbium portabant, arma, omnia belli instrumenta. Secuti sunt equites, animosis atque splendidissime ornatis equis vecti, inter quos Publius adulescens fortissimus habebatur. Adducebantur tauri, arietes, [5]qui dis immortalibus immolarentur. Ita longo agmine progrediens exercitus [6]sacra via per forum in Capitolium perrexit.

## Page 173

Imperator ipse cum urbem intraret, undique laeto clamore multitudinis salutatus est. Stabat in curru aureo quem quattuor albi equi vehebant. Indutus [7]toga picta, altera manu habenas et lauream tenebat, altera eburneum sceptrum. Post eum servus in curru stans auream coronam super caput eius tenebat. Ante currum miserrimi captivi, reges principesque superatarum gentium, catenis vincti, progrediebantur; et viginti quattuor lictores[8] laureatas fascis ferentes et signiferi currum Caesaris comitabantur. Concludit agmen multitudo captivorum, qui, in servitutem redacti,[9] demisso vultu, vinctis[10] bracchiis, sequuntur; quibuscum veniunt longissimo ordine milites, etiam hi praedam vel insignia militaria ferentes.

[Illustration: LICTORES CUM FASCIBUS]

Caesar cum Capitolium ascendisset, in templo Iovi Capitolino sacra fecit. Simul[11] captivorum qui nobilissimi erant, abducti in carcerem,[12] interfecti sunt. Sacris factis Caesar de Capitolio descendit et in foro miitibus suis honores militaris dedit eisque pecuniam ex belli praeda distribuit.

His omnibus rebus confectis, Publius Caesarem valere[13] iussit et quam celerrime ad villam contendit ut patrem matremque salutaret.

[14]De rebus gestis P. Corneli Lentuli hactenus.

[Footnote 1: A victorious general with his army was not allowed to enter the city until the day of his triumph. A triumph was the greatest of all military honors.]

[Footnote 2: *Quo die*\, \_on the day that\_, abl. of time.]

[Footnote 3: *ut ... essent*\, Sec. 501.43.]

[Footnote 4: *Cum ...*



*intraret\, Sec. 501.46.]*

[Footnote 5: *qui ...*

*immolarentur\, Sec. 501.40.][Footnote 6: The Sacred Way was a noted street running along one side of the Forum to the base of the Capitoline Hill, on whose summit stood the magnificent temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. This route was always followed by triumphal processions.]*

[Footnote 7: The *toga*

*picta\ worn by a general in his triumph was a splendid robe of Tyrian purple covered with golden stars. See Plate*

*IV, p. 213.][Footnote 8: The lictors were a guard of honor that attended the higher magistrates and made a way for them through the streets. On their shoulders they carried the *fasces*, a bundle of rods with an ax in the middle, symbolizing the power of the law.]*

[Footnote 9: *demisso*

*vultu\, \_with downcast countenance\_.]*

[Footnote 10: *vinctis\,*

*from vincio\.*]

[Footnote 11: *Simul\,*

*etc., \_At the same time those of the captives who were the noblest\_.]*

[Footnote 12: The prison

was a gloomy dungeon on the lower slopes of the Capitoline Hill.]

[Footnote 13: *valere*

*iussit\, \_bade farewell to\_.]*

# Page 174

[Footnote 14: This sentence marks the end of the story.]

## APPENDIX I

DECLENSIONS, CONJUGATIONS, NUMERALS, ETC.

### NOUNS

460. Nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished by the final letter of the stem and by the termination of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION—A-stems, Gen. Sing. -ae

SECOND DECLENSION—O-stems, Gen. Sing. -i

THIRD DECLENSION—Consonant stems and I-stems, Gen. Sing. -is

FOURTH DECLENSION—U-stems, Gen. Sing. -u:s

FIFTH DECLENSION—E-stems, Gen. Sing. -e:i or -ei

#### 461. FIRST DECLENSION. A-STEMS

domina, *lady*    STEM domina-  
BASE domin-

SINGULAR	PLURAL
TERMINATIONS	TERMINATIONS
Nom. domina -a	dominae -ae
Gen. dominae -ae	domina:rum -a:rum



Dat. dominae -ae      domini:s   -i:s  
 Acc. dominam -am      domina:s   -a:s  
 Abl. domina: -a:      domini:s   -i:s

*a. Dea\ and filia\*  
 have the termination -a:bus in the dative  
 and ablative plural.

#### 462. SECOND DECLENSION. O-STEMS

##### *a. MASCULINES IN -us*

dominus, *master*    STEM domino-  
 BASE domin-

SINGULAR	PLURAL
TERMINATIONS	TERMINATIONS
Nom. dominus -us	domini: -i:
Gen. domini: -i:	domino:rum -o:rum
Dat. domino: -o:	domini:s -i:s
Acc. dominum -um	domino:s -o:s
Abl. domino: -o:	domini:s -i:s

1. Nouns in -us of the second declension have the termination -e in the vocative singular, as *domine\*.
2. Proper names in -ius, and *filius\*, end in -i: in the vocative singular, and the accent rests on the penult, as Vergi'li:, fi:li:\.

##### *b. NEUTERS IN -um*

pi:lum, *spear*    STEM  
 pi:lo-    BASE pi:l-

SINGULAR	PLURAL
TERMINATIONS	TERMINATIONS
Nom. pi:lum -um	pi:la -a
Gen. pi:li: -i:	pi:lo:rum -o:rum
Dat. pi:lo: -o:	pi:li:s -i:s
Acc. pi:lum -um	pi:la -a
Abl. pi:lo: -o:	pi:li:s -i:s

1. Masculines in -ius and neuters in -ium end in -i: in the



genitive singular, *not* in -ii:, and the accent rests on the penult.

c. MASCULINES IN -er AND  
-ir

puer, *boy* ager, *field* vir, *man*

STEMS puero- agro- viro-

BASES puer- agr- vir-

#### SINGULAR

#### TERMINATIONS

Nom.	puer	ager	vir	—
Gen.	pueri:	agri:	viri:	-i:
Dat.	puero:	agro:	viro:	-o:
Acc.	puerum	agrum	virum	-um

#### PLURAL

Nom.	pueri:	agri:	viri:	-i:
Gen.	puero:rum	agro:rum	viro:rum	-o:rum
Dat.	pueri:s	agri:s	viri:s	-i:s
Acc.	puero:s	agro:s	viro:s	-o:s
Abl.	pueri:s	agri:s	viri:s	-i:s

463. THIRD DECLENSION.

## CLASSIFICATION

### I. Consonant Stems

1. Stems that add -s to the base to form the nominative

singular: masculines  
and feminines only.

2. Stems that add no termination in the nominative singular:

a. masculines  
and feminines; b. neuters.

### II. I-Stems.

Masculines, feminines, and neuters.

464. I. CONSONANT STEMS



1. *Nouns that add -s to the base to form the nominative singular: masculines and feminines only*

pri:nceps,  
mi:les, m., lapis, m.,  
m.,  
*chief soldier stone*  
BASES |  
OR | pri:ncip- mi:lit-  
lapid-  
STEMS |

SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS			
Nom. pri:nceps mi:les lapis -s				
Gen. pri:ncipis mi:litis lapidis -is				
Dat. pri:ncipi: mi:liti: lapidi: -i:				
Acc. pri:ncipem mi:litem lapidem -em				
Abl. pri:ncipe mi:lite lapide -e				

PLURAL				
Nom. pri:ncipe:s mi:lite:s lapide:s -e:s				
Gen. pri:ncipum mi:litum lapidum -um				
Dat. pri:ncipibus mi:litibus lapidibus -ibus				
Acc. pri:ncipe:s mi:lite:s lapide:s -e:s				
Abl. pri:ncipibus mi:litibus lapidibus -ibus				

re:x,  
m., iu:dex, m., virtu:s, f.,  
*king judge virtue*  
BASES |  
OR | re:g- iu:dic-  
virtu:t-  
STEMS |

SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS			
Nom. re:x iu:dex virtu:s -s				
Gen. re:gis iu:dicis virtu:tis -is				
Dat. re:gi: iu:dici: virtu:ti: -i:				
Acc. re:gem iu:dicem virtu:tem -em				
Abl. re:ge iu:dice virtu:te -e				

PLURAL				
Nom. re:ge:s iu:dice:s virtu:te:s -e:s				
Gen. re:gum iu:dicum virtu:tum -um				
Dat. re:gibus iu:dicibus virtu:tibus -ibus				
Acc. re:ge:s iu:dice:s virtu:te:s -es				



Abl. re:gibus iu:dicibus virtu:tibus -ibus

NOTE. For consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. Sec. 233.3.

*2. Nouns that have no termination in the nominative singular*

a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

	co:nsul,	
m.,	legio:, f.,	o:rdo:, pater, m.,
<i>consul</i>	<i>legion</i>	m., <i>row</i> <i>father</i>
BASES		
OR	consul-	legio:n-
o:rdin-	patr-	
STEMS		





# Page 176

## SINGULAR

	TERMINATIONS				
Nom.	co:nsul	legio:	o:rdo:	pater	—
Gen.	co:nsulis	legio:nis	o:rdinis	patris	-is
Dat.	co:nsuli:	legio:ni:	o:rdini:	patri:	-i:
Acc.	co:nsulem	legio:nem	o:rdinem	patrem	-em
Abl.	co:nsule	legio:ne	o:rdine	patre	-e

## PLURAL

Nom.	co:nsule:s	legio:ne:s	o:rdine:s	patre:s	-e:s
Gen.	co:nsulum	legio:num	o:rdinum	patrum	-um
Dat.	co:nsulibus	legio:nibus	o:rdinibus	patribus	-ibus
Acc.	co:nsule:s	legio:ne:s	o:rdine:s	patre:s	-e:s
Abl.	co:nsulibus	legio:nibus	o:rdinibus	patribus	-ibus

NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. Sec. 236.1-3.

## b. NEUTERS

flu:men,  
tempus, opus, caput,  
n.,  
*river* n., *time* n., *work*  
n., *head*

### BASES |

OR | flu:min- tempor-  
oper- capit-  
STEMS |

## SINGULAR

	TERMINATIONS				
Nom.	flu:men	tempus	opus	caput	—
Gen.	flu:minis	temporis	operis	capitis	-is
Dat.	flu:mini:	tempori:	operi:	capiti:	-i:
Acc.	flu:men	tempus	opus	caput	—
Abl.	flu:mine	tempore	opere	capite	-e

## PLURAL

Nom.	flu:mina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
Gen.	flu:minum	temporum	operum	capitum	-um
Dat.	flu:minibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus
Acc.	flu:mina	tempora	opera	capita	-a
Abl.	flu:minibus	temporibus	operibus	capitibus	-ibus



NOTE. For vowel and consonant changes in the nominative singular, cf. Sec. 238.2, 3.

#### 465. II. I-STEMS

##### a. MASCULINES AND FEMININES

caede:s, f., hostis, urbs, f., clie:ns, m.,  
*slaughter* m., *enemy city* *retainer*  
 STEMS caedi- hosti- urbi- clienti-  
 BASES caed- host- urb- client-

##### SINGULAR

###### TERMINATIONS

Nom.	caede:s	hostis	urbs	clie:ns
	-s, -is,			
	<i>or</i>			
	-e:s			
Gen.	caedis	hostis	urbis	clientis
	-is			
Dat.	caedi:	hosti:	urbi:	
	clienti: -i:			
Acc.	caedem	hostem	urbem	clientem
	-em (-im)			
Abl.	caede	hoste	urbe	cliente
	-e (-i:)			

##### PLURAL

Nom.	caede:s	hoste:s	urbe:s	cliente:s	-e:s
Gen.	caedium	hostium	urbium	clientium	-ium
Dat.	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus
Acc.	caedi:s,	hosti:s,	urbi:s,	clienti:s,	-i:s, -e:s
	-e:s	-e:s	-e:s	-e:s	
Abl.	caedibus	hostibus	urbibus	clientibus	-ibus

1. *Avis*\, *civis*\, *finis*\,  
*ignis*\, *navis*\, *have the abl. sing.*  
*in -i: or -e.*



# Page 177

2. *Turris*\ *has accusative turrim*\  
and ablative *turri*:\ *or turre*\.

## b. NEUTERS

*i:nsigne*, n., *animal*, n., *calcar*,  
*decoration animal* n., *spur*

STEMS *i:nsigni-* *anima:li-* *calca:ri-*

BASES *i:nsign-* *anima:l-* *calca:r-*

### SINGULAR

			TERMINATIONS
Nom.	<i>i:nsigne</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i> -e or —
Gen.	<i>i:nsignis</i>	<i>anima:lis</i>	<i>calca:ris</i> -is
Dat.	<i>i:nsigni:</i>	<i>anima:li:</i>	<i>calca:ri:</i> -i:
Acc.	<i>i:nsigne</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>calcar</i> -e or —
Abl.	<i>i:nsigni:</i>	<i>anima:li:</i>	<i>calca:ri:</i> -i:

### PLURAL

Nom.	<i>i:nsignia</i>	<i>anima:lia</i>	<i>calca:ria</i>	-ia
Gen.	<i>i:nsignium</i>	<i>anima:lium</i>	<i>calca:rium</i>	-ium
Dat.	<i>i:nsignibus</i>	<i>anima:libus</i>	<i>calca:ribus</i>	-ibus
Acc.	<i>i:nsignia</i>	<i>anima:lia</i>	<i>calca:ria</i>	-ia
Abl.	<i>i:nsignibus</i>	<i>anima:libus</i>	<i>calca:ribus</i>	-ibus

## 466. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. U-STEMS

*adventus*, m., *cornu:*, n.,  
*arrival horn*

STEMS *adventu-* *cornu-*

BASES *advent-* *corn-*

### TERMINATIONS

SINGULAR		MASC.	NEUT.
Nom.	<i>adventus</i>	<i>cornu:</i>	-us -u:
Gen.	<i>adventu:s</i>	<i>cornu:s</i>	-u:s -u:s
Dat.	<i>adventui:</i> (u:)	<i>cornu:</i>	-ui: (u:) -u:
Acc.	<i>adventum</i>	<i>cornu:</i>	-um -u:
Abl.	<i>adventu:</i>	<i>cornu:</i>	-u: -u:

### PLURAL

Nom.	<i>adventu:s</i>	<i>cornua</i>	-u:s -ua
------	------------------	---------------	----------



Gen.	adventuum	cornuum	-uum	-uum
Dat.	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	adventu:s	cornua	-u:s	-ua
Abl.	adventibus	cornibus	-ibus	-ibus

467. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. *E*-STEMS

die:s, m., *day*    re:s, f., *thing*

STEMS die:-                      re:-

BASES di-                      r-

## SINGULAR                      TERMINATIONS

Nom.	die:s	re:s	-e:s
Gen.	die:i:	rei:	-e:i: <i>or</i> -ei:
Dat.	die:i:	rei:	-e:i: <i>or</i> -ei:
Acc.	diem	rem	-em
Abl.	die:	re:	-e:

## PLURAL

Nom.	die:s	re:s	-e:s
Gen.	die:rum	re:rum	-e:rum
Dat.	die:bus	re:bus	-e:bus
Acc.	die:s	re:s	-e:s
Abl.	die:bus	re:bus	-e:bus

## 468. SPECIAL PARADIGMS

deus,	domus, f.,	vi:s, f.,	iter,
m., <i>god</i>	<i>house</i>	<i>strength</i>	n., <i>way</i>
STEMS deo-	domu-	vi:- and	iter- and
vi:ri-	itiner-		
BASES de-	dom-	v- and	iter- and
vi:r-	itiner-		

## SINGULAR

Nom.	deus	domus	vi:s	iter
Gen.	dei:	domu:s	vi:s (rare)	itineris

## PLURAL

Nom.	dei:, di:	domu:s	vi:re:s	itinera
Gen.	deo:rum, deum	domuum, -o:rum	vi:rium	itinerum
Dat.	dei:s, di:s	domibus	vi:ribus	itineribus
Acc.	deo:s	domo:s, -u:s	vi:ri:s, -e:s	itinera
Abl.	dei:s, di:s	domibus	vi:ribus	itineribus

a. The vocative singular  
of *deus* is like the nominative.



*b.* The locative of *domus*\  
*is domi:\.*

## ADJECTIVES

### 469. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS. *O-* AND *A-*STEMS

#### *a.* ADJECTIVES IN *-us*

*bonus, good*

STEMS *bono-* m. and n., *bona-* f.

BASE *bon-*

#### SINGULAR

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <i>bonus</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
Gen. <i>boni:</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>boni:</i>
Dat. <i>bono:</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bono:</i>
Acc. <i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
Abl. <i>bono:</i>	<i>bona:</i>	<i>bono:</i>

#### PLURAL

Nom. <i>boni:</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
Gen. <i>bono:rum</i>	<i>bona:rum</i>	<i>bono:rum</i>
Dat. <i>boni:s</i>	<i>boni:s</i>	<i>boni:s</i>
Acc. <i>bono:s</i>	<i>bona:s</i>	<i>bona</i>
Abl. <i>boni:s</i>	<i>boni:s</i>	<i>boni:s</i>

#### *b.* ADJECTIVES IN *-er*

*li:ber, free*

STEMS *li:bero-* m. and n., *li:bera:-* f.

BASE *li:ber-*

#### SINGULAR

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <i>li:ber</i>	<i>li:bera</i>	<i>li:berum</i>
Gen. <i>li:beri:</i>	<i>li:berae</i>	<i>li:beri:</i>
Dat. <i>li:bero:</i>	<i>li:berae</i>	<i>li:bero:</i>
Acc. <i>li:berum</i>	<i>li:beram</i>	<i>li:berum</i>
Abl. <i>li:bero:</i>	<i>li:bera:</i>	<i>li:bero:</i>



## PLURAL

Nom. li:beri: li:berae li:bera  
 Gen. li:bero:rum li:bera:rum li:bero:rum  
 Dat. li:beri:s li:beri:s li:beri:s  
 Acc. li:bero:s li:bera:s li:bera  
 Abl. li:beri:s li:beri:s li:beri:s

pulcher, *pretty*

STEMS pulchro- m. and n., pulchra:- f.

BASE pulchr-

## SINGULAR

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
Gen. pulchri:	pulchrae	pulchri:
Dat. pulchro:	pulchrae	pulchro:
Acc. pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Abl. pulchro:	pulchra:	pulchro:

## PLURAL

Nom. pulchri: pulchrae pulchra  
 Gen. pulchro:rum pulchra:rum pulchro:rum  
 Dat. pulchri:s pulchri:s pulchri:s  
 Acc. pulchro:s pulchra:s pulchra  
 Abl. pulchri:s pulchri:s pulchri:s

## 470. THE NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius, *another*

STEMS alio- m. and n., alia:- f.

BASE ali-

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. alius	alia	aliud	alii:	aliae	alia
Gen. ali:us	ali:us	ali:us	alio:rum	alia:rum	alio:rum
Dat. alii:	alii:	alii:	alii:s	alii:s	alii:s
Acc. alium	aliam	aliud	alio:s	alia:s	alia
Abl. alio:	alia:	alio:	alii:s	alii:s	alii:s

u:nus, *one, only*

STEMS u:no- m. and n., u:na:- f.

BASE u:n-



# Page 179

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. u:nus	u:na	u:num	u:ni:	u:nae	u:na
Gen. u:ni:us	u:ni:us	u:ni:us	u:no:rum	u:na:rum	u:no:rum
Dat. u:ni:	u:ni:	u:ni:	u:ni:s	u:ni:s	u:ni:s
Acc. u:num	u:nam	u:num	u:no:s	u:na:s	u:na
Abl. u:no:	u:na:	u:no:	u:ni:s	u:ni:s	u:ni:s

a. For the complete list see Sec. 108.

## 471. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

### I. THREE ENDINGS

a:cer, a:cris, a:cre, *keen*,  
*eager*  
 STEM a:cri- BASE a:cr-

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. a:cer	a:cris	a:cre	a:cre:s	a:cre:s	a:cria
Gen. a:cris	a:cris	a:cris	a:crium	a:crium	a:crium
Dat. a:cri:	a:cri:	a:cri:	a:cribus	a:cribus	a:cribus
Acc. a:crem	a:crem	a:cre	a:cri:s,	a:cri:s,	a:cria
-e:s	-e:s				
Abl. a:cri:	a:cri:	a:cri:	a:cribus	a:cribus	a:cribus

### II. TWO ENDINGS

omnis, omne, *every*, *all*  
 STEM omni- BASE omn-

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	
Nom. omnis	omne	omne:s	omnia	
Gen. omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium	
Dat. omni:	omni:	omnibus	omnibus	
Acc. omnem	omne	omni:s, -e:s	omnia	
Abl. omni:	omni:	omnibus	omnibus	

### III. ONE ENDING

pa:r,

*equal*

STEM

pari- BASE par-

SINGULAR

PLURAL

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.

Nom. pa:r	pa:r	pare:s	paria
Gen. paris	paris	parium	parium
Dat. pari:	pari:	paribus	paribus
Acc. parem	pa:r	pari:s, -e:s	paria
Abl. pari:	pari:	paribus	paribus

1. Observe that all i-stem adjectives  
have -i: in the ablative  
singular.

[Transcriber's Note:

This sentence appears to be a footnote,  
but there is no footnote tag  
on the page.]

## 472. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

ama:ns,

*loving*

STEM

amanti- BASE amant-

SINGULAR

PLURAL

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.

MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.

Nom. ama:ns	ama:ns	amante:s	amantia
Gen. amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
Dat. amanti:	amanti:	amantibus	amantibus
Acc. amantem	ama:ns	amanti:s, -e:s	amantia
Abl. amante, -i:	amante, -i:	amantibus	amantibus

ie:ns,

*going*

STEM

ienti-, eunti- BASE ient-, eunt-

Nom. ie:ns	ie:ns	eunte:s	euntia
Gen. euntis	euntis	euntium	euntium
Dat. eunti:	eunti:	euntibus	euntibus
Acc. euntem	ie:ns	eunti:s, -e:s	euntia
Abl. eunte, -i:	eunte, -i:	euntibus	euntibus



473. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES



# Page 180

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE MASC. MASC. AND FEM. NEUT.  
 MASC. FEM. NEUT. altus (alto-) altior altius altissimus -a -um li:ber (li:bero-) li:berior  
 li:berius li:berrimus -a -um pulcher (pulchro-) pulchrior pulchrius pulcherrimus -a -um  
 auda:x (auda:ci-) auda:cior auda:cius auda:cissimus -a -um brevis (breui-) brevior  
 brevius brevissimus -a -um a:cer (a:cri-) a:crior a:crius a:cerrimus -a -um  
 474. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	altior,		
	<i>higher</i>		
SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altius	altio:re:s altio:ra
<i>Gen.</i>	altio:ris	altio:ris	altio:rum altio:rum
<i>Dat.</i>	altio:ri:	altio:ri:	altio:ribus altio:ribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altio:rem	altius	altio:re:s altio:ra
<i>Abl.</i>	altio:re	altio:re	altio:ribus altio:ribus

plu:s,  
*more* *Nom.* — plu:s plu:re:s plu:ra *Gen.* — plu:ris plu:rium plu:rium *Dat.* — —  
 plu:ribus plu:ribus *Acc.* — plu:s plu:ri:s (-e:s) plu:ra *Abl.* — plu:re plu:ribus plu:ribus  
 475. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius, <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	peior, peius, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>
magnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	maior, maius, <i>greater</i>	maximus, -a, -um, <i>greatest</i>
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plu:s, <i>more</i>	plu:rimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um, <i>smallest</i>
senex, senis, old	senior	maximus na:tu:
iuvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	iu:nior	minimus na:tu:
vetus, veteris, old	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um



similis, -e,            similior, -ius            simillimus, -a, -um  
*similar*  
dissimilis, -e,            dissimilior, -ius            dissimillimus, -a, -um  
*dissimilar*  
humilis, -e, *low*    humilior, -ius            humillimus, -a, -um  
gracilis, -e,            gracilior, -ius            gracillimus, -a, -um  
*slender*  
exterus, *outward*    exterior,            extre:mus, extimus,

## 476. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE ca:re: (ca:rus), *dearly* ca:rius ca:rissime:  
misere: (miser), *wretchedly* miserius miserrime: a:criter (a:cer), *sharply* a:crius  
a:cerrime: facile (facilis), *easily* facilius facillime:

## 477. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE COMPARATIVE SUPERLATIVE diu:, *long, a long time* diu:tius diu:tissime:  
bene (bonus), *well* melius, *better* optime:, *best* male (malus), *ill* peius, *worse* pessime:,  
*worst* magnopere, *greatly* magis, *more* maxime:, *most* multum (multus), *much* plu:s,  
*more* plu:rimum, *most* parum, *little* minus, *less* minime:, *least* saepe, *often* saepi:us  
saepissime:

## 478. NUMERALS

The cardinal numerals are indeclinable excepting *u:nus* \, *duo* \, *tre:s* \, *the hundreds above one hundred*,  
*and mi:lle* \ used as a noun. The ordinals  
are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um \.

## CARDINALS

## ORDINALS

(How many)

(In what order)

1, u:nus, -a, -um, <i>one</i>	pri:mus, -a, -um	<i>first</i>
2, duo, duae, duo <i>two</i>	secundus (or alter)	<i>second</i>
3, tre:s, tria <i>three</i> ,	tertius	<i>third</i> ,
4, quattuor <i>etc.</i>	qua:rtus	<i>etc.</i>
5, qui:nque	qui:ntus	
6, sex	sextus	
7, septem	septimus	
8, octo:	octa:vus	
9, novem	no:nus	
10, decem	decimus	
11, u:ndecim	u:ndecimus	
12, duodecim	duodecimus	
13, tredecim (decem (et) tre:s)	tertius decimus	
14, quattuordecim	qua:rtus decimus	
15, qui:ndecim	qui:ntus decimus	

479. Declension of *duo* \, *\_two\_*, *tre:s* \, *three*, and *mi:lle* \, *\_a thousand\_*.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.	SING.	PLUR.
N. duo	duae	duo	tre:s	tri:a	mi:lle	mi:lia
G. duo:rum	dua:rum	duo:rum	trium	trium	mi:lle	mi:lium



D. duo:bus dua:bus duo:bus tribus tribus mi:lle mi:libus  
 A. duo:s dua:s duo tri:s tria mi:lle mi:lia  
*or* duo dua:s duo *or* tre:s tria  
 A. duo:bus dua:bus duo:bus tribus tribus mi:lle mi:libus

NOTE. *Mi:lle* is used in the plural as a noun with a modifying genitive, and is occasionally so used in the nominative and accusative singular. For the declension of *u:nus* cf. Sec. 470.

## PRONOUNS

### 480. PERSONAL

ego, *I*

tu:, *you*                      sui:, *of himself,*  
*etc.*

SING.	PLUR.		SING.
PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	ego	no:s	tu: vo:s

Gen.	mei: nostrum, -tri:	tui:
	vestrum, -tri:	sui: sui:

Dat.	mihi no:bi:s	tibi vo:bi:s
	sibi sibi	

Acc.	me: no:s	te: vo:s
	se:, se:,	

se:se:

se:se:

Abl.	me: no:bi:s	te: vo:bi:s
	se:, se:,	

se:se:

se:se:



# Page 183

Note that *sui:\* is always reflexive.

## 481. DEMONSTRATIVE

Demonstratives belong to the first and second declensions, but have the pronominal endings -i:us or -ius and -i: in the gen. and dat. sing.

*ipse, self*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsi:	ipsae	ipsa
Gen. ipsi:'us	ipsi:'us	ipsi:'us	ipso:rum	ipsa:rum	ipso:rum
Dat. ipsi:	ipsi:	ipsi:	ipsi:s	ipsi:s	ipsi:s
Acc. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipso:s	ipsa:s	ipsa
Abl. ipso:	ipsa:	ipso:	ipsi:s	ipsi:s	ipsi:s

*hic, this*

(here), *he*

Nom. hic	haec	hoc	hi:	hae	haec
Gen. huius	huius	huius	ho:rum	ha:rum	ho:rum
Dat. huic	huic	huic	hi:s	hi:s	hi:s
Acc. hunc	hanc	hoc	ho:s	ha:s	haec
Abl. ho:c	ha:c	ho:c	hi:s	hi:s	hi:s

*iste, this,*

*that* (of yours), *he*

Nom. iste	ista	istud	isti:	istae	ista
Gen. isti:'us	isti:'us	isti:'us	isto:rum	ista:rum	isto:rum
Dat. isti:	isti:	isti:	isti:s	isti:s	isti:s
Acc. istum	istam	istud	isto:s	ista:s	ista
Abl. isto:	ista:	isto:	isti:s	isti:s	isti:s

*ille, that*

(yonder), *he*

Nom. ille	illa	illud	illi:	illae	illa
Gen. illi:'us	illi:'us	illi:'us	illo:rum	illa:rum	illo:rum
Dat. illi:	illi:	illi:	illi:s	illi:s	illi:s
Acc. illum	illam	illud	illo:s	illa:s	illa
Abl. illo:	illa:	illo:	illi:s	illi:s	illi:s

*is, this,*



*that, he*

Nom. is	ea	id	ii:, ei:	eae	ea
Gen. eius	eius	eius	eo:rum	ea:rum	eo:rum
Dat. ei:	ei:	ei:	ii:s, ei:s	ii:s, ei:s	ii:s, ei:s
Acc. eum	eam	id	eo:s	ea:s	ea
Abl. eo:	ea:	eo:	ii:s, ei:s	ii:s, ei:s	ii:s, ei:s

*i:dem, the same*

Nom. i:dem	e'adem	idem
ii:'dem	eae'dem	e'adem
ei:'dem		
Gen. eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem
eo:run'dem	ea:run'dem	eo:run'dem
Dat. ei:'dem	ei:'dem	ei:'dem
ii:s'dem	ii:s'dem	ii:s'dem
ei:s'dem		
ei:s'dem	ei:s'dem	
Acc. eun'dem	ean'dem	idem
eo:s'dem	ea:s'dem	e'adem
Abl. eo:'dem	ea:'dem	eo:'dem
ii:s'dem	ii:s'dem	ii:s'dem
ei:s'dem		
ei:s'dem	ei:s'dem	

NOTE. In the plural of *is* and *i:dem* the forms with two i's are preferred, the two i's being pronounced as one.

#### 482. RELATIVE

qui:,  
*who, which, that*



## Page 184

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. qui:	quae	quod	qui:	quae	quae
Gen. cuius	cuius	cuius	quo:rum	qua:rum	quo:rum
Dat. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc. quem	quam	quod	quo:s	qua:s	quae
Abl. quo:	qua:	quo:	quibus	quibus	quibus

### 483. INTERROGATIVE

quis,  
substantive, *who, what*

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. quis	quid	qui	quae	quae
Gen. cuius	cuius	quo:rum	qua:rum	quo:rum
Dat. cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc. quem	quid	quo:s	qua:s	quae
Abl. quo:	quo:	quibus	quibus	quibus

The interrogative adjective *qui:, quae, quod\*,  
*is declined like the relative.*

### 484. INDEFINITES

*quis\ and qui:\*, as declined above,[1] are  
used also as indefinites (*some, any*).

The other indefinites are compounds of *quis\ and qui:\*.

quisque,  
*each*

SUBSTANTIVE		ADJECTIVE		
MASC. & FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
Gen. cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que	cuius'que
Dat. cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
Acc. quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
Abl. quo:que	quo:que	quo:que	qua:que	quo:que

[Footnote 1: *qua\*  
*is generally used instead of quae\ in the*  
*feminine nominative singular*



and in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.]

485. *qui:dam*, *a certain one*, *a certain*

Observe that in the neuter singular the adjective has *quoddam* \ and the substantive *quiddam* \.

#### SINGULAR

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <i>qui:dam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quoddam</i> , <i>quiddam</i> ( <i>subst.</i> )
Gen. <i>cuius'dam</i>	<i>cuius'dam</i>	<i>cuius'dam</i>
Dat. <i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>
Acc. <i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quoddam</i> , <i>quiddam</i> ( <i>subst.</i> )
Abl. <i>quo:dam</i>	<i>qua:dam</i>	<i>quo:dam</i>

#### PLURAL

Nom. <i>qui:dam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
Gen. <i>quo:run'dam</i>	<i>qua:run'dam</i>	<i>quo:run'dam</i>
Dat. <i>quibus'dam</i>	<i>quibus'dam</i>	<i>quibus'dam</i>
Acc. <i>quo:sdam</i>	<i>qua:sdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
Abl. <i>quibus'dam</i>	<i>quibus'dam</i>	<i>quibus'dam</i>

486. *quisquam* \, *substantive*, *\_any one\_* (*at all*)

MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <i>quisquam</i>	<i>quicquam</i> ( <i>quidquam</i> )
Gen. <i>cuius'quam</i>	<i>cuius'quam</i>
Dat. <i>cuiquam</i>	<i>cuiquam</i>
Acc. <i>quemquam</i>	<i>quicquam</i> ( <i>quidquam</i> )
Abl. <i>quo:quam</i>	<i>quo:quam</i>

487. *aliquis* \, *substantive*, *\_some one\_*.  
*aliqui:* \, *adjective*, *some*





# Page 185

## SINGULAR

### SUBSTANTIVE

### ADJECTIVE

MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. aliquis	aliquid	aliqui:	aliqua	aliquod
Gen. alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius	alicu'ius
Dat. alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc. aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
Abl. aliquo:	aliquo:	aliquo:	aliqua:	aliquo:

## PLURAL

### FOR BOTH SUBSTANTIVE AND ADJECTIVE

#### MASC.

#### FEM.

#### NEUT.

Nom. aliqui:	aliquae	aliqua
Gen. aliquo:'rum	aliqua:'rum	aliquo:'rum
Dat. ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus
Acc. aliquo:s	aliqua:s	aliqua
Abl. ali'quibus	ali'quibus	ali'quibus

*a. quis\ (qui:\), any one, any, is the least definite (Sec. 297.b). aliquis\ (aliqui:\), some one, some, is more definite than quis\.* quisquam\, *any one* (at all), and its adjective *u:llus\, \_any\_, occur mostly with a negative, expressed or implied, and in clauses of comparison.*

## REGULAR VERBS

### \_488.\_ FIRST CONJUGATION. \_A\_-VERBS. \_AMO:\_

PRINCIPAL PARTS amo:, ama:re, ama:vi:, ama:tus

PRES. STEM ama:- PERF. STEM ama:v- PART. STEM ama:t-

#### ACTIVE

#### PASSIVE

#### INDICATIVE

#### PRESENT

*I love, am loving,*

*I*



*am loved, etc.*

*do love, etc.*

amo:	ama:mus	amor
	ama:mur	
ama:s	ama:tis	ama:ris,
-re	ama:mini:	
amat	amant	ama:tur
	amantur	

#### IMPERFECT

*I loved, was loving, I*

*was loved, etc.*

*did love, etc.*

ama:bam	ama:ba:mus	ama:bar
	ama:ba:mur	
ama:ba:s	ama:ba:tis	ama:ba:ris,
-re	ama:ba:mini:	
ama:bat	ama:bant	ama:ba:tur
	ama:bantur	

FUTURE *I shall love, etc. I shall be loved, etc.* ama:bo: ama:bimus ama:bor ama:bimur

ama:bis ama:bitis ama:beris, -re ama:bimini: ama:bit ama:bunt ama:bitur ama:buntur

#### PERFECT

*I have loved, loved, I*

*have been (was) loved, etc.*

*did love, etc.*

ama:vi	ama:vimus	ama:tus,
{sum	ama:ti:, {sumus	
ama:visti:	ama:vistis	-a,
-um {es	-ae, -a {estis	
ama:vit	ama:ve:runt, -re	
{est	{sunt	



## Page 186

PLUPERFECT *I had loved, etc. I had been loved, etc.* ama:veram ama:vera:mus  
 ama:tus, {eram ama:ti:, {era:mus ama:vera:s ama:vera:tis -a, -um {era:s -ae, -a {era:tis  
 ama:verat ama:verant {erat {erant FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have loved, etc. I shall  
 have been loved, etc.* ama:vero: ama:verimus ama:tus, {ero: ama:ti:, {erimus  
 ama:veris ama:veritis -a, -um {eris -ae, -a {eritis ama:verit ama:verint {erit  
 {erunt SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT amem ame:mus amer ame:mur ame:s ame:tis  
 ame:ris, -re ame:mini: amet ament ame:tur amentur IMPERFECT ama:rem ama:remus  
 ama:rer ama:re:mur ama:re:s ama:re:tis ama:re:ris, -re ama:re:mini: ama:ret ama:rent  
 ama:re:tur ama:rentur PERFECT ama:verim ama:verimus ama:tus, {sim ama:ti:, {si:mus  
 ama:veris ama:veritis -a, -um {si:s -ae, -a {si:tis ama:verit ama:verint {sit  
 {sint PLUPERFECT ama:vissem ama:visse:mus ama:tus, {essem ama:ti:, {esse:mus  
 ama:visse:s ama:visse:tis -a, -um {esse:s -ae, -a {esse:tis ama:visset ama:vissent  
 {esset {essent IMPERATIVE PRESENT ama:, *love thou* ama:re, *be thou loved* ama:te,  
*love ye* ama:mini:, *be ye loved* FUTURE ama:to:, *thou shalt love* ama:tor, *thou shalt be*  
*loved* ama:to:, *he shall love* ama:tor, *he shall be loved* ama:to:te, *you shall love* —  
 amanto:, *they shall love* amantor, *they shall be loved*

### INFINITIVE

Pres. ama:re, *to love* ama:ri:, *to  
 be loved*  
 Perf. ama:visse, ama:tus, -a, -um  
 esse,  
*to have loved to have  
 been loved*  
 Fut. ama:tu:rus, -a, -um [[ama:tum i:ri:]],  
*to be about to be  
 esse, to be\_  
 loved\_  
 about to love*

### PARTICIPLES

Pres. ama:ns, -antis, Pres. —  
*loving*  
 Fut. ama:tu:rus, -a, -um, Gerundive[1] amandus,  
 -a, -um, *to be  
 about to love\_  
 loved\_  
 Perf. — Perf.  
 ama:tus, -a, -um,  
 having  
 been loved, loved GERUND  
 Nom. —  
 Gen. amandi:, *of loving*  
 Dat. amando:, *for loving*  
 Acc. amandum, *loving**



Abl. amando:, *by loving*

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [[ama:tum]], *to love*

Abl. [[ama:tu:]], *to love, in the loving*



# Page 187

[Footnote 1: Sometimes called the future passive participle.]

## 489. SECOND CONJUGATION. E:-VERBS. *MONEO*:

PRINCIPAL PARTS *moneo*:, *mone:re*, *monui*:, *monitus*

PRES. STEM *mone:-* PERF. STEM *monu-* PART. STEM *monit-*

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I advise, etc., I am advised, etc.* *moneo*:  
*mone:mus moneor mone:mur mone:s mone:tis mone:ris, -re mone:mini: monet monent*  
*mone:tur monentur* IMPERFECT *I was advising, etc., I was advised, etc.* *mone:bam*  
*mone:ba:mus mone:bar mone:ba:mur mone:ba:s mone:ba:tis mone:ba:ris, -re*  
*mone:ba:mini: mone:bat mone:bant mone:ba:tur mone:ba:ntur* FUTURE *I shall advise,*  
*etc., I shall be advised, etc.* *mone:bo: mone:bimus mone:bor mone:bimur mone:bis*  
*mone:bitis mone:beris, -re mone:bimini: mone:bit mone:bunt mone:bitur mone:buntur*

### PERFECT

*I have advised, I*  
*have been (was) advised, etc.*  
*I advised, etc.*

*monui: monuimus*  
 { *sum* { *sumus*  
*monuisti: monuistis monitus,*  
 { *es moniti:, {estis*  
*monuit monue:runt, -re -a, -um*  
 { *est -ae, -a {sunt*

### PLUPERFECT

*I had advised, etc.,*  
*I had been advised, etc.*

*monueram monuera:mus {eram {era:mus*  
*monuera:s monuera:tis monitus, {eras moniti:, {eratis*  
*monuerat monuerant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a {erant*

### FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, I*  
*shall have been advised, etc.*  
*etc.*

*monuero: monuerimus*  
 { *ero: {erimus*  
*monueris monueri:tis monitus,*



{eris moniti:, {eritis  
 monuerit monueri:nt -a, -um  
 {erit -ae, -a {erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT moneam monea:mus monear monea:mur monea:s  
 monea:tis monea:ris, -re monea:mini: moneat moneant monea:tur  
 moneanturIMPERFECT mone:rem mone:re:mus mone:rer mone:re:mur mone:re:s  
 mone:re:tis mone:re:ris, -re mone:re:mini: mone:ret mone:rent mone:re:tur  
 mone:renturPERFECT monuerim monuerimus {sim {si:mus monueris monueritis  
 monitus, {si:s moniti:, {si:tis monuerit monuerint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sintPLUPERFECT  
 monuissem monuisse:mus



# Page 188

{essem {esse:mus monuisse:s monuisse:tis monitus, {esse:s moniti:, {esse:tis monuisset monuissent -a, -um {esset -ae, -a {essent IMPERATIVE PRESENT mone:, *advise thou mone:re, be thou advised mone:te, advise ye mone:mini:, be ye advised* FUTURE

mone:to:, *thou shall* mone:tor, *thou shalt be advised advise*

mone:to:, *he shall advise* mone:tor, *he shall be advised*

mone:to:te, *you shall advise* —

monento:, *they shall* monentor, *they shall be advised advise*

## INFINITIVE

Pres. mone:re, *to advise* mone:ri:, *to be advised*

Perf. monuisse, *to have* monitus, -a, -um esse, *advised to have been advised*

Fut. monitu:rus, -a, -um [[monitum i:ri:]], esse, *to be to be about to be advised about to advise*

## PARTICIPLES

Pres. mone:ns, -entis, Pres. — *advising*

Fut. monitu:rus, -a, -um, Ger. monendus, -a, -um, *about to advise to be advised*

Perf. — Perf. monitus, -a, -um, *having been advised, advised*

## GERUND

Nom. —

Gen. monendi:, *of advising*

Dat. monendo:, *for advising*

Acc. monendum, *advising*

Abl. monendo:, *by advising*

## SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [[monitum]], *to advise*



Abl. [[monitu:]], *to advise, in the advising*

490. THIRD CONJUGATION. E-VERBS. REGO:

PRINCIPAL PARTS rego:, regere, rexi:,  
re:ctus

PRES. STEM rege- PERF. STEM

re:x- PART. STEM re:ct-

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I rule, etc. I am ruled, etc.* rego: regimus

re'gor re'gimur regis regitis re'geris, -re regi'mini: regit regunt re'gitur

regun'tur IMPERFECT *I was ruling, etc. I was ruled, etc.* rege:bam rege:ba:mus

rege:'bar rege:ba:'mur rege:ba:s rege:ba:tis rege:ba:'ris, -re rege:ba:'mini: rege:bat

rege:bant rege:ba:'tur rege:ban'tur FUTURE *I shall rule, etc. I shall be ruled, etc.* regam

rege:mus re'gar rege:'mur rege:s rege:tis rege:'ris, -re rege:'mini: reget regent rege:'tur

regen'tur PERFECT *I have ruled, etc. I have been ruled, etc.* re:xi: re:ximus {sum





## Page 189

{sumus re:xisti: re:xistis re:ctus, {es re:cti:, {estis re:xit re:xe:runt, -re -a, -um {est -ae, -a {sunt PLUPERFECT *I had ruled, etc. I had been ruled, etc.* re:xeram re:xera:mus {eram {era:mus re:xera:s re:xera:tis re:ctus, {eras re:cti:, {era:tis re:xerat re:xerant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a {erant FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have ruled, etc. I shall have been ruled, etc.* re:xero: re:xerimus {ero: {erimus re:xeris re:xeritis re:ctus, {eris re:cti:, {eritis re:xerit re:xerint -a, -um {erit -ae, -a {erunt SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT regam rega:mus regar rega:mur rega:s rega:tis rega:ris, -re rega:mini: regat regant rega:tur regantur IMPERFECT regerem regere:mus regerer regere:mur regere:s regere:tis regere:ris, -re regere:mini: regeret regerent regere:tur regerentur PERFECT re:xerim re:xerimus {sim {si:mus re:xeris re:xeritis re:ctus, {si:s re:cti, {si:tis re:xerit re:xerint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sint PLUPERFECT re:xissem re:xisse:mus {essem {esse:mus re:xisse:s re:xisse:tis re:ctus, {esse:s re:cti, {esse:tis re:xisset re:xissent -a, -um {esset -ae, -a {essent IMPERATIVE PRESENT rege, *rule thou* regere, *be thou ruled* regite, *rule ye* regimini:, *be ye ruled* FUTURE regito:, *thou shalt rule* regitor, *thou shalt be ruled* regito: *he shall rule* regitor, *he shall be ruled* regito:te, *ye shall rule* — regunto:, *they shall rule* reguntor, *they shall be ruled*

### INFINITIVE

Pres. regere, *to rule* regi:, *to be ruled*

Perf. re:xisse, *to have* re:ctus, -a, -um esse, *ruled to have been ruled*

Fut. re:ctu:rus, -a, -um [[re:ctum i:ri:]], esse, *to be to be about to be ruled about to rule*

### PARTICIPLES

Pres. rege:ns, -entis, Pres. — ruling

Fut. re:ctu:rus, -a, -um, Ger. regendus, -a, -um, *to be ruled about to rule*

Perf. — Perf. re:ctus, -a, -um, having been ruled, ruled GERUND

Nom. —

Gen. regendi:, *of ruling*

Dat. regendo:, *for ruling*

Acc. regendum, *ruling*

Abl. regendo:, *by ruling*

## Page 190

SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [[re:ctum]], *to rule*

Abl. [[re:ctu:]], *to rule, in the ruling*

491. FOURTH CONJUGATION. I:-VERBS. AUDIO:

PRINCIPAL PARTS audio:, audi:re, audi:vi:,  
audi:tus

PRES. STEM audi:- PERF. STEM  
audi:v- PART. STEM audi:t-

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT *I hear, etc. I am heard, etc.* audio: audi:mus  
au'dior audi:'mur audi:s audi:tis audi:'ris, -re audi:'mini: audit audiunt audi:'tur  
audiun'tur IMPERFECT *I was hearing, etc. I was heard, etc.* audie:bam audie:ba:mus  
audie:'bar audie:ba:'mur audie:ba:s audie:ba:tis audie:ba:'ris, -re audie:ba:'mini:  
audie:bat audie:bant audie:ba:'tur audie:ban'tur FUTURE *I shall hear, etc. I shall be  
heard, etc.* audiam audie:mus au'diar audie:'mur audie:s audie:tis audie:'ris, -re  
audie:'mini: audiet audient audie:'tur audien'tur PERFECT *I have heard, etc. I have  
been heard, etc.* audi:vi: audi:vimus {sum {sumus audi:visti: audi:vistis audi:tus, {es  
audi:ti:, {estis audi:vit audi:ve:runt, -re -a, -um {est -ae, -a {sunt PLUPERFECT *I had  
heard, etc. I had been heard, etc.* audi:veram audi:vera:mus {eram {era:mus audi:vera:s  
audi:vera:tis audi:tus, {eras audi:ti:, {era:tis audi:verat audi:verant -a, -um {erat -ae, -a  
{erant FUTURE PERFECT *I shall have heard, etc. I shall have been heard, etc.*  
audi:vero: audi:verimus {ero: {erimus audi:veris audi:veritis audi:tus, {eris audi:ti:, {eritis  
audi:verit audi:verint -a, -um {erit -ae, -a {erunt SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT audiam  
audia:mus audiar audia:mur audia:s audia:tis audia:ris, -re audia:mini: audiat audiant  
audia:tur audiantur IMPERFECT audi:rem audi:re:mus audi:rer audi:re:mur audi:re:s  
audi:re:tis audi:re:ris, -re audi:re:mini: audi:ret audi:rent audi:re:tur  
audi:rentur PERFECT audi:verim audi:verimus {sim {si:mus audi:veris audi:veritis  
audi:tus, {si:s audi:ti, {si:tis audi:verit audi:verint -a, -um {sit -ae, -a {sint



# Page 191

PLUPERFECT audi:vissem audi:visse:mus {essem {esse:mus audi:visse:s audi:visse:tis  
audi:tus, {esse:s audi:ti, {esse:tis audi:visset audi:vissent -a, -um {esset -ae, -a  
{essentIMPERATIVE PRESENT PRESENT audi:, *hear thou audi:re, be thou heard*  
audi:te, *hear ye audi:mini:, be ye heard*FUTURE audi:to:, *thou shalt hear audi:tor, thou*  
*shalt be heard audi:to: he shall hear audi:tor, he shall be heard audi:to:te, ye shall hear*  
— audunto:, *they shall hear audiuntor, they shall be heard*

## INFINITIVE

Pres. audi:re, *to hear* audi:ri:,  
*to be heard*

Perf. audi:visse, audi:tus, -a, -um  
esse,  
*to have heard to have*  
*been heard*

Fut. audi:tu:rus, -a, -um [[audi:tum i:ri:]],  
esse, *to be to be*  
*about to be heard*  
*about to hear*

## PARTICIPLES

Pres. audie:ns, -entis, Pres. —  
*hearing*

Fut. audi:tu:rus, -a, -um, Ger. audiendus,  
-a, -um,  
*about to hear to*  
*be heard*

Perf. —

Perf. audi:tus, -a, -um,  
*having*  
*been heard, heard*GERUND

Nom. —

Gen. audiendi:, *of hearing*

Dat. audiendo:, *for hearing*

Acc. audiendum, *hearing*

Abl. audiendo:, *by hearing*

## SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [[audi:tum]], *to hear*

Abl. [[audi:tu]], *to hear, in the hearing*

## 492. THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN \_IO:\_.

### CAPIO:

PRINCIPAL PARTS capio:, capere, ce:pi:,  
captus

PRES. STEM cape- PERF. STEM

ce:p- PART. STEM capt-

ACTIVE PASSIVE INDICATIVE PRESENT capio: capimus ca'pior ca'pimur capis



capitis ca'peris, -re capi'mini: capit capiunt ca'pitur capiun'tur IMPERFECT capie:bam  
capiebamur capie:'bar capie:ba:'mur capie:bas capie:ba:tis capie:ba'ris, -re  
capie:ba:'mini: capie:bat capie:bant capie:ba:'tur capieban'tur FUTURE capiam  
capie:mus ca'piar capie:'mur capie:s capie:tis capie:'ris, -re capie:'mini: capiet capient  
capie:'tur capien'tur

PERFECT

ce:pi:, ce:pisti:, ce:pit, *etc.*

captus, -a, -um sum, es, est, *etc.*



# Page 192

## PLUPERFECT

ce:peram, ce:pera:s, ce:perat, captus, -a, -um eram, era:s, erat,  
etc. etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT

ce:pero:, ce:peris, ce:perit, captus, -a, -um ero:, eris, erit,  
etc. etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

### PRESENT

capiam, capia:s, capiat, capiar,  
-ia:ris, -re, -ia:tur, etc.  
etc.

### IMPERFECT

caperem, capere:s, caperet, caperer,  
-ere:ris, -re, -ere:tur,  
etc.  
etc.

### PERFECT

ce:perim, ce:peris, ce:perit, captus,  
-a, -um sim, si:s, sit,  
etc.  
etc.

## PLUPERFECT

ce:pissem, ce:pisse:s, captus,  
-a, -um essem, esse:s,  
ce:pisset, etc.  
esset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

### PRESENT

2d Pers. cape capite capere  
capimini:

## FUTURE

2d Pers. capito: capito:te capitor —  
3rd Pers. capito: capiunto: capitor capiuntor

## INFINITIVE

Pres. capere capi:

Perf. ce:pisse captus, -a, -um esse

Fut. captu:rus, -a, -um [[captum i:ri:]]



esse

## PARTICIPLES

Pres. capie:ns, -ientis      Pres. —  
 Fut. captu:rus, -a, -um      Ger. capiendus, -a, -um  
 Perf. —      Perf. captus, -a, -um

## GERUND

Gen. capiendi: *etc.*

## SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [[captum]]

Abl. [[captu:]]

## 493. DEPONENT VERBS

[Transcriber's Note:

Asterisks in this section are from the original text ("marked with a star").]

## PRINCIPAL PARTS

I. hortor, hortari:, hortatus sum, *urge*

II. vereor, vereari:, veritus sum, *fear*

III. sequor, sequi:, secutus sum, *follow*

IV. partior, partiari:, partitus sum, *share, divide*

NOTE. In addition to the passive conjugation, deponent verbs use certain forms from the active.

These are marked with a star. Deponent -io: verbs of the third conjugation are inflected like the passive of capio:.

## INDICATIVE

Pres. hortor	vereor	sequor	partior
hortari:ris, -re	vere:ris, -re	sequeris, -re	parti:ris, -re
horta:tur	vere:tur	sequitur	parti:tur
horta:mur	vere:mur	sequimur	parti:mur
horta:mini:	vere:mini:	sequimini:	parti:mini:
hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	partiuntur
Impf. hortabar	verebat	sequebat	partiebat
Fut. hortabor	verebor	sequar	partiar
Perf. hortatus sum	veritus sum	secutus sum	partitus sum
Plup. hortatus eram	veritus eram	secutus eram	partitus



## eram SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. hortar verear sequar partiar

Impf. horta:rer vere:rer sequerer parti:rer

Perf. horta:tus sim veritus sim secu:tus sim parti:tus sim

Plup. horta:tus essem veritus essem secu:tus essem parti:tus essem

## IMPERATIVE

Pres. horta:re vere:re sequere parti:re

Fut. horta:tor vere:tor sequitor parti:tor

## INFINITIVE

Pres. horta:ri: vere:ri: sequi: parti:ri:

Perf. horta:tus esse veritus esse secu:tus esse parti:tus esse

Fut. horta:tu:rus veritu:rus secu:tu:rus parti:tu:rus  
esse esse esse esse

## PARTICIPLES

Pres. horta:ns vere:ns seque:ns partie:ns

Fut. horta:tu:rus veritu:rus secu:tu:rus parti:tu:rus

Perf. horta:tus veritus secu:tus parti:tus

Ger. hortandus verendus sequendus partiendus

## GERUND

hortandi:, *etc.* verendi:, *etc.*sequendi:, *etc.* partiendi:, *etc.*

## SUPINE

[[horta:tus, -tu:]] [[veritum, -tu:]]

[[secu:tum, -tu:]] [[parti:tum, -tu:]]

## IRREGULAR VERBS

## 494. sum, am, be

PRINCIPAL PARTS sum, esse, fui:, futu:rus

PRES. STEM es- PERF. STEM

fu- PART. STEM fut-

INDICATIVE PRESENT SINGULAR PLURAL sum, *I am* sumus, *we are* es, *thou art*estis, *you are* est, *he (she, it) is* sunt, *they are* IMPERFECT eram, *I was* era:rus, *we**were* era:s, *thou wast* era:tis, *you were* erat, *he was* erant, *they were*FUTURE ero:, *I shall be* erimus, *we shall be* eris, *thou wilt be* eritis, *you will be* erit, *he will be* erunt, *they will be*

## PERFECT

fui:, *I have been, was*fuimus, *we have been, were*



fuisti:, *thou hast been, wast*  
fuistis, *you have been, were*  
fuit, *he has been, was*  
fue:runt, fue:re, *they have been,*

*were* PLUPERFECT fueram, *I had been* fuera:mus,  
*we had been* fuera:s, *thou hadst been* fuera:tis, *you had been* fuerat, *he had been*  
fuerant, *they had been* FUTURE PERFECT fuero:, *I shall have been* fuerimus, *we shall*  
*have been* fueris, *thou wilt have been* fueritis, *you*



## Page 194

*will have been fuerit, he will have been fuerint, they will have been* SUBJUNCTIVE  
 PRESENT IMPERFECT SINGULAR PLURAL SINGULAR PLURAL *sim si: mus essem*  
*esse: mus si: s si: tis esse: s esse: tis sit sint esset essent* PERFECT PLUPERFECT *fuerim*  
*fuerimus fuisset fuisse: mus fueris fueritis fuisse: s fuisse: tis fuerit fuerint fuisset*  
 fuissent IMPERATIVE PRESENT 2d Pers. Sing. *es, be thou* 2d Pers. Plur. *este, be ye*  
 FUTURE 2d Pers. Sing. *esto:, thou shalt be* 3d Pers. Sing. *esto:, he shall be* 2d Pers.  
 Plur. *esto: te, ye shall be* 3d Pers. Plur. *sunto:, they shall be*

### INFINITIVE

Pres. *esse, to be*

Perf. *fuisse, to have been*

Fut. *futu: rus, -a, -um esse* or *fore,*  
*to be about to be*

### PARTICIPLE

*futu: rus, -a, -um, about to be*

495. *possum, be able, can*

PRINCIPAL PARTS *possum, posse, potui:,*

### INDICATIVE

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### SINGULAR PLURAL

#### SINGULAR PLURAL

Pres. *possum pos'sumus* *possim possi:'mus*

*potes potes'tis possi: s possi:'tis*

*potest possunt possit possint*

Impf. *poteram potera: mus possem posse: 'mus*

Fut. *potero: poterimus* — —

Perf. *potui: potuimus potuerim potuerimus*

Plup. *potueram potuera: mus potuissem potuisse: mus*

F. P. *potuero: potuerimus* — —

### INFINITIVE

Pres. *posse*

Perf. *potuisse*

### PARTICIPLE

Pres. *potens, gen. -entis, (adjective) powerful*

496. *pro: sum, benefit*

PRINCIPAL PARTS *pro: sum, pro: desse,*

*pro: fui:, pro: futu: rus*

PRES. STEM *pro: des-* PERF. STEM *pro: fu-*

PART. STEM *pro: fut-*

### INDICATIVE

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### SINGULAR PLURAL

#### SINGULAR PLURAL



Pres. pro:sum      pro:'sumus      pro:sim      pro:si:'mus  
pro:des      pro:des'tis      pro:si:s      pro:si:'tis  
pro:dest      pro:sunt      pro:sit      pro:sint  
Impf. pro:deram      pro:dera:mus      pro:dessem      prodesse:'mus  
Fut. pro:dero:      pro:derimus      —      —  
Perf. pro:fui:      pro:fuimus      pro:fuerim      pro:fuerimus  
Plup. pro:fueram      pro:fuera:mus      pro:fuissem      pro:fuisse:mus  
F. P. pro:fuero:      pro:fuerimus      —      —

#### IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d Pers. pro:des, pro:deste  
Fut. 2d Pers. pro:desto:, pro:desto:te

#### INFINITIVE

Pres. pro:desse  
Perf. pro:fuisse  
Fut. pro:futu:rus, -a, -um esse

FUTURE PARTICIPLE pro:futu:rus, -a, -um

497. [ volo:, no:lo:, ma:lo:]



# Page 195

PRINCIPAL PARTS: volo:, velle, volui:, —, *be willing, will, wish* no:lo:, no:lle, no:lui:, —, *be unwilling, will not* ma:lo:, ma:lle, ma:lui:, —, *be more willing, prefer*

*No:lo:\ and ma:lo:\ are compounds of volo:\.*

No:lo:\ is for *ne\* (*\_not\_*) + volo:\, and  
*ma:lo:\* for *ma:\* (from *magis\*, *\_more\_*) +  
 volo:\. The second person *vi:s\* *is from*  
*a different root.*

## INDICATIVE

### SINGULAR

Pres. volo:                      no:lo:                      ma:lo:

vi:s                      no:n vis                      ma:vi:s

vult                      no:n vult                      ma:vult

PLURAL volumus no:lumus ma:lumus vultis no:n vultis ma:vul'tis volunt no:lunt ma:lunt

Impf. vole:bam                      no:le:bam                      ma:le:bam

Fut. volam, vole:s,                      no:lam, no:le:s,                      ma:lam, ma:le:s,  
*etc.                      etc.                      etc.*

Perf. volui:                      no:lui:                      ma:lui:

Plup. volueram                      no:lueram                      ma:lueram

F. P. voluero:                      no:luero:                      ma:luero:

## SUBJUNCTIVE

### SINGULAR

Pres. velim                      no:lim                      ma:lim

veli:s                      no:li:s                      ma:li:s

velit                      no:lit                      ma:lit

PLURAL veli:'mus no:li:'mus ma:li:'mus veli:'tis no:li:'tis ma:li:'tis velint no:lint ma:lint

Impf. vellem                      no:llem                      ma:llem

Perf. voluerim                      no:luerim                      ma:luerim

Plup. voluissem                      no:luissem                      ma:luissem

## IMPERATIVE

Pres. no:li:

no:li:te

Fut. no:li:to:, *etc.*

## INFINITIVE

Pres. velle                      no:lle                      ma:lle

Perf. voluisse                      no:luisse                      ma:luisse

## PARTICIPLE

Pres. vole:ns, -entis                      no:le:ns, -entis                      —

498. fero:, *bear, carry, endure*



PRINCIPAL PARTS fero:, ferre, tuli:, la:tus

PRES. STEM fer- PERF. STEM

tul- PART. STEM la:t-

#### INDICATIVE

##### ACTIVE

##### PASSIVE

Pres. fero: ferimus feror ferimur

fers ferti:s ferris, -re ferimimi:

fert ferunt fertur feruntur

Impf. fere:bam fere:bar

Fut. feram, fere:s, *etc.* ferar, fere:ris, *etc.*

Perf. tuli: la:tus, -a, -um sum

Plup. tuleram la:tus, -a, -um eram

F. P. tulero: la:tus, -a, -um ero:

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. feram, fera:s, *etc.* ferar, fera:ris, *etc.*

Impf. ferrem ferrer

Perf. tulerim la:tus, -a, -um sim

Plup. tulissem la:tus, -a, -um essem

#### IMPERATIVE

Pres. 2d Pers. fer ferte ferre

ferimini:

Fut. 2d Pers. ferto: ferto:te

fertor

3d Pers.

ferto: ferunto fertor feruntor



# Page 196

## INFINITIVE

Pres. ferre                                  ferri:  
 Perf. tulisse                                la:tus, -a, -um esse  
 Fut. la:tu:rus, -a, -um esse        —

## PARTICIPLES

Pres. fere:ns, -entis                      Pres. —  
 Fut. la:tu:rus, -a, -um                    Ger. ferendus, -a, -um  
 Perf. —                                      Perf. la:tus, -a, -um

## GERUND

Gen. ferendi:  
 Dat. ferendo:  
 Acc. ferendum  
 Abl. ferendo:

## SUPINE (Active Voice)

Acc. [[la:tum]]  
 Abl. [[la:tu:]]

499. eo:, *go*

PRINCIPAL PARTS eo:, i:re, ii: (i:vi:),  
 itum (n. perf. part.)  
 PRES. STEM i:-  
 PERF. STEM i:- or i:v-  
 PART. STEM it-

## INDICATIVE        SUBJUNCTIVE

### IMPERATIVE

### SING. PLUR.

Pres. eo:    i:mus        eam                      2d  
 Pers. i:    i:te  
 i:s    i:tis  
 it    eunt  
 Impf. i:bam                      i:rem  
 Fut. i:bo:                      —  
                                     2d Pers. i:to:    i:to:te  
 3d Pers.  
                                     i:to:    eunto:  
 Perf. ii: (i:vi:)        ierim (i:verim)  
 Plup. ieram (i:veram)    i:ssem (i:vissem)  
 F. P. iero: (i:vero:)



## INFINITIVE

Pres. i:re

Perf. i:sse (i:visse)

Fut. itu:rus, -a, -um esse

PARTICIPLES

Pres. ie:ns, *gen.* euntis (Sec. 472)

Fut. itu:rus, -a, -um

Ger. eundum

## GERUND

Gen. eundi:

Dat. eundo:

Acc. eundum

Abl. eundo:

## SUPINE

Acc. [[itum]]

Abl. [[itu:]]

a. The verb *eo*:  
*is used impersonally in the third person*  
*singular of the passive, as*

*i:tur\, itum est\, \_etc.\_*

b. In the perfect system  
 the forms with *v* are very rare.  
 500. *fi:o*:, passive of *facio*:; *be*  
*made, become, happen*

PRINCIPAL PARTS *fi:o*:, *fieri*:, *factus*  
*sum*

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## IMPERATIVE

Pres. *fi:o*: — *fi:am* 2d Pers. *fi*: *fi:te**fi:s* —*fit* *fi:unt*Impf. *fi:e:bam* *fierem*Fut. *fi:am* —

## INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

Perf. *factus*, -a, -um *sum* *factus*, -a, -um *sim*Plup. *factus*, -a, -um *eram* *factus*, -a, -um *essem*F. P. *factus*, -a, -um *ero*: INFINITIVE PARTICIPLESPres. *fieri*: Perf. *factus*, -a, -umPerf. *factus*, -a, -um *esse* Ger. *faciendus*, -a, -umFut. [[*factum i:ri*:]]

[Illustration: CASTRA MURO FOSSAQUE  
 MUNIUNTUR]

## APPENDIX II

### 501. RULES OF SYNTAX

NOTE. The rules of syntax are here classified and numbered consecutively. The number of the text section in which the rule appears is given at the end of each.

*Nominative Case*



## Page 197

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative and answers the question Who? or What? Sec. 36.

### *Agreement*

2. A finite verb must always be in the same person and number as its subject. Sec. 28.

3. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb. Sec. 76.

4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains. Sec. 81.

5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case. Sec. 65.

6. A predicate adjective completing a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb. Sec. 215.a.

7. A relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by the way it is used in its own clause. Sec. 224.

### *Prepositions*

8. A noun governed by a preposition must be in the accusative or ablative case. Sec. 52.

### *Genitive Case*

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor of something is in the





genitive and answers the question Whose?  
Sec. 38.

10. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, especially after the forms of *sum*, and is then called the *\_predicate genitive\_*. Sec. 409.

11. Words denoting a part are often used with the genitive of the whole, known as *the partitive genitive*. Sec. 331.

12. Numerical descriptions of measure are expressed by the genitive with a modifying adjective. Sec. 443.

#### *Dative Case*

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. Sec. 45.

14. The dative of the indirect object is used with the intransitive verbs *credo*, *faveo*, *noceo*, *pareo*, *persuadeo*, *resisto*, *studeo*, and others of like meaning. Sec. 154.

15. Some verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *de*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *pro*, *sub*, *super*, admit the dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative. Sec. 426.

16. The dative is used with adjectives to denote the object toward which the given quality is directed. Such are, especially, those meaning *near*, also *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites. Sec. 143.

17. The dative is used to denote the *purpose* or *end for which*; often with another dative denoting *the person or thing affected*. Sec. 437.

#### *Accusative Case*

18. The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative and answers the question Whom? or What? Sec. 37.



## Page 198

19. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. Sec. 214.

20. The *place to which* is expressed by *ad\ or in\* with the accusative. Before names of towns, small islands, *domus\, and rus\* the preposition is omitted. Secs. 263, 266.

21. *Duration of time* and *extent of space* are expressed by the accusative. Sec. 336.

22. Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing,* and the like, may take a *predicate accusative* along with the direct object. With the passive voice the two accusatives become nominatives. Sec. 392.

### *Ablative Case*

23. *Cause* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question *Because of what?* Sec. 102.

24. *Means* is denoted by the ablative without a preposition. This answers the question *By means of what?* or *With what?* Sec. 103.

25. *Accompaniment* is denoted by the ablative with *cum\*. This answers the question *With whom?* Sec. 104.

26. The ablative with *cum\* is used to denote the manner of an action. *Cum\* may be omitted, if an adjective is used with the ablative. This answers the question



How? or In what manner? Sec. 105.

27. With comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the *measure of difference*. Sec. 317.

28. The ablative of a noun or pronoun with a present or perfect participle in agreement is used to express attendant circumstance. This is called the *ablative absolute*. Sec. 381.

29. 1. Descriptions of physical characteristics are expressed by the ablative with a modifying adjective. Sec. 444.

2. Descriptions involving neither numerical statements nor physical characteristics may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative with a modifying adjective. Sec. 445.

30. The ablative is used to denote *in what respect* something is true. Sec. 398.

31. The *place from which* is expressed by *a\ or ab\, de\, e\ or ex\ with the separative ablative*. This answers the question *Whence?* Before names of towns, small islands, *domus\*, and *rus\* the preposition is omitted. Secs. 264, 266.

\_32.\_ Words expressing separation or deprivation require an ablative to complete their meaning. This is called the *\_ablative of separation\_*. Sec. 180.

33. The word expressing the person from whom an action starts, when not the subject, is put in the ablative with the preposition *a\ or ab\*. This is called the *ablative of the personal agent*. Sec. 181.

34. The comparative degree, if

*quam\ is omitted, is followed by the  
separative ablative. Sec. 309.*



## Page 199

35. The *time when or within which* anything happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. Sec. 275.

36. 1. The *place at or in which* is expressed by the ablative with *in\*. *This answers the question Where? Before names of towns, small islands, and rus\* the preposition is omitted. Secs. 265, 266.

2. Names of towns and small islands, if singular and of the first or second declension, and the word *domus\* express the *\_place in which\_* by the locative. Sec. 268.

### *Gerund and Gerundive*

37. 1. The gerund is a verbal noun and is used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The constructions of these cases are in general the same as those of other nouns. Sec. 406.1.

2. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and must be used instead of gerund + object, excepting in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition. Even in these instances the gerundive construction is more usual. Sec. 406.2.

38. The accusative of the gerund or gerundive with *ad\*, or the *genitive with causa\*, is used to express purpose. Sec. 407.

### *Moods and Tenses of Verbs*

39. Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses, and secondary by secondary. Sec. 358.

40. The subjunctive is used in a dependent clause to express the



*purpose* of the action in the principal clause. Sec. 349.

41. A *substantive clause of purpose* with the subjunctive is used as object with verbs of *commanding, urging, asking, persuading, or advising*, where in English we should usually have the infinitive. Sec. 366.

42. Verbs of *fearing* are followed by a substantive clause of purpose introduced by *ut\ (\_that not\_) or ne:\ (that or lest)*. Sec. 372.

43. *Consecutive clauses of result* are introduced by *ut\ or ut non\*, and have the verb in the subjunctive. Sec. 385.

44. *Object clauses of result* with *ut\ or ut non\* are found after verbs of effecting or bringing about. Sec. 386.

45. A relative clause with the subjunctive is often used to describe an antecedent. This is called the *subjunctive of characteristic or description*. Sec. 390.

46. The conjunction *cum\ means \_when, since\_, or \_although\_*. It is followed by the subjunctive unless it means *\_when\_ and its clause fixes the time at which the main action took place*. Sec. 396.

47. When a direct statement becomes indirect, the principal verb is changed to the infinitive, and its subject nominative becomes subject accusative of the infinitive. Sec. 416.

## Page 200

48. The accusative-with-infinitive construction in indirect statements is found after verbs of *saying*, *telling*, *knowing*, *thinking*, and *perceiving*.

Sec. 419.

49. A present indicative of a direct statement becomes present infinitive of the indirect, a past indicative becomes perfect infinitive, and a future indicative becomes future infinitive. Sec. 418.

50. In an *indirect question* the verb is in the subjunctive and its tense is determined by the law for tense sequence. Sec. 432.

[Illustration: DOMINA]

## APPENDIX III

### REVIEWS[1]

[Footnote 1: It is suggested that each of these reviews be assigned for a written test.]

[Transcriber's Note:

In this Review section, the lists of English words for translation may not be in the same order as in the original.]

## I. REVIEW OF VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR THROUGH LESSON VIII

502. Give the English of the following words:[1]

NOUNS



agricola      *gallina*\  
 ancilla      *iniuria*\  
 aqua\      *insula*\  
 casa\      *luna*\  
 causa\      *nauta*\  
 cena      pecunia\  
 corona\      *puella*\  
 dea\      *pugna*\  
 domina      sagitta\  
 fabula      *silva*\  
 fera\      *terra*\  
 filia\      *tuba*\  
 fortuna\      *via*\  
 fuga\      *victoria*\ ADJECTIVES *alta*\ *magna*\ *bona*\ *mala*\ *clara*\ *nova*\ *grata*\ *parva*\  
*lata*\ *pulchra*\ *longa*\ *sola*\

## VERBS

amat      *necat*\  
 dat\      *nuntiat*\  
 est\      *parat*\  
 habitat      *portat*\  
 laborat\      *pugnat*\  
 laudat\      *sunt*\  
*narrat*      *vocat*\

PREPOSITIONS *a*\ *or ab*\ *ad*\ *cum*\ *de*\ *e*\ *or ex*\ *in*\ PRONOUNS *me*\ *tua*\ *quis*\ *cuius*\  
*cui*\ *quem*\ *quid*\ ADVERBS *cur*\ *deinde*\ *non*\ *ubi*\

## CONJUNCTIONS

et\  
 quia  
*quod*\

## INTERROGATIVE

## PARTICLE

/-ne\

[Footnote 1: Proper nouns and proper adjectives are not repeated in the reviews. Words used in Cassar's "Gallic War" are in heavy type.]

503. Give the Latin of the following words:[1]

Underline the words you do not remember. Do not look up a single word till you have gone through the entire list. Then drill on the words you have underlined.





# Page 201

<i>flight</i>	<i>wide</i>	
<i>story</i>	<i>tells</i>	
<i>new</i>	<i>money</i>	
<i>lives (verb)</i>	<i>calls away from</i>	<i>with who</i>
<i>your why</i>	<i>then, in the next place</i>	<i>forest</i>
<i>daughter wreath</i>	<i>to whom</i>	<i>deep, high fortune</i>
<i>dinner</i>	<i>famous out from</i>	<i>labors (verb)</i>
<i>my</i>	<i>kills where</i>	<i>not trumpet in</i>
<i>lady, mistress</i>	<i>and whom</i>	<i>sailor island</i>
<i>farmer</i>		
<i>goddess</i>	<i>what wild beast</i>	<i>way praises (verb)</i>
<i>bad alone</i>	<i>loves</i>	
<i>pleasing</i>	<i>pretty prepares</i>	<i>water are</i>
<i>great to</i>	<i>is because</i>	<i>announces arrow</i>
<i>injury, wrong cottage</i>	<i>battle (noun)</i>	
<i>gives</i>	<i>small</i>	
<i>girl</i>	<i>fight (verb)</i>	
<i>good</i>	<i>maid</i>	
<i>carries</i>	<i>down from chicken</i>	<i>long victory</i>
<i>cause land</i>	<i>whose</i>	

[Footnote 1: The translations of words used in Caesar are in italics.]

504. Review Questions. How many syllables has a Latin word? How are words divided into syllables? What is the ultima? the penult? the antepenult? When is a syllable short? When is a syllable long? What is the law of Latin accent? Define the subject of a sentence; the predicate; the object; the copula. What is inflection? declension? conjugation? What is the ending of the verb in the third person singular, and what in the plural? What does the form of a noun show? Name the Latin cases. What case is used for the subject? the direct object? the possessor? What relation is expressed by the dative case? Give the rule for the indirect object. How are questions answered in Latin? What is a predicate adjective? an attributive adjective? What is meant by agreement? Give the rule for the agreement of the adjective. What are the three relations expressed by the ablative? What can you say of the position of the possessive



pronoun? the modifying genitive? the adjective?  
What is the base? What is grammatical gender?  
What is the rule for gender in the first declension?  
What are the general principles of Latin word order?

505. Fill out the following summary of the  
first declension:



# Page 202

## THE FIRST OR A-DECLENSION

1. Ending in the nominative singular
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations
  - a. Singular
  - b. Plural
4. Irregular nouns

## II. REVIEW OF LESSONS IX-XVII

506. Give the English of the following words:

### NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

*agri cultura* \ *galea* \  
*constantia* \ *inopia* \  
*copia* \ *lacrima* \  
*diligentia* \ *lorica* \  
*fama* \ *patria* \

*femina* \ *praeda* \ NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION *ager* \ *liberi* \ *amicus* \  
*magister arma* \ (*plural*) *murus* \ *auxilium* \ *numerus* \ *bellum* \ *oppidanus* \ *carrus* \ *oppidum* \  
*castrum* \ *pilum* \ *cibus* \ *populus* \ *consilium* \ *praemium* \ *domicilium* \ *proelium* \  
*dominus puer* \  
*equus* \ *scutum* \ *filius* \ *servus* \  
*fluvius studium* \

*frumentum* \ *telum* \ *gladius* \ *vicus* \ *legatus* \ *vir* \ ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND  
 SECOND DECLENSIONS *aeger, aegra, aegrum* \ *alius, alia, aliud* \ *alter, altera, alterum* \  
*armatus, -a, -um* \ *creber, crebra, crebrum* \ *durus, -a, -um* \ *finitimus, -a, -um* \ *infirmus, -a, -um* \  
*legionarius, -a, -um* \ *liber, libera, liberum* \ *maturus, -a, -um* \ *meus, -a, -um* \ *miser, misera, miserum* \  
*multus, -a, -um* \ *neuter, neutra, neutrum* \ *noster, nostra, nostrum* \  
*nullus, -a, -um* \ *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum* \ *solus, -a, -um* \ *suus, -a, -um* \ *totus, -a, -um* \  
*tuus, -a, -um* \ *ullus, -a, -um* \ *unus, -a, -um* \ *uter, utra, utrum* \  
*validus, -a, -um*

*vester, vestra, vestrum* \

### VERBS

*arat* \  
*curat* \  
*desiderat* \  
*maturat* \



properat\

# DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

*is, ea, id\* CONJUNCTIONS *an\ -que\ sed\*

## ADVERBS

*iam\*

*quo*

*saepe\*

## PREPOSITION

*apud\*

507. Give the Latin of the following words:

*sword*                      *shield* (noun)

*corselet*                      *wholeman*                      *ityour* (plural)                      *aid* (noun)

*hasten*                      *legionarybut*                      *weakamong*                      *armstear*

(noun)                      master (of school)

*village*                      *friend*

*strong*                      *neighboringlong for*                      *sickand* (enclitic)

*lieutenantoften*                      *fieldwant* (noun)                      *report, rumorwhich* (of

two)                      *abodecare for*                      *boy*

508. Review Questions. How many declensions are there? What three things must be known about a noun before it can be declined? What three cases of neuter nouns are always alike, and in what do they end in the plural? What two plural cases are always alike? When is the vocative singular not like the nominative? What is a predicate noun? With what does it agree? What is an appositive? Give the rule for the agreement of an appositive. How can we tell whether a noun in -er is declined like

*puer\* or like *ager\*? Decline *bonus\*,

*liber\*, *pulcher\*. How can we tell whether

an adjective in -er is declined like *liber\* or

like *pulcher\*? Why must we say *nauta bonus\*

and not *nauta bona\*? Name the Latin possessive

pronouns. How are they declined? With what

does the possessive pronoun agree? When do we

use *tuus\* and when *vester\*? Why is *suus\*

called a reflexive possessive? What is

the non-reflexive possessive of the third person?

When are possessives omitted? What four uses

of the ablative case are covered by the relations expressed

in English by *with*? Give an illustration

in Latin of the *ablative of manner*; of the

*ablative of cause*; of the *ablative of means*;

of the *ablative of accompaniment*. What

ablative regularly has *cum\*? What ablative



*sometimes has cum\? What uses of the ablative never have cum\? Name the nine pronominal adjectives, with their meanings. Decline alius\, nullus\. Decline is\. What does is\ mean as a demonstrative adjective or pronoun? What other important use has it?*

509. Fill out the following summary of the second declension:



## Page 204

### THE SECOND OR O-DECLENSION

1. Endings in the nominative
2. Rule for gender
3. Case terminations of nouns in  
-us
  - a.  
Singular
  - b.  
Plural
- a. The vocative  
singular of nouns in -us
4. Case terminations of nouns in  
-um
  - a.  
Singular
  - b.  
Plural
5. Peculiarities of nouns in -er  
and -ir
6. Peculiarities of nouns in -ius  
and -ium

## III. REVIEW OF LESSONS XVIII-XXVI

510. Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION *disciplina*\ *regina* forma\ *superbia* *poena*\  
*tristitia*\ *potential*

### NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

*ludus*  
*ornamentum*\  
*sacrum*  
*socius*\  
*verbum*\

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS *amicus*\ *iratus* *antiquus*\  
*laetus*\ *finitimus*\ *molestus*\ *gratus*\ *perpetuus*\ *idoneus*\ *proximus*\ *inimicus*\ *septem*\  
*interfectus*\ *superbus*\

### ADVERBS

*hodie*



ibi\  
*maxime*\  
*mox*  
nunc\  
*nuper*\

## CONJUNCTIONS

*etiam*\  
non solum ... sed etiam\

## PERSONAL PRONOUN

*ego*\

## VERBS

## CONJ. I

volo, -are

CONJ. II *deleo*, -ere\ *noceo*, -ere\ *doceo*, -ere\ *pareo*, -ere\ *faveo*, -ere\ *persuadeo*, -ere\ *habeo*, -ere\ *sedeo*, -ere\ *iubeo*, -ere\ *studeo*, -ere\ *moneo*, -ere\ *video*, -ere\ *moveo*, -ere\ CONJ. III *ago*, -ere\ *fugio*, -ere\ *capio*, -ere\ *iacio*, -ere\ *credo*, -ere\ *mitto*, -ere\ *dico*, -ere\ *rapio*, -ere\ *duco*, -ere\ *rego*, -ere\ *facio*, -ere\ *resisto*, -ere\ CONJ. IV *audio*, -ire\ *munio*, -ire\ *reperio*, -ire\ *venio*, -ire\

## IRREGULAR VERB

*sum*, *esse*\

511. Give the Latin of the following words.

In the case of verbs always give the first form and the present infinitive.

<i>ancient</i>	<i>power</i>	<i>come</i>	<i>make, do</i>	<i>resist</i>	<i>injure</i>	<i>see</i>
<i>now</i>	<i>be</i>	<i>annoying</i>				
<i>fly</i>	<i>lead</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>move</i>	<i>proud</i>	<i>soon</i>	
<i>word</i>	<i>glad</i>	<i>sadness</i>	<i>punishment</i>	<i>find</i>		
<i>believe</i>	<i>rule</i> (verb)	<i>advise</i>	<i>be eager for</i>	<i>especially, most of all</i>	<i>not</i>	
<i>only ... but also</i>	<i>angry</i>					
<i>seven</i>	<i>beauty</i>					

512. Review Questions. What is conjugation?

Name two important differences between conjugation in Latin and in English. What is tense?

What is mood? What are the Latin moods? When do we use the indicative mood? Name the six tenses of the indicative. What are personal endings?

Name those you have had. Inflect *sum* in the three tenses you have learned. How many regular conjugations are there? How are they distinguished? How is the present stem found? What tenses are formed from the present stem? What is the tense sign of the imperfect? What is the meaning of the imperfect? What is the tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations? in the last two?



Before what letters is a final long vowel of the stem shortened? What are the three possible translations of a present, as of *pugno*? Inflect *aro*, *sedeo*, *mitto*, *facio*, and *venio*, in the present, imperfect, and future active. What forms of *-io* verbs of the third conjugation are like *audio*? what like *rego*? Give the rule for the dative with adjectives. Name the special intransitive verbs that govern the dative. What does the imperative mood express? How is the present active imperative formed in the singular? in the plural? What three verbs have a shortened present active imperative? Give the present active imperative of *porto*, *deleo*, *ago*, *facio*, *munio*.

#### IV. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXVII-XXXVI

513. Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION *ala*\ *cura*\ *mora*\ *porta*\ *provincial*\ *vita*\

NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

*animus*\          *navigium*\  
*aurum*          *oraculum*  
*bracchium*\      *periculum*\  
*deus*\          *ventus*\  
*locus*\          *vinum*\  
*monstrum*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS *adversus*\ *dubius*\  
*attentus* *maximus*\ *carus*\ *perfidus* *commotus*\ *plenus*\ *defessus*\ *saevus* *dexter*\  
*sinister*\ ADVERBS *antea*\ *ita*\ *celeriter*\ *longe*\ *denique*\



## Page 206

*semper\ diu\ subito\ frustra\ tamen\ graviter\ tum\* CONJUNCTIONS *autem\ si\ ubi\* PREPOSITIONS *de\ per\ pro\ sine\*

### VERBS

#### CONJ. I

*adpropinquo\ servo\  
navigo\ sto\  
occupo\ supero\  
postulo\ tempto\  
recuso\ vasto\  
reporto\ vulnero\*

CONJ. II *contineo\ egeo\ prohibeo\ respondeo\ teneo\* CONJ. III *discedo\ gero\ interficio\*

#### IRREGULAR VERB

*absum\*

514. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

<i>be away</i>	<i>heavily</i>	<i>wind</i>	<i>monster</i>
<i>through</i>	<i>approach</i>	<i>if</i>	<i>nevertheless</i>
<i>savage</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>wound (verb)</i>	<i>be without, lack</i>
<i>moved</i>	<i>delay</i>	<i>gold</i>	
<i>faithless</i>	<i>restrain, keep from</i>	<i>right</i>	<i>without</i>
<i>hold</i>	<i>quickly</i>	<i>suddenly</i>	<i>before, in behalf of</i>
<i>always</i>	<i>down from or concerning</i>	<i>god</i>	<i>moreover</i>
<i>keep</i>	<i>greatest</i>	<i>afar</i>	<i>hold in,</i>
<i>oracle</i>	<i>thus, so, as follows</i>	<i>danger</i>	<i>arm (noun)</i>
<i>lay waste</i>	<i>when</i>	<i>gate</i>	<i>in vain</i>
<i>stand</i>	<i>opposite, adverse</i>	<i>bring back, wind</i>	<i>demand</i>
<i>before, previously</i>	<i>finally</i>	<i>depart, go away</i>	
<i>attentive</i>	<i>provinc</i>	<i>then, at that time</i>	<i>care, trouble</i>
<i>kill</i>	<i>overcome, conquer</i>	<i>reply (verb)</i>	<i>weary</i>
<i>conquer</i>	<i>wing</i>	<i>boat, ship</i>	<i>mind, heart</i>
<i>left (adj.)</i>			<i>sail (verb)</i>
<i>life</i>	<i>bear, carry on</i>	<i>save</i>	<i>try</i>
<i>for a long time</i>	<i>refuse</i>		<i>full</i>

515. Give the principal parts and meaning of the following verbs:



## Page 207

*sum\ faveol\ dol\ noceol\ teneol\ dico\ iubeol\ pareol\ agol\ duco\ mittol\ faciol\ muniol\ persuadeol\ moveol\ sedeo\ credol\ studeol\ rapiol\ fugiol\ reperiol\ veniol\ deleol\ iaciol\ resistol\ video\ audio\ absum\ moneol\ egeol\ capiol\ gero\ doceol\ stol\ regol*

\_516.\_ Review Questions. What are the personal endings in the passive voice? What is the letter -r sometimes called? What are the distinguishing vowels of the four conjugations? What forms constitute the principal parts? What are the three different conjugation stems? How may they be found? What are the tenses of the indicative? of the infinitive? What tense of the imperative have you learned? What forms are built on the present stem? on the perfect stem? on the participial stem? What are the endings of the perfect active indicative? What is the tense sign of the pluperfect active? of the future perfect active? How is the present active infinitive formed? the present passive infinitive? How is the present active imperative formed? the present passive imperative? How is the perfect active infinitive formed? the perfect passive infinitive? How is the future active infinitive formed? What is a participle? How are participles in -us declined? Give the rule for the agreement of the participle. How are the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative formed? Conjugate the verb *sum\* in all moods and tenses as far as you have learned it (Sec. 494). What is meant by the separative ablative? How is the place *from which* expressed in Latin? Give the rule for the ablative of separation; for the ablative of the personal agent. How can we distinguish between the ablative of means and the ablative of the personal agent? What is the perfect definite? the perfect indefinite? What is the difference in meaning between the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? What two cases in Latin may be governed by a preposition? Name the prepositions that govern the ablative. What does the preposition *in\* mean when it governs the ablative? the accusative? What are the three interrogatives used to introduce \_yes\_-and-\_no\_ questions? Explain the force of each. What words are sometimes used for \_yes\_ and \_no?\_ What are the different meanings and uses of *ubi*?



## V. REVIEW OF LESSONS XXXVII-XLIV

517. Give the English of the following words:

### NOUNS

#### FIRST DECLENSION

#### SECOND DECLENSION

*ripa*\

*barbari*\

*captivus*\

*castellum*\

*impedimentum*\



## Page 208

### THIRD DECLENSION

*animal\*      *homo\*      *ordo\*  
*arbor\*      *hostis\*      *pater\*  
*avis\*      *ignis\*      *pedes\*  
*caedes\*      *imperator\*      *pes\*  
*calamitas\*      *insigne\*      *pons*  
*calcar*      *iter\*      *princeps\*  
*caput\*      *iudex*      *rex\*  
*civis\*      *labor\*      *salus\*  
*cliens\*      *lapis\*      *sanguis\*  
*collis\*      *legio\*      *soror\*  
*consul\*      *mare\*      *tempus*  
*dens\*      *mater\*      *terror\*  
*dux\*      *mensis\*      *turris\*  
*eques\*      *miles\*      *urbs\*  
*finis\*      *mons\*      *victor\*  
*flumen\*      *navis\*      *virtus\*  
*fons*      *opus\*      *vis\*  
*frater\*      *orator\*

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS *barbarus\* *dexter\*  
*sinister\* *summus\* PREPOSITIONS *in\* with the *abl.* *in\* with the *acc.* *trans\*

### ADVERBS

*cotidie\*  
*numquam\*

### CONJUNCTIONS

*nec, neque\*  
*nec ... nec\*, or *neque ... neque\*

### VERBS

CONJ. I      CONJ. III

*cesso\*      *accipio\*  
*oppugno\*      *peto\*  
*confirmo\*      *vinco\*  
*veto\*      *incipio\*  
*pono\*  
*vivo\*

518. Translate the following words. Give

the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:

*forbid in rank, row judge brother defeat, disaster force fire across tree savages foot*  
*soldier horseman receive never general mountain highest manliness, courage fountain*  
*leader orator put, place neither ... nor time and not savage, barbarous left sister tooth*



*seek soldier captive month hindrance, baggage city captive victor hindrance, baggage daily man-of-war live (verb) conquer redoubt, fort consul sea mother tower retainer drill (verb) citizen legion head terror safety into, to assail, storm right (adj.) begin stone march blood decoration*



## Page 209

*labor* (noun) *bridge king bird spur cease chief man slaughter river strengthen work*  
(noun) *foot and enemy ship animal bank father*

519. Review Questions. Give the conjugation of *possum*\. What is an infinitive? What three uses has the Latin infinitive that are like the English? What is the case of the subject of the infinitive? What is meant by a complementary infinitive? In the sentence *\_The bad boy cannot be happy\_*, what is the case of *\_happy\_*? Give the rule. Decline *qui*\. Give the rule for the agreement of the relative. What are the two uses of the interrogative? Decline *quis*\. What is the base of a noun? How is the stem formed from the base? Are the stem and the base ever the same? How many declensions of nouns are there? Name them. What are the two chief divisions of the third declension? How are the consonant stems classified? Explain the formation of *lapis*\ from the stem *lapid-*, *miles*\ from *milit-*, *rex*\ from *reg-*. What nouns have i-stems? What peculiarities of form do i-stems have,—masc., fem., and neut.? Name the five nouns that have -i and -e in the abl. Decline *turris*\. Give the rules for gender in the third declension. Decline *miles*\, *lapis*\, *rex*\, *virtus*\, *consul*\, *legio*\, *homo*\, *pater*\, *flumen*\, *opus*\, *tempus*\, *caput*\, *caedes*\, *urbs*\, *hostis*\, *mare*\, *animal*\, *vis*\, *iter*\.

520. Fill out the following scheme:

```

      {
      { Masculine
      {
GENDER    { Feminine
      {
ENDINGS   { Neuter
      {
    THE THIRD {
{ I. CONSONANT { a. Masc. and fem.
  DECLENSION {
{   STEMS    { b. Neuters
      {

```



CASE {  
{  
TERMINATIONS {  
{  
{  
{ II. *I*-STEMS { *a*.  
Masc. and fem.  
{  
{ { *b*. Neuters  
{  
{  
IRREGULAR NOUNS

## VI. REVIEW OF LESSONS XLV-LII

521. Give the English of the following words:

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

*amicitia*\

*hora*\

*littera*\



## Page 210

SECOND DECLENSION *annus*\ supplicium\, *modus*\ supplicium dare\ *nuntius*\  
supplicium sumere de\ *oculus*\ tergum\, *regnum*\ tergum vertere\ *signum*\ vestigium\

THIRD DECLENSION

*aestas*\                      *nox*\

*corpus*\                      *pars*\

*hiems*\                      *pax*\

*libertas*\                      *rus*

*lux*\,                      *sol*\

*prima lux*\                      *vox*\

*nomen*\                      *vulnus*\ FOURTH DECLENSION *adventus*\ *impetus*\ *cornu*\ *lacus*\

*domus*\ *manus*\ *equitatus*\ *metus*\ *exercitus*\ *portus*\ *fluctus*\

FIFTH DECLENSION

*acies*\                      *res*\,

*dies*\                      *res gestae*\

*fides*\,                      *res adversae*\

*in fidem venire*\                      *res secundae*\

*res publica*\

*spes*\

INDECLINABLE NOUN

*nihil*\

ADJECTIVES

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

*densus*\                      *pristinus*\

*invisus*\                      *publicus*\

*mirus*\                      *secundus*\

*pauci*\                      *tantus*\

*primus*\                      *verus*\

THIRD DECLENSION *acer*, *acris*, *acre*\ *gravis*, *grave*\ *brevis*, *breve*\ *incolumis*,  
*incolume*\ *difficilis*, *difficile*\ *omnis*, *omne*\ *facilis*, *facile*\ *par*, *par*\ *fortis*, *forte*\ *velox*, *velox*\

PRONOUNS

PERSONAL

*ego*\

*nos*\

*sui*\

*tu*\

*vos*\ DEMONSTRATIVE *hic*\ *idem*\ *ille*\ *iste*\

INTENSIVE

*ipse*\ INDEFINITE *aliquis*, *aliqui*\ *quidam*\ *quis*, *qui*\ *quisquam*\ *quisque*\

ADVERBS

*ne*: ... *quidem*\                      *quoque*\

*olim*                      *satis*\

*paene*\                      *vero*\





CONJUNCTIONS

*itaque*\

*nisi*\

PREPOSITIONS *ante*\ *post*\ *propter*\

VERBS

CONJ. I

*conloco*\

*convoco*\

*cremo*\

*demonstro*\

*mando*\

CONJ. II

*debeo*\

*exerceo*\

*maneo*\

*placeo*\

*sustineo*\

CONJ. III

CONJ. IV

*committo*\,

*desilio*\

*committere*

*proelium*\

*decido*\

*eripio*\

*sumo*\,

*sumere supplicium*

*de*\

*traduco*\

*verto*\

522. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs.

## Page 211

*if not, unless adversity on account of former, old-time public all, every commonwealth  
any one (at all) leap down, dismount this (of mine) unharmed heavy, serious lead  
across hateful, detested remain true call together burn friendship snatch from footprint,  
trace letter each punishment fear (noun) inflict punishment on hope behind, after  
therefore suffer punishment so great liberty equal sun in truth, indeed sustain that  
(yonder) take up, assume a certain hour fall down reign, realm owe, ought messenger  
measure, mode part, direction eye body name harbor wave, billow faith, protection  
thing, matter of himself exploits also, too republic sufficiently prosperity you (plur.) burn  
peace that (of yours) back before turn the back, retreat light night daybreak hand, force  
winter lake attack day line of battle commit, intrust army a few only drill, train sharp,  
eager join battle we house, home turn midday you (sing.) wonderful I brave signal  
almost summer the same cavalry some, any wound if any one horn, wing self, very  
country not even second, favorable easy formerly, once dense short point out, explain  
voice difficult arrival first come under the protection of arrange, station nothing please  
swift year*

523. Review Questions. By what declensions  
are Latin adjectives declined? What can you say

## Page 212

about the stem of adjectives of the third declension?  
Into what classes are these adjectives divided?  
How can you tell to which of the classes an adjective belongs? Decline *acer, omnis, par*\. *What are the nominative endings and genders of nouns of the fourth or u-declension? What nouns are feminine by exception? Decline adventus, lacus, cornu, domus*\. Give the rules for the ordinary expression of the *place to which*, the *place from which*, the *place in which*. What special rules apply to names of towns, small islands, and *rus*\? *What is the locative case? What words have a locative case? What is the form of the locative case? Translate \_Galba lives at home, Galba lives at Rome, Galba lives at Pompeii\_. What is the rule for gender in the fifth or e:\-declension? Decline dies\, res\. When is the long e:\ shortened? What can you say about the plural of the fifth declension? Decline tuba\, servus\, pilum\, ager\, puer\, miles\, consul\, flumen\, caedes\, animal\. How is the \_time when\_ expressed? Name the classes of pronouns and define each class. Decline ego, tu, is\. What are the reflexives of the first and second persons? What is the reflexive of the third person? Decline it. Translate *I see myself, he sees himself, he sees him*. Decline *ipse*\. How is *ipse*\ used? Decline *idem*\. Decline *hic*\, *iste*\, *ille*\. Explain the use of these words. Name and translate the commoner indefinite pronouns. Decline *aliquis*\, *quisquam*\, *quidam*\, *quisque*\.*

## VII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LIII-LX

524. Give the English of the following words:



## NOUNS

### FIRST DECLENSION

*aquila*\      *fossa*\

SECOND DECLENSION *aedificium*\ *negotium*\ *captivus*\ *spatium*\ *concilium*\ *vallum*\

*imperium*\THIRD DECLENSION *agmen*\ *mors*\ *celeritas*\ *mulier*\ *civitas*\ *multitudo*\

*clamor*\ *munitio*\ *cohors*\ *nemo*\ *difficultas*\ *obses*\ *explorator*\ *opinio*\ *gens*\ *regio*\

*latitudo*\ *rumor*\ *longitudo*\ *scelus*\ *magnitudo*\ *servitus*\ *mens*\ *timor*\ *mercator*\ *valles*\

*mille*\

### FOURTH DECLENSIONS

*aditus*\      *passus*\

*commeatus*\

### FIFTH DECLENSION

*res frumentaria*\

## ADJECTIVES

### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

*aequus*\      *pessimus*\

*bini*\      *plurimus*\

*ducenti*\      *posterus*\

*duo*\      *primus*\

*exterus*\      *reliquus*

*inferus*\      *secundus*\

*maximus*\      *singuli*\

*medius*\      *superus*\

*minimus*\      *tardus*\

*opportunus*\      *terni*\

*optimus*\      *unus*\



# Page 213

## THIRD DECLENSION

alacer, alacris, alacre\  
*audax, audax*\  
 celer, celeris, celere\  
*citerior, citerius*\  
 difficilis, difficile\  
*dissimilis, dissimile*\  
 facilis, facile\  
 gracilis, gracile  
*humilis, humile*\  
 ingens, ingens\  
*interior, interius*\  
 lenis, lene\  
*maior, maius*\  
 melior, melius\  
*minor, minus*\  
 nobilis, nobile\  
*peior, peius*\

—, —,  
 plus\  
*prior, prius*\  
 recens, recens\  
*similis, simile*\  
 tres, tria\  
*ulterior, ulterius*\ ADVERBS *acriter*\ *optime*\ *audacter*\ *parum*\ *bene*\ *paulo*\ *facile*\  
*plurimum*\ *ferè*\ *prope*\ *fortiter*\ *propius*\ *magis*\ *proxime*\ *magnopere*\ *quam*\ *maxime*\  
*statim*\ *melius*\ *tam*\ *minime*\ *undique*\ *multum*\ CONJUNCTIONS *atque*, *ac*\ *qua de*  
*causa*\ *aut*\ *quam ob rem*\ *aut ... aut*\ *simul atque or*\ *et ... et*\ *simul ac*  
 nam\ PREPOSITIONS *circum*\ *contra*\ *inter*\ *ob*\ *trans*\

## VERBS

### CONJ. I      CONJ. II

conor\	<i>obtineo</i> \
hortor\	<i>perterreo</i> \
moror\	<i>valeo</i> \
vexo\	<i>vereor</i> \

CONJ. III

abdo\	<i>patior</i> \
cado\	<i>premo</i>
<i>cognosco</i> \	<i>proficiscor</i> \
<i>consequor</i> \	<i>progredior</i> \
<i>contendo</i> \	<i>quaero</i> \



<i>cupio\</i>	<i>recipio\</i>
<i>curro\</i>	<i>relinquo\</i>
<i>dedo\</i>	<i>revertor\</i>
<i>defendo\</i>	<i>sequor\</i>
<i>egredior</i>	<i>statuo</i>
<i>incendo\</i>	<i>subsequor</i>
<i>incolo\</i>	<i>suscipio\</i>
<i>insequor\</i>	<i>trado\</i>
<i>occido\</i>	<i>traho\</i>
CONJ. IV	
<i>orior\</i>	<i>pervenio\</i>

525. Translate the following words. Give the genitive and the gender of the nouns and the principal parts of the verbs:  
*on account of width nearly scout keenly, sharply cohort thousand tribe, nation two business opportune by a little remaining somewhat above (adj.) crime next difficult grain supply equal pace move forward, advance shout (noun) further from all sides multitude against woman around desire (verb) three give over, surrender line of*

## Page 214

*march kill manor overtake region hasten, strive fortification hide eagle one almost first  
boldly second, favorable bravely two hundred across former between, among inner  
hither (adj.) middle so low less outward more three by three most provisions worst  
speed difficulty ditch hostage wherefore or therefore death length command, power for  
this reason captive fear (noun) or return and inquire arrive set out attempt, try move out,  
disembark fear (verb) leave worse abandon greater, larger be strong two by two  
receive, recover least (adv.) terrify, frighten opinion, expectation dwell defend state,  
citizenship approach, entrance valley trader slavery magnitude, size greatly council,  
assembly best of all (adv.) space, room better (adv.) either ... or well (adv.) rise, arise  
very much suffer, allow much press hard unlike fall like (adj.) surrender slow set fire to  
very greatly, exceedingly possess, hold building delay (verb) mind (noun) nearest (adv.)  
easily nearer (adv.) easy better (adj.) recent well known, noble huge, great rampart bold  
mild, gentle immediately swift as soon as eager for low (adj.) than slender best (adj.)  
one by one greatest no one follow close least (adv.) encourage little (adv.) annoy,  
ravage learn, know hide drag follow undertake*

## Page 215

*pursue run both ... and fix, decide*

526. Review Questions. What is meant by comparison? In what two ways may adjectives be compared? Compare *clarus, brevis, velox*\, and explain the formation of the comparative and the superlative. What are the adverbs used in comparison? Compare *brevis*\ by adverbs. Decline the comparative of *velox*\. How are adjectives in *-er* compared? Compare *acer*\, *pulcher*\, *liber*\. What are possible translations for the comparative and superlative? Name the six adjectives that form the superlative in *-limus*. Translate in two ways *Nothing is brighter than the sun*. Give the rule for the ablative with comparatives. Compare *bonus, magnus, malus, multus, parvus, exterus, inferus, posterus, superus*\. Decline *plus*\. Compare *citerior, interior, propior, ulterior*\. Translate *\_That route to Italy is much shorter\_*. Give the rule for the expression of measure of difference. Name five words that are especially common in this construction. How are adverbs usually formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions? from adjectives of the third declension? Compare the adverbs *care*\, *libere*\, *fortiter*\, *audacter*\. What cases of adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs? What are the adverbs from *facilis*\? *multus*\? *primus*\? *plurimus*\? *bonus*\? *magnus*\? *parvus*\? Compare *prope*\, *saepe*\, *magnopere*\. How are numerals classified? Give the first twenty cardinals. Decline *unus, duo, tres, mille*\. How are the hundreds declined? What is meant by the partitive genitive? Give the rule for the partitive genitive. What sort of words are commonly used with this construction? What construction is used with *quidam*\ and cardinal numbers excepting *mille*\? Give the first twenty ordinals. How are they declined? How are the distributives declined? Give the rule for the expression of duration of time and extent of space. What is the difference between the ablative of time and the accusative of time? What is a deponent verb? Give the synopsis of one. What form always has a passive meaning? Conjugate *amo*\, *moneo*\,





*rego\, capio\, audio\, in the active and passive.*

## VIII. REVIEW OF LESSONS LXI-LXIX

527. Review the vocabularies of the first seventeen lessons. See Secs. 502, 503, 506, 507.

528. Review Questions. Name the tenses of the subjunctive. What time is denoted by these tenses? What are the mood signs of the present subjunctive? How may the imperfect subjunctive be formed? How do the perfect subjunctive and the future perfect indicative active differ in form? How is the pluperfect subjunctive active formed? Inflect the subjunctive active and passive of *curo\, deleo\, vinco\, rapio\, munio\*.  
*Inflect the subjunctive tenses of sum\; of possum\.*

## Page 216

What are the tenses of the participles in the active?  
What in the passive? Give the active and passive  
participles of *amo*\, *moneo*\, *rego*\, *capio*\,  
*audio*\. Decline *regens*\. *What participles  
do deponent verbs have? What is the difference  
in meaning between the perfect participle of a deponent  
verb and of one not deponent? Give the participles  
of vereor*\. How should participles usually  
be translated? Conjugate *volo*\, *nolo*\,  
*malo*\, *fio*\.

What is the difference between the indicative and  
subjunctive in their fundamental ideas? How is  
purpose usually expressed in English? How is  
it expressed in Latin? By what words is a Latin  
purpose clause introduced? When should *quo*\  
*be used? What is meant by sequence of tenses?  
Name the primary tenses of the indicative and of the  
subjunctive; the secondary tenses. What Latin  
verbs are regularly followed by substantive clauses  
of purpose? What construction follows iubeo*\?  
What construction follows verbs of *fearing*?  
How is consequence or result expressed in Latin?  
How is a result clause introduced? What words  
are often found in the principal clause foreshadowing  
the coming of a result clause? How may negative  
purpose be distinguished from negative result?  
What is meant by the subjunctive of characteristic  
or description? How are such clauses introduced?  
Explain the ablative absolute. Why is the ablative  
absolute of such frequent occurrence in Latin?  
Explain the predicate accusative. After what verbs  
are two accusatives commonly found? What do these  
accusatives become when the verb is passive?

[Illustration: IMPERATOR MILITES  
HORTATUR]



## SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

The words in heavy type are used in Caesar's "Gallic War."

[Transcriber's Note:

Each chapter's Special Vocabulary was included with its chapter text in addition to its original location here. Details are given in the Transcriber's Note at the beginning of the text. In the printed book, the vocabularies for Lesson IV and Lesson V appeared on the same page; the Footnote about *conjunctions* was shared by the two lists.]

### LESSON IV, Sec. 39

#### NOUNS

dea, *goddess* (deity)

Dia:'na, *Diana*

fera\, *\_a wild beast\_ (fierce)*

La:to:'na, *\_Latona\_*

sagit'ta\, *arrow*

#### VERBS

est\, *\_he (she, it) is\_*; sunt, *\_they are\_*

necat\, *he (she, it) kills, is killing, does kill*

#### CONJUNCTION[A]

et\, *\_and\_*

#### PRONOUNS

quis\, *interrog. pronoun, nom. sing., \_who?\_*

cuius\ (pronounced *c[oo]i'y[oo]s*, two syllables), *interrog.*

*pronoun, gen. sing., whose?*

[Footnote A: A *conjunction*

is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.]



# Page 217

## LESSON V, Sec. 47

### NOUNS

*coro:'na\*, *\_wreath, garland, crown\_*

*fa:'bula, \_story\_ (fable)*

*pecu:'nia\*, *money* (pecuniary)

*pugna\*, *\_battle\_ (pugnacious)*

*victo:'ria\*, *victory*

### VERBS

*dat\*, *\_he (she, it) gives\_*

*na:rrat\*, *\_he (she, it) tells\_ (narrate)*

### CONJUNCTION[A]

*quia\ or quod\*, *because*

*cui\* (pronounced *\_c[oo]i\_*, one syllable),

*interrog. pronoun, dat.*

*sing., \_to whom?\_ \_for whom?\_*

[Footnote A: A *conjunction*

is a word which connects words, parts of sentences, or sentences.]

## LESSON VI, Sec. 56

ADJECTIVES *bona\*, *\_good\_* *gra:ta\*, *pleasing* *magna\*, *\_large, great\_* *mala\*, *bad, wicked* *parva\*, *\_small, little\_* *pulchra\*, *beautiful, pretty* *so:la\*, *\_alone\_*

### NOUNS

*ancil'la\*, *\_maidservant\_*

*Iu:lia\*, *\_Julia\_*

### ADVERBS[A]

*cu:r\*, *\_why\_*

*no:n\*, *not*

### PRONOUNS

*mea\*, *\_my\_*; *tua\*, *\_thy, your\_ (possesives)*

*quid\*, *interrog. pronoun, nom. and*

*acc. sing., what?/-ne\*, the question sign, an enclitic (Sec. 16) added to the first word, which, in a question, is usually the verb, as *amat\*, *\_he loves\_*, but *amat'ne?\* *does he love?* *est, he is; estne?\* *\_is he?\_* Of course *-ne\* is not used when the sentence contains *quis*, *cu:r*, or some other interrogative word.

[Footnote A: An *adverb*



is a word used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb;  
 as, She sings *sweetly*; she is *very* talented; she began to sing *very early*.]

**LESSON VII, Sec. 62** NOUNS *casa*, -ae\, f., *\_cottage\_* *ce:na*, -ae, f., *\_dinner\_* *galli:'na*, -ae\, f., *hen, chicken* *i:n'sula*, ae\, f., *\_island\_* (*pen-insula*)

**ADVERBS**

*de-in'de\*, *then, in the next place*

*ubi\*, *\_where\_*

**PREPOSITION**

*ad\*, *\_to\_, with acc. to express motion toward*

**PRONOUN**

*quem\*, *interrog. pronoun, acc. sing., \_whom?\_*

**VERBS**

*ha'bitat*, *he (she, it) lives, is living, does live* (*inhabit*)  
*laudat\*, *\_he (she, it) praises, is praising, does praise\_* (*laud*)  
*parat\*, *he (she, it) prepares, is preparing, does prepare*  
*vocat\*, *\_he (she, it) calls, is calling, does call; invites, is inviting, does invite\_* (*vocation*)

## LESSON VIII, Sec. 69

**NOUNS**

*Italia*, -ae\, f., *\_Italy\_*

*Sicilia*, -ae, f., *\_Sicily\_*

*tuba*, -ae\, f., *trumpet* (*tube*)

*via*, -ae\, f., *\_way, road, street\_*

(*viaduct*) **ADJECTIVES** *alta\*, *\_high, deep\_* (*altitude*) *cla:ra\*, *clear, bright; famous* *la:ta\*, *\_wide\_* (*latitude*) *longa\*, *long* (*longitude*) *nova\*, *\_new\_* (*novelty*)

## LESSON IX, Sec. 77



## Page 218

### NOUNS

bellum, -i:\, n., *war* (re-bel)  
 co:nstantia, -ae\, f., *\_firmness, constancy, steadiness\_*  
 dominus, -i:, m., *\_master, lord\_*  
*(dominate)*  
 equus, -i:\, m., *horse* (equine)  
 fru:mentum, -i:\, n., *\_grain\_*  
 le:ga:tus, -i:\, m., *lieutenant, ambassador* (legate)  
 Ma:rcus, -i:\, m., *\_Marcus, Mark\_*  
 mu:rus, -i:\, m., *wall* (mural)  
 oppida:nus, -i:\, m., *\_townsman\_*  
 oppidum, -i:\, n., *town*  
 pi:lum, -i:\, n., *\_spear\_* (*pile driver*)  
 servus, -i:\, m., *slave, servant*  
 Sextus, -i:, m., *Sextus*

### VERBS

cu:rat\, *\_he (she, it) cares for\_, with acc.*  
 properat\, *he (she, it) hastens*

## LESSON X, Sec. 82

NOUNS ami:cus, -i:\, m., *\_friend\_* (amicable) Germa:nia, -ae\, f., *Germany* patria, -ae\, f., *\_fatherland\_* populus, -i:\, m., *people* Rhe:nus, -i:\, m., *\_the Rhine\_* vi:cus, -i:\, m., *village*

LESSON XI, Sec. 86 NOUNS arma, armo:rum\, n., plur., *\_arms\_*, especially *defensive weapons* fa:ma, -ae\, f., *rumor; reputation, fame* galea, -ae\, f., *\_helmet\_* praeda, -ae\, f., *booty, spoils* (predatory) te:lum, -i:\, n., *\_weapon of offense, spear\_*

### ADJECTIVES

du:rus, -a, -um\, *hard, rough; unfeeling, cruel; severe, toilsome*  
*(durable)*  
 Ro:ma:nus, -a, -um\, *\_Roman\_*.  
*As a noun, Ro:ma:nus, -i:, m., \_a Roman\_*



## LESSON XII, Sec. 90

### NOUNS

*fi:lius, fi:li:\, m., \_son\_ (filial)*  
*fluvius, fluvi:\, m., \_river\_ (fluent)*  
*gladius, gladi:\, m., sword*  
*(gladiator)*  
*praesidium, praesi'di:\, n.,*  
*\_garrison, guard, protection\_*  
*proelium, proeli:\, n., battle*

### ADJECTIVES

*fi:nitimus, -a, -um\, \_bordering upon,*  
*neighboring, near to\_.*  
*As a noun, fi:nitimi:, -o:rum,*  
*m., plur., \_neighbors\_*  
*Germa:nus, -a, -um\, German.*  
*As a noun, Germa:nus, -i:, m.,*  
*a German*  
*multus, -a, -um\, \_much\_; plur., \_many\_*

### ADVERB

*saepe\, \_often\_*

## LESSON XIII, Sec. 95

### NOUNS

*ager, agri:\, m., \_field\_ (acre)*  
*co:pia, -ae\, f., plenty, abundance*  
*(copious); plur., troops,*  
*forces*  
*Corne:lius, Corne:'li:\, m.,*  
*\_Cornelius\_*  
*lo:ri:'ca, -ae\, f., coat*  
*of mail, corselet*  
*praemium, praemi:\, n., \_reward, prize\_*  
*(premium)*  
*puer, pueri:\, m., boy (puerile)*  
*Ro:ma, -ae\, f., \_Rome\_*  
*scu:tum, -i:\, n., shield (escutcheon)*  
*vir, viri:\, m., \_man, hero\_ (virile)*



## Page 219

### ADJECTIVES

*legio:na:rius, -a, -um\,[A] \_legionary, belonging to the legion\_.*

*As a noun, legio:na:rii:, -o:rum, m., plur., \_legionary soldiers\_ li:ber, li:bera, li:berum\, free (liberty) As a noun. li:beri:, -o:rum, m., plur., children (lit. the freeborn)*

*pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum\, \_pretty, beautiful\_*

### PREPOSITION

*apud\, \_among\_, with acc.*

### CONJUNCTION

*sed\, \_but\_*

[Footnote A: The genitive singular masculine of adjectives in -ius ends in -ii: and the vocative in -ie; not in -i:, as in nouns.]

## LESSON XIV, Sec. 99

### NOUNS

*auxilium, auxi'li:\, n., \_help, aid\_ (auxiliary)*

*castrum, -i:\, n., fort (castle); plur., camp (lit. forts)*

*cibus, -i:\, m., \_food\_*

*co:nsilium, co:nsi'li:\, n., plan (counsel)*

*di:ligentia, -ae\, f., \_diligence, industry\_*

*magister, magistri:, m., \_master, teacher\_[A]ADJECTIVES aeger, aegra, aegrum\, \_sick\_ cre:ber, cre:bra, cre:brum\, frequent miser, misera, miserum\, \_wretched, unfortunate\_ (miser)*

[Footnote A: Observe that dominus, as distinguished from magister\, means *master*





in the sense of *owner*.]

**LESSON XV, Sec. 107** NOUNS *carrus*, -i:\, m., *\_cart, wagon\_* *inopia*, -ae\, f., *want, lack*; the opposite of *co:pia studium*, *studi:\*, n., *\_zeal, eagerness\_ (study)*

ADJECTIVES

*arma:tus*, -a, -um\, *armed*

*i:nfi:rmus*, -a, -um\, *\_week, feeble\_ (infirm)*

*vali'dus*, -a, -um, *\_strong, sturdy\_*

VERB

*ma:tu:rat\*, *\_he (she, it) hastens.\_*

*Cf. properat*

ADVERB

*iam\*, *\_already, now\_*

*/-que\*, conjunction, *and*; an enclitic (cf. Sec. 16) and always added

to the *second* of two words to be connected, as *arma te:la'que*, *arms and weapons*.

## LESSON XVII, Sec. 117

NOUNS *agri: cultu:ra*, -ae\, f., *\_agriculture\_* *Gallia*, -ae\, f., *Gaul* *domicili:um*, *domi:ci'li:\*, n., *\_dwelling place\_ (domicile)*, *\_abode\_* *Gallus*, -i\, m., *a Gaul* *lacrima*, -ae\, f., *\_tear\_* *fe:mina*, -ae\, f., *woman (female)* *numerus*, -i:\, m., *\_number\_ (numeral)*

ADJECTIVE

*ma:tu:rus*, -a, -um\, *ripe, mature*

ADVERB

*quo:*, *whither*

VERBS

*arat*, *he (she, it) plows* (arable)

*de:si:derat\*, *\_he (she, it) misses, longs for\_ (desire), with acc.*

CONJUNCTION

*an\*, *\_or\_, introducing the second half of a double question, as*

*\_Is he a Roman or a Gaul\_, Estne Romanus an Gallus?*



## Page 220

### LESSON XVIII, Sec. 124

#### NOUNS

lu:dus, -i:, m., *school*  
*socius, soci:\, m., \_companion, ally\_*  
*(social)*

#### ADJECTIVES

i:ra:tus, -a, -um\, *\_angry, furious\_*  
*(irate)*  
laetus, -a, -um\, *happy, glad*  
*(social)*

#### ADVERBS

hodie:, *to-day*  
ibi\, *\_there, in that place\_*  
*mox, \_presently, soon\_, of the immediate*  
*future*  
nunc\, *now, the present moment*  
nu:per\, *\_lately, recently\_, of the*  
*immediate past*

### LESSON XX, Sec. 136

#### NOUNS

fo:rma, -ae\, f., *\_form, beauty\_*  
regi:na, -ae\, f., *queen (regal)*  
poena, -ae\, f., *\_punishment, penalty\_*  
*superbia, -ae, f., \_pride, haughtiness\_*  
potentia, -ae\, f., *power (potent)*  
tri:sti:ti:a, -ae\, f., *\_sadness, sorrow\_*

#### ADJECTIVES

septem\, *indeclinable, \_seven\_*  
superbus, -a, -um\, *proud, haughty*  
*(superb)*

#### CONJUNCTIONS

no:n so:lum ... sed etiam\, *\_not only*  
*... but also\_*

### LESSON XXI, Sec. 140

#### NOUNS



sacrum, -i:, n., *sacrifice, offering, rite*

verbum, -i:\, n., *\_word\_ (verb)*

#### VERBS

sedeo:, -e:re, *sit (sediment)*

volo:, -a:re, *fly (volatile)*

ADJECTIVES *interfectus, -a, -um\, \_slain\_ molestus, -a, -um\, troublesome, annoying (molest) perpetuus, -a, -um\, \_perpetual, continuous\_*

ego\, personal pronoun, *I (egotism).*

Always emphatic in the nominative.

## LESSON XXII, Sec. 146

#### NOUNS

*discipli:na, -ae\, f., \_training, culture, discipline\_*

Gaius, Ga:i:\, m., *Caius, a Roman first name*

*o:rna:mentum, -i:\, n., \_ornament, jewel\_*

*Tiberius, Tibe'ri:, m., \_Tiberius\_, a Roman first name*

#### VERB

*doceo:, -e:re\, \_teach\_ (doctrine)*

#### ADVERB

*maxime:\, \_most of all, especially\_*

#### ADJECTIVE

*anti:quus, -qua, -quum\, \_old, ancient\_ (antique)*

## LESSON XXVII, Sec. 168

#### NOUNS

*a:la, -ae\, f., \_wing\_*

deus, -i:\, m., *god (deity)[A]*

*monstrum, -i:\, n., \_omen, prodigy; monster\_*

*o:ra:culum, -i:, n., \_oracle\_*

#### VERB

*va:sto:, -a:re\, \_lay waste, devastate\_* ADJECTIVES *commo:tus, -a, -um\, \_moved, excited\_ maximus, -a, -um\, greatest (maximum) saevus, -a, -um\, \_fierce, savage\_*

#### ADVERBS

*ita\, thus, in this way, as follows*

*tum\, \_then, at that time\_*

[Footnote A: For the  
declension of deus, see Sec. 468]

## **LESSON XXVIII, Sec. 171**



## Page 221

### VERBS

*respondeo*:, -e:re\, *\_respond, reply\_*

*servo*:, -a:re\, *save, preserve*

### ADJECTIVE

*ca:rus*, -a, -um\, *\_dear\_ (cherish)*

### CONJUNCTION

*autem*\, *\_but, moreover, now\_*.

*Usually stands second, never first*

### NOUN

*vi:ta*, -ae\, f., *\_life\_ (vital)*

## LESSON XXIX, Sec. 176

### VERB

*supero*:, -a:re\, *\_conquer, overcome\_*  
(*insuperable*)

### NOUNS

*cu:ra*, -ae\, f., *\_care, trouble\_*

*locus*, -i:\, m., *place, spot*

(location). *Locus* is neuter in the plural and is declined *loca*,

*-o:rum, etc.*

*peri:culum*, -i:\, n., *\_danger, peril\_*

### ADVERBS

*semper*\, *\_always\_*

*tamen*\, *yet, nevertheless*

### PREPOSITIONS

*de*:\, with *abl.*, *\_down from.; concerning\_*

*per*\, with *acc.*, *through*

### CONJUNCTION

*si*\, *\_if\_*

## LESSON XXX, Sec. 182

### VERBS

*absum, abesse*\, *irreg.*, *\_be away, be*

*absent, be distant\_*, with

*separative abl.*

*adpropinquo*:, -a:re\, *draw near,*

*approach* (*propinquity*), with

*dative[A]*



*contineo*:, -e:re\, \_hold together,  
*hem in, keep\_ (contain)*  
*disce*:do:, -ere\, *depart, go away,*  
*leave, with separative abl.*  
*eg eo*:, -e:re\, \_lack, need, be without\_,  
*with separative abl.*  
*interficio*:, -ere\, *kill*  
*prohibeo*:, -e:re\, \_restrain, keep  
*from\_ (prohibit)*  
*vulnero*:, -a:re\, *wound (vulnerable)*

## NOUNS

*pro:vincia*, -ae\, f., \_province\_  
*vi:num*, -i:\, n., *wine*

## ADJECTIVE

*de:fessus*, -a, -um\, \_weary, worn out\_

## ADVERB

*longe*:\, \_far, by far, far away\_ [Footnote A: This verb governs the dative because the idea of *nearness to* is stronger than that of *motion to*. If the latter idea were the stronger, the word would be used with *ad* and the accusative.]

**LESSON XXXI, Sec. 188**

## NOUNS

*aurum*, -i:, n., *gold (oriole)*  
*mora*, -ae\, f., \_delay\_  
*na:vigium*, *na:vi'gi*:\, n., *boat,*  
*ship*  
*ventus*, -i:\, m., \_wind\_ (*ventilate*)

## VERB

*na:vigo*:, -a:re\, \_sail\_ (*navigate*)

## ADJECTIVES

*attentus*, -a, -um, *attentive,*  
*careful*  
*dubius*, -a, -um\, \_doubtful\_ (*dubious*)  
*perfidus*, -a, -um, \_faithless, treacherous\_  
*(perfidy)*

## ADVERB

*antea*:\, \_before, previously\_

## PREPOSITION

*sine*\, *with abl., \_without\_*

**LESSON XXXII, Sec. 193**

NOUNS *animus*, -i:\, m., \_mind, heart; spirit, feeling\_ (*animate*) *bracchium*, *bracchi*:\, n.,  
*forearm, arm porta*, -ae\, f., \_gate\_ (*portal*)

## ADJECTIVES



adversus, -a, -um\, *opposite*; *adverse*,  
*contrary*  
ple:nus, -a, -um\, *full* (*plenty*)



## Page 222

### PREPOSITION

*pro*\, *with abl.*, *\_before; in behalf of; instead of\_*

### ADVERB

*diu*\, *\_for a long time, long\_*

**LESSON XXXIV, Sec. 200** ADVERBS *celeriter*\, *\_quickly\_ (celerity)* *de:nique*\, *finally* *graviter*\, *\_heavily, severely\_ (gravity)* *subito*\, *suddenly*

### VERB

*reporto*:, *-a:re*\, *-a:vi*:, *\_bring back, restore; win, gain\_ (report)*

## LESSON XXXVI, Sec. 211

*dexter, dextra, dextrum*\, *\_right\_ (dextrous)*

*sinister, sinistra, sinistrum*\, *left*

*fru:stra*:\, *adv.*, *\_in vain\_ (frustrate)*

*gero*:, *gerere, gessi*:, *gestus*\, *\_bear, carry on; wear\_;*

*bellum gerere*\, *to*

*wage war*

*occupo*:, *occupa:re, occupa:vi*:, *occupa:tus*\, *\_seize, take possession*

*of\_ (occupy)*

*postulo*:, *postula:re, postula:vi*:,

*postula:tus*\, *demand*

*(ex-postulate)*

*recu:so*:, *recu:sa:re, recu:sa:vi*:,

*recu:sa:tus*\, *\_refuse\_*

*sto*:, *sta:re, steti*:, *status*\, *stand*

*tempto*:, *tempta:re, tempta:vi*:, *tempta:tus*\, *\_try, tempt, test;*

*attempt\_*

*teneo*:, *tene:re, tenui*:, *—*\,

*keep, hold (tenacious)*

The word *ubi*, which we have used so much in the sense of *where* in

asking a question, has two other uses equally important:





1. *ubi* = *when*, as a relative conjunction  
denoting time; as,

*Ubi mo:nstrum audi:ve:runt,*  
*fu:ge:runt\*, *\_when they heard the*  
*monster, they fled\_*

2. *ubi* = *where*, as a relative conjunction  
denoting place; as,

*Video: oppidum ubi*  
*Galba habitat\*, *\_I see the town where Galba*  
*lives\_ubi\ is called a \_relative conjunction\_ because it is equivalent to a relative*  
*pronoun. \_When\_ in the first sentence is equivalent to \_at the time at which;\_ and in the*  
*second, \_where\_ is equivalent to \_the place in which.\_*

### LESSON XXXVII, Sec. 217

*neque* or *nec\*, conj., *neither*,  
*nor*, and ... *not*;

*neque ... neque\*, *\_neither*  
*... nor\_*

*castellum*, -i:\, n., *redoubt*, *fort*  
(castle)

*coti:die:\*, adv., *\_daily\_*

*cesso:*, *cessa:re*, *cessa:vi:*, *cessa:tus*,  
*cease*, with the infin.

*incipio:*, *incipere*, *ince:pi:*, *inceptus\*,  
*\_begin\_ (incipient)*,

*with the infin.*

*oppugno:*, *oppugna:re*, *oppugna:vi:*,  
*oppugna:tus\*, *storm*, *assail*

*peto:*, *petere*, *petivi* or *petii:*, *peti:tus\*,  
*\_aim at, assail, storm,*

*attack; seek, ask\_ (petition)*

*po:no:*, *po:nere*, *posui:*, *positus\*,  
*place, put (position)*;

*castra po:nere\*, *\_to pitch*  
*camp\_*

*possum*, *posse*, *potui:*, —\,  
*be able, can (potent)*, with the

*infin.*

*veto:*, *veta:re*, *vetui:*, *vetitus\*, *\_forbid\_*  
(*veto*), *vith the infin.;*

*opposite of iubeo:*, *\_command\_*

*vinco:*, *vincere*, *vi:ci:*, *victus\*,  
*conquer (in-vincible)*

*vi:vo:*, *vi:vere*, *vi:xi:*, —\,  
*\_live, be alive\_ (re-vive)*



# Page 223

## LESSON XXXIX, Sec. 234

*barbarus, -a, -um\, \_strange, foreign, barbarous\_. As a noun, barbari:, -o:rum\, m., plur., savages, barbarians*  
*dux, ducis\, m., \_leader\_ (duke).*  
*Cf. the verb du:co:*  
*eques, equitis\, m., horseman, cavalryman (equestrian)*  
*iu:dex, iu:dicis, m., judge*  
*lapis, lapidis\, m., \_stone\_ (lapidary)*  
*mi:les, mi:litis\, m., soldier (militia)*  
*pedes, peditis\, m., \_foot soldier\_ (pedestrian)*  
*pe:s, pedis\,[A] m., foot (pedal)*  
*pri:nceps, pri:ncipis\, m., \_chief\_ (principal)*  
*re:x, re:gis\, m., king (regal)*  
*summus, -a, -um\, \_highest, greatest\_ (summit)*  
*virtu:s, virtu:tis\, f., manliness, courage (virtue)*

[Footnote A: Observe that *e* is *long* in the nom. sing, and *short* in the other cases.]

## LESSON XL, Sec. 237

*Caesar, -aris\, m., \_Caesar\_*  
*capti:vus, -i:\, m., captive, prisoner*  
*co:nsul, -is\, m., \_consul\_*  
*fra:ter, fra:tris\, m., brother (fraternity)*  
*homo:, hominis\, m., \_man, human being\_*  
*impedi:mentum, -i:\, n., hindrance (impediment); plur. impedi:menta, -o:rum\,*



*\_baggage\_*  
 impera:tor, impera:to:ris\, m., *commander*  
*in chief, general*  
 (emperor)  
 legio:, legio:nis\, f., *\_legion\_*  
 ma:ter, ma:tris\, f., *mother*  
 (maternal)  
 o:rdo:, o:rdinis\, m., *\_row, rank\_*  
 (order)  
 pater, patris\, m., *father*  
 (paternal)  
 salu:s, salu:tis\, f., *\_safety\_ (salutary)*  
 soror, soro:ris\, f., *sister*  
 (sorority)

## LESSON XLI, Sec. 239

*calamita:s, calamita:tis\, f., \_loss, disaster, defeat\_ (calamity)* caput, capitis\, n., *head*  
 (capital) flu:men, flu:minis\, n., *\_river\_ (flume)* labor, labo:ris\, m., *labor, toil opus,*  
*operis\, n., \_work, task\_* o:ra:tor, o:ra:to:ris\, m., *orator* ri:pa, -ael, f., *\_bank\_ (of a*  
*stream)* tempus, temporis\, n., *time (temporal)* terror, terro:ris\, m., *\_terror, fear\_* victor,  
 victo:ris\, m., *victor*  
 accipio:, accipere, acce:pi:, acceptus\,  
*\_receive, accept\_*  
 co:nfirmo:, co:nfi:rma:re, co:nfi:rma:vi:,  
 co:nfi:rma:tus\,  
*strengthen = establish,*  
*encourage (confirm)*

## LESSON XLIII, Sec. 245

*animal, anima:lis (-ium[A])\, n., \_animal\_*  
 avis, avis (-ium)\, f., *bird*  
 (aviation)  
 caede:s, caedis (-ium)\, f., *\_slaughter\_*  
*calcar, calca:ris (-ium), n., \_spur\_*  
 ci:vis, ci:vis (-ium)\, m. and f.,  
*citizen (civic)*  
 clie:ns, clientis (-ium)\, m., *\_retainer,*  
*dependent\_ (client)*  
 fi:nis, fi:nis (-ium)\, m., *end,*



## Page 224

limit (final);

plur., *country, territory*  
*hostis, hostis (-ium)\, m. and f.,*  
*\_enemy\_ in war (hostile).*

*Distinguish from inimi:cus,*  
*which means a \_personal\_ enemy*  
ignis, ignis (-ium)\, m., *fire*  
(ignite)

*i:nsigne, i:nsignis (-ium)\, n. \_decoration,*  
*badge\_ (ensign)*

mare, maris (-ium[B])\, n., *sea*  
(marine)

*na:vis, na:vis (-ium)\, f., \_ship\_*  
(*naval*);

*na:vis longa\, man-of-war*  
*turris, turris (-ium)\, f., \_tower\_*  
(*turret*)

urbs, urbis (-ium)\, f., *city*  
(suburb). An *urbs\ is larger than an*  
*oppidum\.*

[Footnote A: The genitive  
plural ending -ium is written to mark the  
i-stems.]

[Footnote B: The genitive  
plural of mare is not in use.]

## LESSON XLIV, Sec. 249

*arbor, arboris\, f., \_tree\_ (arbor)*  
*collis, collis (-ium)\, m., hill*  
*de:ns, dentis (-ium)\, m., \_tooth\_*  
(*dentist*)

*fo:ns, fontis (-ium), m.. \_fountain,*  
*spring; source\_*  
*iter, itineris\, n., march, journey,*



*route* (itinerary)  
*me:nsis, me:nsis (-ium)\, m., \_month\_*  
*moenia, -ium\, n., plur., walls,*  
*fortifications. Cf. mu:rus*  
*mo:ns, montis (-ium)\, m., \_mountain\_;*  
*summus mo:ns\, top*  
*of the mountain*  
*numquam\, adv., \_never\_*  
*po:ns, pontis\, m., bridge*  
*(pontoon)*  
*sanguis, sanguinis\, m., blood (sanguinary)*  
*summus, -a, -um\, highest, greatest*  
*(summit)*  
*tra:ns\, prep, with acc., \_across\_*  
*(transatlantic)*  
*vi:s (vi:s)\, gen. plur. virium\,*  
*f. \_strength, force, violence\_*  
*(vim)*

**LESSON XLV, Sec. 258** *a:cer, a:cris, a:crel, \_sharp, keen, eager\_ (acrid) brevis,*  
*breve\, short, brief difficilis, difficile\, \_difficult\_ facilis, facile\, facile, easy fortis, forte\,*  
*\_brave\_ (fortitude) gravis, grave\, heavy, severe, serious (grave) omnis, omne\, \_every,*  
*all\_ (omnibus) pa:r\, gen. paris\, \_equal\_ (par) pauci:, -ae, -a\, few, only a few (paucity)*  
*secundus, -a, -um\, \_second; favorable\_, opposite of adversus signum, -i:\, n., signal,*  
*sign, standard ve:lo:x\, gen. ve:lo:cis\, swift (velocity)*  
*conloco:, conloca:re, conloca:vi:,*  
*conloca:tus\, \_arrange, station,*  
*place\_ (collocation)*  
*de:mo:nstro:, de:mo:nstra:re, de:mo:nstra:vi:,*  
*de:mo:nstra:tus\,*  
*point out, explain*  
*(demonstrate)*  
*mando:, manda:re, manda:vi:, manda:tus\,*  
*\_commit, intrust\_ (mandate)*

## LESSON XLVI, Sec. 261



## Page 225

*adventus, -u:s\, m., \_approach, arrival\_*  
*(advent)*  
*ante\, prep, with acc., before*  
*(ante-date)*  
*cornu:, -u:s\, n., \_horn, wing\_ of*  
*an army (cornucopia);*  
*a: dextro: cornu:\,*  
*on the right wing;*  
*a: sinistro:*  
*cornu:\, \_on the left wing\_*  
*equita:tus, -u:s\, m., cavalry*  
*exercitus, -u:s\, m., \_army\_*  
*impetus, -u:s\, m., attack*  
*(impetus);*  
*impetum facere in\, with*  
*acc., \_to make an attack on\_*  
*lacus, -u:s\, dat. and abl. plur.*  
*lacubus, m., lake*  
*manus, -u:s\, f., \_hand; band, force\_*  
*(manual)*  
*portus, -u:s\, m., harbor (port)*  
*post\, prep, with acc., \_behind, after\_*  
*(post-mortem)*  
*cremo:, crema:re, crema:vi:, crema:tus\,*  
*\_burn\_ (cremate)*  
*exerceo:, exerce:re, exercui:, exercitus\,*  
*practice, drill, train*  
*(exercise)*

### LESSON XLVII, Sec. 270

*Athe:nae, -a:rum, f., plur., Athens*  
*Corinthus, -i:, f., Corinth*  
*domus, -u:s\, locative domi:\,*  
*f., house, home (dome).*  
*Cf. domicilium*  
*Gena:va, -ae\, f., \_Geneva\_*  
*Pompe:ii, -o:rum, m., plur., \_Pompeii\_,*  
*a city in Campania. See map*  
*propter\, prep. with acc., on account*  
*of, because of*  
*ru:s, ru:ris, in the plur. only*



nom. and acc. ru:ra, n., *country*  
(rustic)

tergum, tergi:\, n., *\_back\_*; a:  
tergo:, *\_behind, in the rear\_*  
vulnus, vulneris\, n., *wound*  
(vulnerable)

committo:, committere, commi:si:, commissus\,  
*\_intrust, commit;\_*  
proelium committere\,  
*join battle*  
convoco:, convoca:re, convoca:vi:,  
convoca:tus\, *\_call together,*  
*summon\_ (convoke)*  
timeo:, time:re, timui:, —\,  
*fear; be afraid (timid)*  
verto:, vertere, verti:, versus\, *\_turn,*  
*change\_ (convert);*  
terga vertere\, *to*  
*turn the backs, hence to retreat*

## LESSON XLVIII, Sec. 276

acie:s, -e:i:\, f., *\_line of battle\_*  
aesta:s, aesta:tis\, f., *summer*  
annus, -i:\, m., *\_year\_ (annual)*  
die:s, die:i:\, m., *day (diary)*  
fide:s, fidei:\, no plur., f., *\_faith,*  
*trust; promise, word;*  
*protection\_*; in fidem veni:re,  
*\_to come under the protection\_*  
fluctus, -u:s\, m. *wave, billow*  
(fluctuate)  
hiems, hiemis\, f., *\_winter\_*  
ho:ra, -ae\, f., *hour*  
lu:x, lu:cis\, f., *\_light\_ (lucid);*  
pri:ma lux, *\_daybreak\_*  
meri:die:s\, acc. -em, abl. -e:, no  
plur., m., *midday*  
(meridian)  
nox, noctis (-ium)\, f., *\_night\_ (nocturnal)*  
pri:mus, -a, -um\, *first (prime)*  
re:s, rei:\, f., *\_thing, matter\_ (real);*



re:s gestae\, *deeds*,  
*exploits* (lit. *things performed*);  
re:s adversae\, *\_adversity\_*;  
re:s secundae\, *prosperity*  
spe:s, spei:\, *f., \_hope\_*





## Page 226

### LESSON XLIX, Sec. 283

*ami:citia, -ae\, f., \_friendship\_ (amicable)*

*itaque\, conj., and so, therefore,*

*accordingly*

*littera, -ae\, f., \_a letter\_ of the*

*alphabet;*

*plur., \_a letter, an epistle\_*

*metus, metu:s\, m., fear*

*nihil\, indeclinable, n., \_nothing\_ (nihilist)*

*nu:ntius, nu:nti:\, m., messenger.*

*Cf. nu:ntio:*

*pa:x, pa:cis\, f., \_peace\_ (pacify)*

*re:gnum, -i:\, n., reign, sovereignty, kingdom*

*supplicum, suppli'ci:\, n., \_punishment\_;*

*supplicum su:mere de:\,*

*with abl., inflict punishment on;*

*supplicum dare\, \_suffer*

*punishment\_. Cf. poena*

*placeo:, place:re, placui:, placitus\,*

*\_be pleasing to, please\_,*

*with dative. Cf.*

*Sec. 154*

*su:mo:, su:mere, su:mpsi:, su:mptus\,*

*take up, assume*

*sustineo:, sustine:re, sustinui:, sustentus\,*

*\_sustain\_*

### LESSON L, Sec. 288

*corpus, corporis\, n., \_body\_ (corporal) de:nsus, -a, -um\, dense i:dem, e'adem, idem\,*

*demonstrative pronoun, \_the same\_ (identity) ipse, ipsa, ipsum\, intensive pronoun,*

*self; even, very mi:rus, -a, -um\, \_wonderful, marvelous\_ (miracle) o:lim\, adv., formerly,*

*once upon a time pars, partis (-ium)\, f., \_part, region, direction\_ quoque\, adv., also.*

*Stands after the word which it emphasizes so:l, so:lis\, m., \_sun\_ (solar) ve:rus, -a,*

*-um\, true, real (verity)*

*de:beo:, de:be:re, de:bui:, de:bitus\,*

*\_owe, ought\_ (debt)*

*e:ripio:, e:ripere, e:ripui:, e:reptus\,*



*snatch from*

### LESSON LI, Sec. 294

*hic, haec, hoc\, demonstrative pronoun,*

*\_this\_ (of mine);*

*\_he, she, it\_*

*ille, illa, illud\, demonstrative  
pronoun that (yonder);*

*he, she, it*

*invi:sus, -a, -um\, \_hateful, detested\_,  
with dative Cf. Sec. 143*

*iste, ista, istud\, demonstrative  
pronoun, that (of yours);*

*he, she, it*

*li:berta:s, -a:tis\, f., \_liberty\_*

*modus, -i:\, m., measure; manner,  
way, mode*

*no:men, no:minis\, n., \_name\_ (nominate)*

*oculus, -i:\, m., eye (oculist)*

*pri:stinus, -a, -um\, \_former, old-time\_  
(pristine)*

*pu:blicus, -a, -um\, public, belonging  
to the state;*

*re:s pu:blica, rei:*

*pu:blicae\, f., \_the commonwealth, the state,  
the republic\_*

*vesti:gium, vesti:'gi:\, n.,*

*footprint, track; trace, vestige*

*vo:x, vo:cis\, f., \_voice\_*

### LESSON LII, Sec. 298

*incolumis, -e\, \_unharméd\_*

*ne: ... quidem\, adv., not*

*even. The emphatic word stands between*

*ne:\ and quidem*

*nisi\, conj., unless, if ... not*

*paene\, adv., \_almost\_ (pen-insula)*

*satis\, adv., enough, sufficiently  
(satisfaction)*

*tantus, -a, -um\, \_so great\_*

*ve:ro:\, adv., truly, indeed, in  
fact. As a conj. but, however,*



usually stands second, never  
first.



## Page 227

*de:cido:, de:cidere, de:cidi:, —\, \_fall down\_ (deciduous) de:silio:, de:sili:re, de:silui:, de:sultus\, leap down, dismount maneo:, mane:re, ma:nsi:, ma:nsu:rus\, \_remain\_ tra:du:co:, tra:du:cere, tra:du:xi:, tra:ductus\, lead across*

### LESSON LIII, Sec. 306

*aquila, -ae\, f., \_eagle\_ (aquiline)  
 auda:x\, gen. auda:cis\, adj.,  
 \_bold, audacious\_  
 celer, celeris, celere\, swift,  
 quick (celerity). Cf. ve:lo:x  
 explo:rato:r, -o:ris\, m., \_scout,  
 spy\_ (explorer)  
 inge:ns\, gen. ingentis\, adj.,  
 \_huge, vast\_  
 medius, -a, -um\, middle, middle  
 part of (medium)  
 me:ns, mentis (-ium)\, f., \_mind\_ (mental).  
 Cf. animus  
 opportu:nus, -a, -um\, opportune  
 quam\, adv., \_than\_. With the  
 superlative *quam* gives the force of  
 \_as possible\_, as *quam auda:cissimi:*  
*viri:, \_men as bold as*  
*possible\_*  
 recens\, gen. recentis\, adj.,  
 \_recent\_  
 tam\, adv., so. Always  
 with an adjective or adverb, while *ita* is  
 generally used with a verb*

*quaero:, quaerere, quaesi:vi:, quaesi:tus\,*  
*\_ask, inquire, seek\_*  
*(question). Cf. peto:*

### LESSON LIV, Sec. 310

*alacer, alacris, alacre\, \_eager, spirited,*  
*excited\_ (alacrity)  
 celerita:s, -a:tis\, f., speed  
 (celerity)  
 cla:mor, cla:mo:ris\, m., \_shout, clamor\_*



le:nis, le:ne\, *mild, gentle*  
 (lenient)  
*mulier, muli'eris\, f., \_woman\_*  
*multitu:do:, multitu:dinis\, f., multitude*  
*ne:mo:\, dat. ne:mini:\, acc. ne:minem\*  
*(gen. nu:lli:us\,*  
*abl. nu:llo:\, from nu:llus\),*  
*no plur., m. and f., no one*  
*no:bilis, no:bile\, \_well known, noble\_*  
*noctu:\, adv. (an old abl.), by*  
*night (nocturnal)*  
*statim\, adv., \_immediately, at once\_*  
*subito:\, adv., suddenly*  
*tardus, -a, -um\, \_slow\_ (tardy)*  
*cupio:, cupere, cupi:vi:, cupi:tus\,*  
*desire, wish (cupidity)*

#### LESSON LV, Sec. 314

*aedificium, aedifi'ci:\, n.,*  
*\_building, dwelling\_ (edifice)*  
*imperium, impe'ri:\, n., command,*  
*chief power; empire*  
*mors, mortis (-ium)\, f., \_death\_ (mortal)*  
*reliquus, -a, -um\, remaining,*  
*rest of. As a noun, m. and n. plur.,*  
*the rest (relic)*  
*scelus, sceleris\, n., \_crime\_*  
*servitu:s, -u:tis\, f., slavery*  
*(servitude)*  
*valle:s, vallis (-ium)\, f., \_valley\_*  
*abdo:, abdere, abdidi:, abditus\, \_hide\_*  
*contendo:, contendere, contendi:,*  
*contentus\, strain, struggle;*  
*hasten (contend)*  
*occi:do:, occi:dere, occi:di:, occi:sus\,*  
*\_cut down, kill\_.*  
*Cf. neco:\, interficio:\*  
*perterreo:, perterre:re, perterrui:,*



## Page 228

perterritus\, *terrify*,  
*frighten*  
*recipio*:, *recipere*, *rece:pi*:, *receptus*\,  
*\_receive, recover\_*;  
*se*: *recipere*\, *betake*  
*one's self, withdraw, retreat*  
*tra:do*:, *tra:dere*, *tra:didi*:, *tra:ditus*\,  
*\_give over, surrender*,  
*deliver\_ (traitor)*

### LESSON LVI, Sec. 318

*aditus*, *-u:s*\, *m.*, *\_approach, access*;  
*entrance\_*  
*ci:vita:s*, *ci:vita:tis*\, *f.*, *citizenship*;  
*body of citizens, state*  
*(city)*  
*inter*\, *prep, with acc.*, *\_between*,  
*among\_ (interstate commerce)*  
*nam*\, *conj.*, *for*  
*obses, obsidis*\, *m. and f.*, *\_hostage\_*  
*paulo*:\, *adv. (abl. n. of paulus)*,  
*\_by a little, somewhat\_*  
*incolo*:, *incolere*, *incolui*:, *—*\,  
*transitive, \_inhabit\_*;  
*intransitive, \_dwell\_*.  
*Cf. habito*:, *vi:vo*:  
*relinquo*:, *relinquere*, *reli:qui*:,  
*relictus*\, *leave, abandon*  
*(relinquish)*  
*statuo*:, *statuere*, *statui*:, *statu:tus*\,  
*\_fix, decide\_ (statute)*,  
*usually with infin.*

### LESSON LVII, Sec. 326

*aequus*, *-a, -um*\, *\_even, level; equal\_*  
*cohors, cohortis (-ium)*\, *f.*, *cohort*,  
*a tenth part of a legion*,  
*about 360 men*



*curro:, currere, cucurri:, cursus\,*  
*\_run\_ (course)*  
*difficulta:s, -a:tis\, f., difficulty*  
*fossa, -ae\, f., \_ditch\_ (fosse)*  
*ge:ns, gentis (-ium)\, f., race,*  
*tribe, nation (Gentile)*  
*nego:tium, nego:ti:\, n., \_business,*  
*affair, matter\_ (negotiate)*  
*regio:, -o:nis\, f., region, district*  
*ru:mor, ru:mo:ris\, m., \_rumor, report\_.*  
*Cf. fa:ma*  
*simul atque\, conj., as soon as*  
*suscipio:, suscipere, susce:pi:, susceptus\,*  
*\_undertake\_*  
*traho:, trahere, tra:xi:, tra:ctus\,*  
*drag, draw (ex-tract)*  
*valeo:, vale:re, valui:, valitu:rus\,*  
*\_be strong\_; plu:rimum vale:re,*  
*\_to be most powerful, have*  
*great influence\_ (value). Cf. validus*

## LESSON LVIII, Sec. 332

*commea:tus, -u:s\, m., \_provisions\_ la:titu:do:, -inis\, f., width (latitude) longitu:do:, -inis\,*  
*f., \_length\_ (longitude) magnitu:do:, -inis\, f., size, magnitude merca:tor, merca:to:ris\,*  
*m., \_trader, merchant\_ mu:ni:ti:o:, -o:nis\, f., fortification (munition) spatium, spati:\, n.,*  
*\_room, space, distance; time\_*  
*cogno:sco:, cogno:scere, cogno:vi:,*  
*cognitus\, learn;*  
*in the perfect tenses, know*  
*(re-cognize)*  
*co:go:, co:gere, coe:gi:, coa:ctus\,*  
*\_collect; compel\_ (cogent)*  
*de:fendo:, de:fendere, de:fendi:,*  
*de:fe:nsus\, defend*  
*incendo:, incendere, incendi:, ince:nsus\,*  
*\_set fire to, burn\_*  
*(incendiary). Cf. cremo:*  
*obteneo:, obtine:re, obtinui:, obtentus\,*  
*possess, occupy, hold*  
*(obtain)*  
*pervenio:, perveni:re, perve:ni:, perventus\,*  
*\_come through, arrive\_*



## Page 229

### LESSON LIX, Sec. 337

*agmen, agminis\, n., \_line of march, column\_;*  
*pri:mum agmen\, the van;*  
*novissimum agmen\, \_the rear\_*  
*atque\, ac\, conj., \_and\_;* *atque* *is used before vowels and consonants, ac before consonants only. Cf. et and -que*  
*concilium, concilii\, n., council, assembly*  
*Helvetii:, -orum\, m., \_the Helvetii\_, a Gallic tribe*  
*passus, passus\, m., a pace, five Roman feet;*  
*mi:lle passuum\, \_a thousand (of) paces\_, a Roman mile*  
*qua: de: causa:\, for this reason, for what reason*  
*va:llum, -i:\, n., \_earth-works, rampart\_*  
*cado:, cadere, cecidi:, ca:su:rus\, \_fall\_ (decadence)*  
*de:do:, de:dere, de:didi:, de:ditus\, surrender, give up;*  
*with a reflexive pronoun, surrender one's self, submit, with the dative of the indirect object*  
*premo:, premere, pressi:, pressus\, \_press hard, harass\_*  
*vexo:, vexa:re, vexa:vi:, vexa:tus\, annoy, ravage (vex)*

### LESSON LX, Sec. 341

*aut\, conj., \_or\_;* *aut ... aut, \_either ... or\_*





causa:\, abl. of causa, *for the sake of, because of*. Always stands after the gen. which modifies it  
 fere:\, adv., *\_nearly, almost\_*  
 opi:nio:, -o:nis\, f., *opinion, supposition, expectation*  
 re:s fru:menta:ria, rei: fru:menta:riae\, f. (lit. *\_the grain affair\_*), *\_grain supply\_*  
 timor, -o:ris\, m., *fear*.  
 Cf. timeo:  
 undique\, adv., *\_from all sides\_*  
 co:nor, co:na:ri:, co:na:tus sum\, *\_attempt, try\_*  
 e:gredior, e:gredi:, e:gressus sum\, *move out, disembark;*  
 pro:gredior\, *\_move forward, advance\_ (egress, progress)*  
 moror, mora:ri:, mora:tus sum\, *delay*  
 orior, oriri:, ortus sum\, *\_arise, spring; begin; be born\_*  
 (*\_from\_*) (*origin*)  
 profici:scor, profici:sci:, profectus sum\, *set out*  
 revertor, reverti:, reversus sum\, *\_return\_ (revert)*. The forms of this verb are usually active, and not deponent, in the perfect system. Perf. act., reverti:  
 sequor, sequi:, secu:tus sum\, *follow* (sequence). Note the following compounds of *sequor* and the force of the different prefixes:  
 co:nsequor\ (*follow with*), *overtake;*  
 i:nsequor\ (*\_follow against\_*), *\_pursue\_;*  
 subsequor\ (*follow under*), *follow close after*

### **LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY**

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not to be used as such; they are inserted to show etymological meanings.



[Transcriber's Note:

The “parentheses” were originally  
printed as [square brackets]. They  
are rendered here as [[double brackets]].]



# Page 230

## A

a: or ab, prep. with abl. *from, by, off*.

Translated *on* in a: dextro:

cornu:, *on the right wing*;

a: fronte, *on the front* or  
*in front*;

a: dextra:, *on the right*;

a: latere, *on the side; etc.*

ab-do:, -ere, -didi:, -ditus, *hide, conceal*

ab-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus, *lead off, lead  
away*

abs-ci:do:, -ere, -ci:di:, -ci:sus [[ab(s), *off*,  
+ caedo:, *cut*]],  
*cut off*

ab-sum, -esse, a:fui:, a:futu:rus, *be away, be  
absent, be distant*,

*be off*; with a: or

ab and abl., Sec. 501.32

ac, conj., see atque

ac-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi:, -ceptus [[ad, *to*,  
+ capio:, *take*]],  
*receive, accept*

a:cer, a:cris, a:cre, adj. *sharp*; figuratively,  
*keen, active, eager*

(Sec. 471)

acerbus, -a, -um, adj. *bitter, sour*

acie:s, -e:i:, f. [[a:cer, *sharp*]], *edge*;  
*line of battle*

a:criter, adv. [[a:cer, *sharp*]], compared a:crius,  
a:cerrime:,

*sharply, fiercely*

ad, prep. with acc. *to, towards, near*.

With the gerund or gerundive, *to, for*

ad-aequo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *make equal, make  
level with*

ad-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus, *lead to; move,  
induce*

ad-eo:, -i:re, -ii:, -itus, *go to, approach, draw  
near, visit, with*



acc. (Sec. 413)  
 ad-fero:, ad-ferre, at-tuli:, ad-la:tus, *bring*,  
*convey; report*,  
*announce; render, give*  
 (Sec. 426)  
 ad-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[ad, *to*,  
 + facio:, *do*]],  
*affect, visit*  
 adfli:cta:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of adfli:cto:,  
*shatter*]],  
*shattered*  
 ad-fli:go:, -ere, -fli:xi:, -fli:ctus, *dash upon*,  
*strike upon; harass*,  
*distress*  
 ad-hibeo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[ad, *to*, + habeo:,  
*hold*]], *apply*,  
*employ, use*  
 ad-hu:c, adv. *hitherto, as yet, thus far*  
 aditus, -u:s, m. [[adeo:, *approach*]], *approach*,  
*access; entrance*.

Cf. adventus

ad-ligo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *bind to, fasten*  
 ad-loquor, -loqui:, -locu:tus sum, dep. verb [[ad,  
*to*, + loquor,  
*speak*]], *speak to*,  
*address, with acc.*  
 ad-ministro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *manage, direct*  
 admi:ra:tio:, -o:nis, f. [[admi:ror, *wonder at*]],  
*admiration*,  
*astonishment*  
 ad-moveo:, -e:re, -mo:vi:, -mo:tus, *move to; apply*,  
*employ*  
 ad-propinquo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *come near*,  
*approach, with dat.*  
 ad-sum, -esse, -fui:, -futu:res, *be present; assist*;  
 with dat., Sec.

426

adule:sce:ns, -entis, m. and f. [[part. of adole:sco:,  
*grow*]], *a*  
*youth, young man, young person*  
 adventus, -u:s, m. [[ad, *to*, + venio:, *come*]],  
*approach*,



## Page 231

arrival (Sec. 466)

adversus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of adverteo:, *turn to*]], *turned*

*towards, facing; contrary, adverse.*

re:s adversae, *adversity*

aedificium, aedifi'ci:, n. [[aedifico:, *build*]], *building, edifice*

aedifico:, -a:re, -a:vi, -a:tus [[aede:s, *house*, + facio:, *make*]], *build*

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *sick, feeble*

aequa:lis, -e, adj. *equal, like*. As a noun, *aequa:lis*, -is, m. or f.

*one of the same age*

aequus, -a, -um, adj. *even, level; equal*

Aeso:pus, -i:, m. *Aesop*, a writer of fables

aesta:s, -a:tis, f. *summer*,

inita: aesta:te, *at the beginning of summer*

aeta:s, -a:tis, f. *age*

Aethiopia, -ae, f. *Ethiopia*, a country in Africa

A:frica, -ae, f. *Africa*

A:frica:nus, -a, -um, adj. *of Africa*.

A name given to Scipio for his

victories in Africa

ager, agri:, m. *field, farm, land* (Sec. 462.c)

agger, -eris, m. *mound*

agmen, -inis, n. [[ago:, *drive*]], *an army on the march, column*.

pri:mum agmen, *the van*

ago:, -ere, e:gi:, a:ctus, *drive, lead; do, perform*.

vi:tam agere, *pass life*

agricola, -ae, m. [[ager, *field*, + colo:, *cultivate*]], *farmer*

agri: cultu:ra, -ae, f. *agriculture*

a:la, -ae, f. *wing*

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj. *active, eager*.

Cf. a:cer



alacrita:s, -a:tis, f. [[alacer, *active*]],  
*eagerness, alacrity*  
 alacriter, adv. [[alacer, *active*]], comp alacrius,  
 alacerrime:,  
*actively, eagerly*  
 albus, -a, -um, adj., *white*  
 alce:s, -is, f. *elk*  
 Alcme:na, -ae, f. *Alcme'na*, the mother  
 of Hercules  
 aliquis (-qui:), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron.  
*some one, some*  
 (Sec. 487)  
 alius, -a, -ud (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *another,*  
*other.*  
 alius ... alius, *one ... another.*  
 alii: ... alii:, *some ... others*  
 (Sec. 110)  
 Alpe:s, -ium, f. plur. *the Alps*  
 alter, -era, -erum (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *the*  
*one, the other*  
 (of two).  
 alter ... alter, *the one ... the other*  
 (Sec. 110)  
 altitu:do:, -inis, f. [[altus, *high*]], *height*  
 altus, -a, -um, adj. *high, tall, deep*  
 Ama:zone:s, -um, f. plur. *Amazons*, a fabled  
 tribe of warlike women  
 ambo:, -ae, -o:, adj. (decl. like duo), *both*  
 ami:ce:, adv. [[ami:cus, *friendly*]], superl.  
 ami:cissime:, *in a*  
*friendly manner*  
 amicio:, -i:re, —, -ictus [[am-,  
*about, + iacio:, throw*]],  
*throw around, wrap about,*  
*clothe*  
 ami:citia, -ae, f. [[ami:cus, *friend*]], *friendship*  
 ami:cus, -a, -um, adj. [[amo:, *love*]], *friendly.*  
 As a noun,  
 ami:cus, -i:, m. *friend*



## Page 232

a:-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus, *send away; lose*  
 amo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *love, like, be fond*  
 of (Sec. 488)

amphithea:trum, -i:, n. *amphitheater*

amplus, -a, -um, adj. *large, ample; honorable, noble*

an, conj. *or*, introducing the second part of a double question

ancilla, -ae, f. *maidservant*

ancora, -ae, f. *anchor*

Andromeda, -ae, f. *Androm'eda*, daughter of Cepheus and wife of

Perseus

angulus, -i:, m. *angle, corner*

anim-adverto:, -ere, -ti:, -sus [[animus, *mind*, + adverto:, *turn* to]], *turn the mind*

*to, notice*

animal, -a:lis, n. [[anima, *breath*]], *animal* (Sec. 465.b)

animo:sus, -a, -um, adj. *spirited*

animus, -i:, m. [[anima, *breath*]], *mind, heart; spirit, courage, feeling; in this sense*

often plural

annus, -i, m. *year*

ante, prep, with acc. *before*

antea:, adv. [[ante]], *before, formerly*

anti:quus, -a, -um, adj. [[ante, *before*]], *former, ancient, old*

aper, apri:, m. *wild boar*

Apollo:, -inis, m. *Apollo*, son of Jupiter and Latona, brother of

Diana

ap-pa:reo:, -e:re, -ui:, — [[ad + pa:reo:, *appear*]], *appear*

ap-pello:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *call by name, name*. Cf. no:mino:,

voco:



Appius, -a, -um, adj. *Appian*

ap-plico:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *apply, direct, turn*

apud, prep, with acc. *among; at, at the house of*

aqua, -ae, f. *water*

aquila, -ae, f. *eagle*

a:ra, -ae, f. *altar*

arbitror, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum, *think, suppose*

(Sec. 420.c). Cf.

exi:stimo:, puto:

arbor, -oris, f. *tree* (Sec. 247.1.a)

Arcadia, -ae, f. *Arcadia*, a district in southern Greece

a:rdeo:, -e:re, a:rsi:, a:rsu:rus, *be on fire, blaze, burn*

arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep*

Ari:cia, -ae, f. *Aricia*, a town on the Appian Way, near Rome

arie:s, -etis, m. *battering-ram* (p. 221)

arma, -o:rum, n. plur. *arms, weapons*.

Cf. te:lum

arma:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[armo:, *arm*]], *armed, equipped*

aro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *plow, till*

ars, artis, f. *art, skill*

articulus, -i:, m. *joint*

ascri:bo:, -ere, -scri:psi:, -scri:ptus [[ad, *in addition*, + scri:bo:, *write*]], *enroll, enlist*

A:sia, -ae, f. *Asia, i.e. Asia Minor*

at, conj. *but*. Cf. autem, sed

Athe:nae, -a:rum, f. plur. *Athens*

Atla:s, -antis, m. *Atlas*, a Titan who was said to hold up the sky

at-que, ac, conj. *and, and also, and what is more*.

atque may be

used before either vowels

or consonants, ac before consonants only

attentus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of attendo:, *direct* (the mind)

*toward*]], *attentive,*

*intent on, careful*



## Page 233

at-tonitus, -a, -um, adj. *thunderstruck, astounded*

auda:cia, -ae, f. [[auda:x, *bold*]], *boldness, audacity*

auda:cter, adv. [[auda:x, *bold*]], compared

auda:cius, auda:cissime:,  
*boldly*

auda:x, -a:cis, adj. *bold, daring*

audeo:, -e:re, ausus sum, *dare*

audio:, -i:re, -i:vi: or -i:i:, -i:tus, *hear, listen to* (Secs. 420.d,

491)

Auge:a:s, -ae, m. *Auge'as*, a king whose  
stables Hercules cleaned

aura, -ae, f. *air, breeze*

aura:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[aurum, *gold*]], *adorned with gold*

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [[aurum, *gold*]], *golden*

aurum, -i:, n. *gold*

aut, conj. *or*.

aut ... aut, *either ... or*

autem, conj., usually second, never first, in the  
clause, *but*,

*moreover, however, now*.

Cf. at, sed

auxilium, auxi'li:, n. *help, aid, assistance*;

plur. *auxiliaries*

a:-verto:, -ere, -ti:, -sus, *turn away, turn aside*

avis, -is, f. *bird* (Sec. 243.1)

## B

ballista, -ae, f. *ballista*, an engine for hurling  
missiles (p. 220) balteus, -i:, m. *belt, sword*

*belt barbarus*, -i:, m. *barbarian, savage*

bellum, -i:, n. *war*.



bellum i:nferre, with dat. *make war upon*  
 bene, adv. [[for bone:, from bonus]], compared melius, optime:,  
*well*  
 benigne:, adv. [[benignus, *kind*]], compared benignius,  
 benignissime:, *kindly*  
 benignus, -a, -um, adj. *good-natured, kind*, often used with dat. bi:ni:, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *two each, two at a time*  
 (Sec. 334)  
 bis, adv. *twice* bonus, -a, -um, adj. compared melior, optimus, *good, kind*  
 (Sec. 469.a)  
 bo:s, bovis (gen. plur. boum or bovum, dat. and abl. plur. bo:bus  
 or bu:bus), m. and f. *ox, cow*  
 brachium, bracchi:, n. *arm brevis, -e, adj. short* Brundisium, -i:, n. *Brundisium*, a seaport in southern Italy. See map bulla, -ae, f. *bull*, a locket made of small concave plates of gold  
 fastened by a spring (p. 212)

## C

C. abbreviation for Ga:ius, Eng. *Caius* cado:, -ere, ce'cidi:, ca:su:rus, *fall* caede:s, -is, f. [[caedo:, *cut*]], (*a cutting down*), *slaughter, carnage* (Sec. 465.a)  
 caelum, -i:, n. *sky, heavens* Caesar, -aris, m. *Caesar*, the famous general, statesman, and writer calamita:s, -a:tis, f. *loss, calamity, defeat, disaster* calcar, -a:ris, n. *spur* (Sec. 465.b) Campa:nia, -ae, f. *Campania.*, a district of central Italy. See map Campa:nus, -a, -um, adj. *of Campania* campus, -i:, m. *plain, field*, esp. the *Campus Martius*, along the Tiber just outside the walls

of Rome

canis, -is, m. and f. *dog* cano:, -ere, ce'cini:,



# Page 234

—, *sing* canto:, -a:re, -a:vi,  
-a:tus [[cano:, *sing*]], *sing* Cape:nus,  
-a, -um, adj. of *Capena*, esp. the *Porta Cape'na*,  
the gate

at Rome leading to the Appian

Way

capio:, -ere, ce:pi:, captus, *take, seize, capture*  
(Sec. 492) Capito:li:nus, -a, -um, adj. *belonging*  
*to the Capitol, Capitoline* Capito:lium, Capito:'li:,  
n. [[caput, *head*]], *the Capitol*, the  
hill

at Rome on which stood the  
temple of Jupiter Capitolinus and the  
citadel

capsa, -ae, f. *box* for books capti:vus, -i:,  
m. [[capio:, *take*]], *captive* Capua,  
-ae, f. *Capua*, a large city of Campania.  
See map caput, -itis, n. *head* (Sec. 464.2.b)  
carcer, -eris, m. *prison, jail* carrus, -i:,  
m. *cart, wagon* ca:rus, -a, -um, adj. *dear*;  
*precious* casa, -ae, f. *hut, cottage* castellum,  
-i:, n. [[dim. of castrum, *fort*]], *redoubt*,  
*fort* castrum, -i:, n. *fort*. Usually  
in the plural, castra, -o:rum,  
a military *camp*.

castra po:nere, *to pitch camp*

ca:sus, -us, m. [[cado:, *fall*]], *chance*;  
*misfortune, loss* catapulta, -ae, f. *catapult*,  
an engine for hurling stones cate:na, -ae, f. *chain*  
caupo:na, -ae, f. *inn* causa, -ae, f. *cause*,  
*reason*, qua: de: causa:, *for this*  
*reason* ce:do:, -ere, cessi:, cessu:rus, *give*  
*way, retire* celer, -eris, -ere, adj. *swift*,  
*fleet* celerita:s, -a:tis, f. [[celer, *swift*]],  
*swiftness, speed* celeriter, adv. [[celer, *swift*]],  
compared celerius, celerrime:,  
*swiftly*

ce:na, -ae, f. *dinner* centum, indecl. numeral  
adj. *hundred* centurio:, -o:nis, m. *centurion*,  
*captain* Ce:pheus (dissyl.), -ei: (acc.  
Ce:phea), m. *Cepheus*, a king of



Ethiopia and father of Andromeda  
 Cerberus, -i:, m. *Cerberus*, the fabled three-headed  
 dog that guarded  
     the entrance to Hades  
 certa:men, -inis, n. [[certo:, *struggle*]],  
*struggle, contest,*  
     *rivalry*  
 certe:, adv. [[certus, *sure*]], compared certius,  
 certissime:,  
*surely, certainly*  
 certus, -a, -um, adj. *fixed, certain, sure.*  
     aliquem certio:rem facere (*to make*  
*some one more certain*),  
*to inform some one*  
 cervus, -i:, m. *stag, deer* cesso:, -a:re,  
 -a:vi:, -a:tus, *delay, cease* ciba:ria, -o:rum,  
 n. plur. *food, provisions* cibus, -i:, m. *food,*  
*victuals* Cimbri:, -o:rum, m. plur. *the Cimbri*  
 Cimbricus, -a, -um, adj. *Cimbrian* ci:nctus,  
 -a, -um, adj. [[part. of cingo:, *surround*]],  
*girt,*  
     *surrounded*  
 cingo:, -ere, ci:nxi:, ci:nctus, *gird, surround*  
 circiter, adv. *about* circum, prep, with acc.  
*around* circum'-do:, -dare, -dedi:, -datus,  
*place around, surround, inclose* circum'-eo:,  
 -i:re, -ii:, -itus, *go around* circum-sisto:,  
 -ere, circum'steti:, —, *stand*



## Page 235

around, surround circum-venio:, -i:re, -ve:ni:,  
 -ventus (*come around*), surround citerior,  
 -ius, adj. in comp., superl. citimus, *hither, nearer*  
 (Sec. 475)  
 ci:vi:lis, -e, adj. [[ci:vis]], *civil* ci:vis,  
 -is, m. and f. *citizen* (Sec. 243.1) ci:vita:s,  
 -a:tis, f. [[ci:vis, *citizen*]], (*body of*  
*citizens*),  
*state; citizenship*  
 cla:mor, -o:ris, m. *shout, cry* cla:rus, -a,  
 -um, adj. *clear; famous, renowned; bright, shining*  
 classis, -is, f. *fleet* claudo:, -ere, -si:,  
 -sus, *shut, close* clavus, -i:, m. *stripe*  
 clie:ns, -entis, m. *dependent, retainer, client*  
 (Sec. 465.a) Cocles, -itis, m. (*blind in one eye*),  
*Cocles*, the surname of  
 Horatius  
 co-gno:sco:, -ere, -gno:vi:, -gni:tus, *learn, know,*  
*understand*. Cf.  
 scio: (Sec. 420.b)  
 co:go:, -ere, coe:gi:, coa:ctus [[co(m)-, *together,*  
 + ago:, *drive*]],  
 (*drive together*), *collect;*  
*compel, drive*  
 cohors, cohortis, f. *cohort*, the tenth part  
 of a legion, about 360  
 men  
 collis, -is, m. *hill*, in summo: colle,  
*on top of the hill*  
 (Sec. 247.2.a)  
 collum, -i:, n. *neck* colo:, -ere, colui:,  
 cultus, *cultivate, till; honor, worship; devote*  
*one's self to*  
 columna, -ae, f. *column, pillar* com- (col-,  
 con-, cor-, co-), a prefix, *together, with,*  
 or  
 intensifying the meaning of  
 the root word  
 coma, -ae, f. *hair* comes, -itis, m. and f.  
 [[com-, *together, + eo:, go*]],  
*companion, comrade*



comita:tus, -u:s, m. [[comitor, *accompany*]],  
*escort, company* comitor, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum,  
 dep. verb [[comes, *companion*]],  
*accompany*  
 com-mea:tus, -u:s, m. *supplies* com-minus,  
 adv. [[com-, *together*, + manus, *hand*]],  
*hand to*  
*hand*  
 com-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus, *join together*;  
*commit, intrust.*  
 proelium committere, *join battle.*  
 se: committere with dat, *trust*  
*one's self to*  
 commode:, adv. [[commodus, *fit*]], compared  
 commodius,  
 commodissime:, *conveniently*,  
*fitly*  
 commodus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit* com-mo:tus,  
 -a, -um, adj. [[part. of commoveo:, *move*]],  
*aroused*,  
*moved*  
 com-paro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, intensive,  
 + paro:,  
*prepare*]], *prepare*;  
*provide, get*  
 com-pleo:, -e:re, -ple:vi:, -ple:tus [[com-, intensive,  
 + pleo:,  
*fill*]], *fill up*  
 complexus, -u:s, m. *embrace* com-primo:, -ere,  
 -pressi:, -pressus [[com-, *together*, + premo:,  
*press*]], *press together*,  
*grasp, seize*  
 con-cido:, -ere, -cidi:, — [[com-,  
 intensive, + cado:, *fall*]],  
*fall down*  
 concilium, conci'li:, n. *meeting, council*  
 con-clu:do:, -ere, -clu:si:, -clu:sus [[com-, intensive,



# Page 236

+ claudo:,  
*close*]], *shut up*,  
*close; end, finish*  
 con-curro:, -ere, -curri:, -cursus [[com-, *together*,  
 + curro:,  
*run*]], *run together*;  
*rally, gather*  
 condicio:, -o:nis, f. [[com-, *together*, + dico:,  
*talk*]],  
*agreement, condition, terms*  
 con-do:no:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *pardon*  
 con-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus, *hire* co:n-fero:,  
 -ferre, -tuli:, -la:tus, *bring together*.  
 se: co:nferre, *betake one's*  
*self*  
 co:n-fertus, -a, -um, adj. *crowded, thick*  
 co:nfestim, adv. *immediately* co:n-ficio:, -ere,  
 -fe:ci:, -fectus [[com-, *completely*, + facio:,  
*do*]], *make, complete*,  
*accomplish, finish*  
 co:n-fi:rmo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *make firm*,  
*establish, strengthen*,  
*affirm, assert*  
 co:n-fluo:, -ere, -flu:xi:, —, *flow together*  
 co:n-fugio:, -ere, -fu:gi:, -fugitu:rus,  
*flee for refuge, flee* con-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:,  
 -iectus [[com-, *intensive*, + iacio:,  
*throw*]], *hurl*  
 con-iungo:, -ere, -iu:nxi:, -iu:nctus [[com-, *together*,  
 + iungo:,  
*join*]], *join together*,  
*unite*  
 con-iu:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, *together*,  
 + iu:ro:,  
*swear*]], *unite by*  
*oath, conspire*  
 con-loco:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, *together*,  
 + loco:, *place*]],  
*arrange, place, station*  
 conloquium, conlo'qui:, n. [[com-, *together*,  
 + loquor, *speak*]],





*conversation, conference*

co:nor, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum, dep. verb, *endeavor, attempt, try* co:n-scendo:, -ere, -scendi:, -sce:nsus [[com-, intensive, + scando:, *climb*]], *climb up, ascend.*

na:vem co:nscendere, *embark, go on board*

co:n-scri:bo:, -ere, -scri:psi:, -scri:ptus [[com-, *together*, + scri:bo:, *write*]],

(*write together*), *enroll, enlist*

co:n-secro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, intensive, + sacro:, *consecrate*]], *consecrate, devote*

co:n-sequor, -sequi:, -secu:tus sum, dep. verb [[com-, intensive, +

sequor, *follow*]], *pursue; overtake; win*

co:n-servo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, intensive, + servo:, *save*]], *preserve, save*

co:nsilium, co:nsi'li:, n. *plan, purpose, design; wisdom* co:n-sisto:, -ere, -stiti:, -stitus [[com-, intensive, + sisto:, *cause to stand*]], *stand*

*firmly, halt, take one's stand*

co:n-spicio:, -ere, -spe:xi:, -spectus [[com-, intensive, + spicio:, *spy*]], *look at attentively, perceive, see*

co:nstantia, -ae, f. *firmness, steadiness, perseverance*

co:n-stituo:, -ere, -ui:, -u:tus [[com-, intensive, + statuo:, *set*]], *establish, determine, resolve*

co:n-sto:, -a:re, -stiti:, -sta:tu:rus [[com-, *together*, + sto:, *stand*]], *agree;*



## Page 237

be certain; consist of  
 co:nsul, -ulis, m. *consul* (Sec. 464.2.a) co:n-su:mo:,  
 -ere, -su:mpsi:, -su:mptus [[com-, intensive, + sumo:,  
*take*]], *consume*,  
*use up*  
 con-tendo:, -ere, -di:, -tus, *strain; hasten; fight*,  
*contend*,  
*struggle*  
 con-tineo:, -e:re, -ui:, -tentus [[com-, *together*,  
 + teneo:,  
*hold*]], *hold together*,  
*hem in, contain; restrain*  
 contra:, prep, with acc. *against, contrary to*  
 con-traho:, -ere, -tra:xi:, -tra:ctus [[com-, *together*,  
 + traho:,  
*draw*]], *draw together*;  
 of sails, *shorten, furl*  
 contro:versia, -ae, f. *dispute, quarrel* con-venio:,  
 -i:re, -ve:ni:, -ventus [[com-, *together*, +  
 venio:,  
*come*]], *come together*,  
*meet, assemble*  
 con-verto:, -ere, -verti:, -versus [[com-, intensive,  
 + verto:,  
*turn*]], *turn*  
 con-voco:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[com-, *together*,  
 + voco:, *call*]],  
*call together*  
 co-orior, -i:ri:, -ortus sum, dep. verb [[com-, intensive,  
 + orior,  
*rise*]], *rise, break*  
*forth*  
 co:pia, -ae, f. [[com-, intensive, + ops, *wealth*]],  
*abundance*,  
*wealth, plenty*. Plur.  
 co:piae, -a:rum, *troops*  
 coquo:, -ere, coxi:, coctus, *cook* Corinthus,  
 -i:, f. *Corinth*, the famous city on the Isthmus  
 of Corinth Corne:lia, -ae, f. *Cornelia*, daughter  
 of Scipio and mother of the  
 Gracchi



Corne:lius, Corne:'li:, m. *Cornelius*,  
 a Roman name cornu:, -u:s, n. *horn*; *wing* of  
 an army, a: dextro: cornu:, *on the*  
*right wing* (Sec. 466)  
 coro:na, -ae, f. *garland, wreath; crown* coro:na:tus,  
 -a, -um, adj. *crowned* corpus, -oris, n. *body*  
 cor-ripio:, -ere, -ui:, -reptus [[com-, intensive,  
 + rapio:],  
*seize*]], *seize*,  
*grasp*  
 coti:dia:nus, -a, -um, adj. *daily* coti:die:,  
 adv. *daily* cre:ber, -bra, -brum, adj. *thick*,  
*crowded, numerous, frequent* cre:do:, -ere, -di:di:,  
 -ditus, *trust, believe*, with dat.  
 (Sec. 501.14)  
 cremo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *burn* creo:,  
 -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *make; elect, appoint*  
 Creo:n, -ontis, m. *Creon*, a king of Corinth  
 cre:sco:, -ere, cre:vi:, cre:tus, *rise, grow, increase*  
 Cre:ta, -ae, f. *Crete*, a large island in the  
 Mediterranean Cre:taeus, -a, -um, adj. *Cretan*  
 cru:s, cru:ris, n. *leg* cru:stulum, -i:, n.  
*pastry, cake* cubi:le, -is, n. *bed* cultu:ra,  
 -ae, f. *culture, cultivation* cum, conj. with  
 the indic. or subjv. *when; since; although*  
 (Sec. 501.46)  
 cum, prep, with abl. *with* (Sec. 209) cupide:,  
 adv. [[cupidus, *desirous*]], compared cupidus,  
 cupidissime:, *eagerly*  
 cupidita:s, -a:tis, f. [[cupidus, *desirous*]],  
*desire, longing* cupio:, -ere, -i:vi: or  
 -ii:, -i:tus, *desire, wish*. Cf. volo:  
 cu:r, adv. *why, wherefore* cu:ra, -ae, f. *care*,  
*pains; anxiety* cu:ria, -ae, f. *senate house*  
 cu:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[cu:ra, *care*]],  
*care for, attend to*,  
*look after*  
 curro:, -ere, cucurri:, cursus, *run* currus,  
 -u:s, m. *chariot* cursus, -u:s, m. *course*  
 custo:dio:, -i:re, -i:vi:, -i:tus [[custo:s, *guard*]],  
*guard, watch*



# Page 238

## D

Daedalus, -i:, m. *Daed'alus*, the supposed inventor of the first flying machine

Da:vus, -i:, m. *Davus*, name of a slave

de:, prep, with abl. *down from, from; concerning, about, for*

(Sec. 209).

qua: de: causa:, *for this reason, wherefore*

dea, -ae, f. *goddess* (Sec. 461.a)

de:beo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[de:, *from*, +

habeo:, *hold*]], *owe*,

*ought, should*

decem, indecl. numeral adj. *ten*

de:-cerno:, -ere, -cre:vi:, -cre:tus [[de:, *from*, + cerno:,

*separate*]], *decide*,

*decree*

de:-cido:, -ere, -cidi:, — [[de:, *down*, + cado:, *fall*]], *fall*

*down*

decimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. *tenth*

de:cli:vis, -e, adj. *sloping downward*

de:-do:, -ere, -didi:, -ditus, *give up, surrender*,

se: de:dere,

*surrender one's self*

de:-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[de:, *down*, + du:co:, *lead*]],

*lead down, escort*

de:-fendo:, -ere, -di:, -fe:nsus, *ward off, repel, defend*

de:-fero:, -ferre, -tuli:, -la:tus [[de:, *down*, + fero:, *bring*]],

*bring down; report, announce*

(Sec. 426)

de:-fessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, weary*

de:-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[de:, *from*, + facio:, *make*]],



*fail, be wanting; revolt  
from*

de:-fi:go:, -ere, -fi:xi:, -fi:xus [[de:, *down*,  
+ fi:go:, *fasten*]],

*fasten, fix*

de:-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:, -iectus [[de:, *down*,  
+ iacio:, *hurl*]],

*hurl down; bring down,*

*kill*

de-inde, adv. (*from thence*), *then, in the next  
place*

de:lecto:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *delight*

de:leo:, -e:re, -e:vi:, -e:tus, *blot out, destroy*

de:li:bero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *weigh, deliberate,  
ponder*

de:-ligo:, -ere, -le:gi:, -le:ctus [[de:, *from*,  
+ lego:, *gather*]],

*choose, select*

Delphicus, -a, -um, adj. *Delphic*

de:missus, -a, -um [[part. of de:mitto:, *send down*]],  
*downcast,*

*humble*

de:-mo:nstro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[de:, *out*,  
+ mo:nstro:,

*point*]], *point out,*

*show*

de:mum, adv. *at last, not till then.*

tum de:mum, *then at last*

de:nique, adv. *at last, finally.* Cf. postre:mo:

de:ns, dentis, m. *tooth* (Sec. 247.2.a)

de:nsus, -a, -um, adj. *dense, thick*

de:-pendeo:, -e:re, —, —

[[de:, *down*, + pendeo:, *hang*]], *hang*

*from, hang down*

de:-plo:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[de:, *intensive*,  
+ plo:ro:,

*wail*]], *bewail,*

*deplore*

de:-po:no:, -ere, -posui:, -positus [[de:, *down*,  
+ po:no:, *put*]],

*put down*

de:-scendo:, -ere, -di:, -sce:nsus [[de:, *down*,



# Page 239

+ scando:, *climb*]],  
*climb down, descend*  
 de:-scri:bo:, -ere, -scri:psi:, -scri:ptus [[de:,  
*down, + scri:bo:,*  
*write*]], *write down*  
 de:si:dero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *long for*  
 de:-silio:, -i:re, -ui:, -sultus [[de:, *down,*  
 + salio:, *leap*]],  
*leap down*  
 de:-spe:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[de:, *away*  
*from, + spe:ro:,*  
*hope*]], *despair*  
 de:-spicio:, -ere, -spe:xi, -spectus [[de:, *down*]],  
*look down upon,*  
*despise*  
 de:-sum, -esse, -fui:, -futu:rus [[de:, *away from,*  
 + sum, *be*]],  
*be wanting, lack, with*  
 dat. (Sec. 426)  
 deus, -i:, m. *god* (Sec. 468)  
 de:-volvo:, -ere, -volvi:, -volu:tus [[de:, *down,*  
 + volvo:, *roll*]],  
*roll down*  
 de:-voro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[de:, *down,*  
 + voro:, *swallow*]],  
*devour*  
 dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum), adj. *to the*  
*right, right.*  
 a: dextro: cornu:, *on the*  
*right wing*  
 Dia:na, -ae, f. *Diana*, goddess of the moon  
 and twin sister of Apollo  
 di:co:, -ere, di:xi:, dictus (imv. di:c), *say,*  
*speak, tell.* Usually  
 introduces indirect discourse  
 (Sec. 420.a)  
 dicta:tor, -o:ris, m. [[dicto:, *dictate*]],  
*dictator, a chief*  
 magistrate with unlimited  
 power  
 die:s, -e:i or die:, m., sometimes f. in sing., *day*



(Sec. 467)

dif-fero:, -ferre, distuli:, di:la:tus [[dis-, *apart*,  
+ fero:],

*carry*]], *carry apart*;

*differ*.

differre inter se:, *differ from each  
other*

dif-ficilis, -e, adj. [[dis-, *not*, + facilis,  
*easy*]], *hard*,

*difficult* (Sec. 307)

difficulta:s, -a:tis, f. [[difficilis, *hard*]],  
*difficulty*

di:ligerter, adv. [[di:lige:ns, *careful*]],  
compared di:ligentius,

di:ligentissime:, *industriously*,  
*diligently*

di:ligentia, -ae, f. [[di:lige:ns, *careful*]],  
*industry, diligence*

di:-mico:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *fight, struggle*

di:-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus [[di:-, *off*,  
+ mitto:, *send*]],

*send away, dismiss, disband*.

di:mittere animum in, *direct one's  
mind to, apply one's self to*

Diome:de:s, -is, m. *Di:-o-me:'de:s*, a  
name

dis-, di:-, a prefix expressing separation, *off*,  
*apart, in different*

*directions*. Often

negatives the meaning

dis-ce:do:, -ere, -cessi:, -cessus [[dis-, *apart*,  
+ ce:do:, *go*]],

*depart from, leave, withdraw*,  
*go away*

dis-cerno:, -ere, -cre:vi:, -cre:tus [[dis-, *apart*,  
+ cerno:,

*sift*]], *separate*;

*distinguish*

discipli:na, -ae, f. *instruction, training, discipline*

discipulus, -i:, m. [[disco:, *learn*]], *pupil*,  
*disciple*

disco:, -ere, didici:, —, *learn*

dis-cutio:, -ere, -cussi:, -cussus [[dis-, *apart*,



# Page 240

+ quatio:,  
*shake*]], *shatter*,  
*dash to pieces*  
dis-po:no:, -ere, -posui:, -positus [[dis-, *apart*,  
+ po:no:, *put*]],  
*put here and there, arrange*,  
*station*  
dis-similis, -e, adj. [[dis-, *apart*, + similis,  
*like*]],  
*unlike, dissimilar*  
(Sec. 307)  
dis-tribuo:, -ere, -ui:, -u:tus, *divide, distribute*  
diu:, adv., compared diu:tius, diu:tissime:, *for*  
*a long time, long*  
(Sec. 477)  
do:, dare, dedi:, datus, *give*.  
in fugam dare, *put to flight*.  
alicui nego:tium dare, *employ some*  
*one*  
doceo:, -e:re, -ui:, -tus, *teach, show*  
doctri:na, -ae, f. [[doctor, *teacher*]], *teaching*,  
*learning*,  
*wisdom*  
dolor, -o:ris, m. *pain, sorrow*  
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [[domus, *house*]],  
*of the house*,  
*domestic*  
domicilium, domici'li:, n. *dwelling; house*,  
*abode*. Cf. domus  
domina, -ae, f. *mistress (of the house), lady*  
(Sec. 461)  
dominus, -i:, m. *master (of the house), owner*,  
*ruler* (Sec. 462)  
domus, -u:s, f. *house, home*.  
domi:, locative, *at home* (Sec.  
468)  
dormio:, -i:re, -i:vi:, -i:tus, *sleep*  
draco:, -o:nis, m. *serpent, dragon*  
dubito:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *hesitate*  
dubius, -a, -um, adj. [[duo, *two*]], (*moving*  
*two ways*),





*doubtful, dubious*

du-centi:, -ae, -a, numeral adj. *two hundred*

du:co:, -ere, du:xi:, ductus (imv. du:c), *lead, conduct*

dum, conj. *while, as long as*

duo, duae, duo, numeral adj. *two* (Sec. 479)

duo-decim, indecl. numeral adj. *twelve*

du:rus, -a, -um, adj. *hard, tough; harsh, pitiless, bitter*

dux, ducis, m. and f. [[cf. du:co:, *lead*]],  
*leader, commander*

## E

e: or ex, prep, with abl. *out of, from, off, of* (Sec. 209) eburneus, -a, -um, adj. *of ivory*  
ecce, adv. *see! behold! there! here!* e:-du:co:,  
-ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[e:, *out*, + du:co:,  
*lead*]], *lead*

*out, draw out*

ef-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[ex, *thoroughly*,  
+ facio:,  
*do*]], *work out;*

*make, cause*

ef-fugio:, -ere, -fu:gi:, -fugitu:rus [[ex, *from*,  
+ fugio:, *flee*]],  
*escape*

egeo:, -e:re, -ui:, —, *be in*

*need of, lack*, with abl. (Sec. 501.32) ego, pers.

pron. *I*; plur. no:s, *we* (Sec. 480) e:-gredior,

-i:, e:gressus sum, dep. verb [[e:, *out of*,  
+ gradior,

*go*]], *go out, go forth.*

e: na:vi: e:gredi:, *disembark*

e:-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:, -iectus [[e:, *forth*,  
+ iacio:, *hurl*]],

*hurl forth, expel*

elementum, -i:, n., in plur. *first principles,*

*rudiments* elephantis, -i:, m. *elephant*

E:lis, Elidis, f. *E'lis*, a district of



# Page 241

southern Greece *emo:*, *-ere*, *e:mi:*, *e:mptus*, *buy*,  
*purchase* enim, conj., never standing first, *for*,  
*in fact*, *indeed*. Cf. nam Ennius, Enni:, m. *Ennius*,  
the father of Roman poetry, born 239 B.C. *eo:*, *i:re*,  
ii: (*i:vi:*), *itu:rus*, *go* (Sec. 499) *eo:*,  
adv. *to that place*, *thither* *E:pi:rus*, *-i:*,  
f. *Epi'rus*, a district in the north of  
Greece *eques*, *-itis*, m. [[*equus*, *horse*]], *horseman*,  
*cavalryman* *equita:tus*, *-u:s*, m. [[*equito:*, *ride*]],  
*cavalry* *equis*, *-i:*, m. *horse* *e:-rigo:*,  
*-ere*, *-re:xi:*, *-re:ctus* [[*e:*, *out*, + *rego:*,  
*make*

*straight*]], *raise up*  
*e:-ripio:*, *-ere*, *-ui:*, *-reptus* [[*e:*, *out of*,  
+ *rapio:*, *seize*]],  
*seize*, *rescue*  
*e:-rumpo:*, *-ere*, *-ru:pi:*, *-ruptus* [[*e:*, *forth*,  
+ *rumpo:*, *break*]],  
*burst forth*  
*e:ruptio:*, *-o:nis*, f. *sally* *Erymanthus*, *-a*,  
*-um*, adj. *Erymanthian*, *of Erymanthus*, a district  
in

southern Greece  
et, conj. *and*, *also*. et ... et, *both ...*  
*and*. Cf. *atque*, *ac*,  
*-que*  
etiam, adv. (rarely conj.) [[*et*, *also*, + *iam*,  
*now*]], *yet*,  
*still; also, besides*.

Cf. *quoque*.  
*no:n so:lum ... sed etiam*, *not only*  
... *but also*

*Etru:sci:*, *-o:rum*, m. *the Etruscans*, the people  
of Etruria. See map of

Italy  
*Euro:pa*, *-ae*, f. *Europe* *Eurystheus*, *-i:*, m.  
*Eurys'theus*, a king of Tiryns, a city  
in southern  
Greece

*e:-va:do:*, *-ere*, *-va:si:*, *-va:sus* [[*e:*, *out*,  
+ *va:do:*, *go*]], *go*



*forth, escape*

ex, see e: exanima:tus, -a, -um [[part. of exanimo:,  
*put out of breath*

(anima)], adj. *out of*

*breath, tired; lifeless*

ex-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi:, -ceptus [[ex, *out*,  
+ capio:, *take*]],

*welcome, receive*

exemplum, -i:, n. *example, model* ex-eo:,-i:re,-ii:,-itu:rus  
[[ex, *out*, + eo:, *go*]], *go out, go*

*forth* (Sec. 413)

ex-exceo:,-e:re,-ui:, -itus [[ex, *out*, +  
arceo:, *shut*]], (*shut*

*out*), *employ, train, exercise,*

*use*

exercitus, -us, m. [[exerceo:, *train*]], *army*

ex-i:stimo:,-a:re,-a:vi:, -a:tus [[ex, *out*,  
+ aestimo:, *reckon*]],

*estimate; think, judge*

(Sec. 420.c). Cf. arbitror, puto:

ex-orior, -i:ri:, -ortus sum, dep. verb [[ex, *forth*,  
+ orior,

*rise*]], *come forth,*

*rise*

expedi:tus, -a, -um, adj. *without baggage*

ex-pello:,-ere,-puli:, -pulsus [[ex, *out*,  
+ pello:, *drive*]],

*drive out*

ex-pio:,-a:re,-a:vi:, -a:tus [[ex, intensive, +  
pi:o, *atone for*]],

*make amends for, atone*

*for*

explo:ra:tor, -o:ris, m. [[explo:ro:, *investigate*]],

*spy, scout* explo:ro:,-a:re,-a:vi:, -a:tus,

*examine, explore* ex-pugno:,-a:re,-a:vi:,

-a:tus [[ex, *out*, + pugno:, *fight*]],

*take*



## Page 242

by storm, capture  
 exsilium, exsi'li:, n. [[exsul, *exile*]],  
*banishment, exile* ex-specto:, -a:re, -a:vi:,  
 -a:tus [[ex, *out*, + specto:, *look*]],  
*expect, wait*  
 ex-struo:, -ere, -stru:xi:, -stru:ctus [[ex, *out*,  
 + struo:,  
*build*]], *build up*,  
*erect*  
 exterus, -a, -um, adj., compared exterior, extre:mus  
 or extimus,  
*outside, outer* (Sec.  
 312)  
 extra:, prep, with acc. *beyond, outside of*  
 ex-traho:, -ere, -tra:xi:, -tra:ctus [[ex, *out*,  
 + traho:, *drag*]],  
*drag out, pull forth*  
 extre:mus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of exterus, *utmost*,  
*farthest*  
 (Sec. 312)

## F

fa:bula, -ae, f. *story, tale, fable*  
 facile, adv. [[facilis, *easy*]], compared facilius,  
 facillime:,  
*easily* (Sec. 322)  
 facilis, -e, adj. [[cf. facio:, *make*]], *easy*,  
*without difficulty*  
 (Sec. 307)  
 facio:, -ere, fe:ci:, factus (imv. fac), *make*,  
*do; cause, bring*  
*about*.  
 impetum facere in, *make an attack upon*.  
 proelium facere, *fight a battle*.



iter facere, *make a march or journey*.  
aliquem certio:rem facere, *inform some one*.

facere verba pro:, *speak in behalf of*.

Passive fi:o:, fieri:, factus sum, *be done, happen*.

certior fieri:,  
*be informed*

fallo:, -ere, fefelli:, falsus, *trip, betray, deceive*

fa:ma, -ae, f. *report, rumor; renown, fame, reputation*

fame:s, -is (abl. fame:), f. *hunger*

familia, -ae, f. *servants, slaves; household, family*

fasce:s, -ium (plur. of fascis), f. *fasces*

(p. 225)

fastigium, fasti:'gi:, n. *top; slope, descent*

fa:tum, -i:, n. *fate, destiny*

fauce:s, -ium, f. plur. *jaws, throat*

faveo:, -e:re, fa:vi:, fautu:rus, *be favorable to, favor, with dat.*

(Sec. 501.14)

fe:li:x, -i:cis, adj. *happy, lucky*

fe:mina, -ae, f. *woman*. Cf. mulier

fera, -ae, f. [[ferus, wild]], *wild beast*

fera:x, -a:cis, adj. *fertile*

ferē:, adv. *about, nearly, almost*

fero:, ferre, tuli:, la:tus, *bear*.

graviter or moleste: ferre, *be annoyed* (Sec. 498)

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [[ferrum, iron]], *made of iron*

fide:lis, -e, adj. [[fide:s, trust]], *faithful, true*

fide:s, fidei: or fide:, *trust, faith; promise, word; protection*.

in fidem veni:re, *come under the protection*.

in fide: mane:re, *remain loyal*

fi:lia, -ae (dat. and abl. plur. fi:lia:bus), f. *daughter* (Sec. 461.a)

fi:lius, fi:li: (voc. sing, fi:li:), m. *son*

fi:nis, -is, m. *boundary, limit, end; in plur. territory, country*

(Sec. 243.1)

fi:nitimus, -a, -um, adj. [[fi:nis, boundary]],



## Page 243

*adjoining,*

*neighboring.*

Plur. *fi:nitimi:, -o:rum, m. neighbors*

*fi:o:, fieri:, factus sum, used as passive of facio:.*

See *facio:* (Sec.

500)

*flamma, -ae, f. fire, flame*

*flo:s, flo:ris, m. flower*

*fluctus, -u:s, m. [[of. fluo:., flow]], flood, wave, billow*

*flu:men, -inis, n. [[cf. fluo:., flow]], river (Sec. 464.2.b)*

*fluo:., -ere, flu:xi:, fluxus, flow*

*fluvius, fluvi:, m. [[cf. fluo:., flow]], river*

*fodio:., -ere, fo:di:, fossus, dig*

*fo:ns, fontis, m. fountain (Sec. 247.2.a)*

*fo:rma, -ae, f. form, shape, appearance; beauty*

*Formiae, -a:rum, f. Formiae, a town of Latium on the Appian Way.*

See map

*forte, adv. [[abl. of fors, chance]], by chance*

*fortis, -e, adj. strong; fearless, brave*

*fortiter, adv. [[fortis, strong]], compared*

*fortius, fortissime:,*

*strongly; bravely*

*fortu:na, -ae, f. [[fors, chance]], chance,*

*fate, fortune*

*forum, -i:, n. market place, esp. the Forum*

*Ro:ma:num, where the life*

*of Rome centered*

*Forum Appi:, Forum of Appius, a town in Latium on the Appian Way*

*fossa, -ae, f. [[cf. fodio:., dig]], ditch*

*fragor, -o:ris, m. [[cf. frango:., break]], crash, noise*

*frango:., -ere, fre:gi:, fra:ctus, break*

*fra:ter, -tris, m. brother*

*fremitus, -u:s, m. loud noise*

*frequento:., -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, attend*

*fre:tus, -a, -um, adj. supported, trusting.*

Usually with *abl. of*

*means*



fro:ns, frontis, f. *front*, a: fronte,  
*in front*  
 fru:ctus, -u:s, m. *fruit*  
 fru:menta:rius, -a, -um, adj. *pertaining to grain*.  
     re:s fru:menta:ria, *grain supplies*  
 fru:mentum, -i:, n. *grain*  
 fru:stra:, adv. *in vain, vainly*  
 fuga, -ae, f. [[cf. fugio:, *flee*]], *flight*.  
     in fugam dare, *put to flight*  
 fugio:, -ere, fu:gi:, fugitu:rus, *flee, run; avoid*,  
*shun*  
 fu:mo:, -are, -----, -----, *smoke*  
 fu:nis, -is, m. *rope*  
 furor, -o:ris, m. [[furo:, *rage*]], *madness*.  
     in furo:rem inci:dere, *go mad*

## G

Ga:ius, Ga:i:, m. *Gaius*, a Roman name, abbreviated  
 C., English form  
*Caius*  
 Galba, -ae, m. *Galba*, a Roman name  
 galea, -ae, f. *helmet*  
 Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul*, the country comprising  
 what is now Holland,  
     Belgium, Switzerland, and  
 France  
 Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. *Gallic*  
 galli:na, -ae, f. *hen, chicken*  
 Gallus, -i:, m. *a Gaul*  
 gaudium, gaudi:, n. *joy*  
 Gena:va, -ae, f. *Geneva*, a city in Switzerland  
 ge:ns, gentis, f. [[cf. gigno:, *beget*]], *race*,  
*family; people*,  
     *nation, tribe*



## Page 244

genus, -eris, n. *kind, variety*  
 Germa:nia, -ae, f. *Germany*  
 Germa:nus, -i:, m. *a German*  
 gero:, -ere, gessi:, gestus, *carry, wear; wage.*  
     bellum gerere, *wage war.*  
     re:s gestae, *exploits.*  
     bene gerere, *carry on successfully*  
 gladia:to:rius, -a, -um, adj. *gladiatorial*  
 gladius, gladi:, m. *sword*  
 glo:ria, -ae, f. *glory, fame*  
 Gracchus, -i:, m. *Gracchus*, name of a famous  
 Roman family  
 gracilis, -e, adj. *slender* (Sec. 307)  
 Graeca, -o:rum, n. plur. *Greek writings, Greek*  
*literature*  
 Graece:, adv. *in Greek*  
 Graecia, -ae, f. *Greece*  
 grammaticus, -i:, m. *grammarian*  
 gra:tia, -ae, f. *thanks, gratitude*  
 gra:tus, -a, -um, adj. *acceptable, pleasing.*  
 Often with dat.  
     (Sec. 501.16)  
 gravis, -e:, adj. *heavy; disagreeable; serious,*  
*dangerous; earnest,*  
     *weighty*  
 graviter, adv. [[gravis, *heavy*]], compared  
 gravius, gravissime:,  
*heavily; greatly, seriously.*  
     graviter ferre, *bear ill, take to heart*  
 gubernator, -o:ris, m. [[gubernator:, *pilot*]],  
*pilot*

## H

habe:na, -ae, f. *halter, rein.* habeo:, -e:re,  
 -ui:, -itus, *have, hold; regard, consider, deem*





habito:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[cf. habeo:, *have*]],  
 *dwell, abide,*

*inhabit.* Cf. incolo:,

vi:vo:

ha:c-tenus, adv. *thus far* Helve:tii:, -o:rum,

m. *the Helvetii*, a Gallic tribe Hercule:s,

-is, m. *Hercules*, son of Jupiter and Alcmena,

and god of

strength

Hesperide:s, -um, f. *the Hesperides*, daughters

of Hesperus, who kept

the garden of the golden apples

hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative adj. and pron. *this*

(of mine); as

pers. pron. *he, she, it*

(Sec. 481)

hi:c, adv. *here* hiems, -emis, f. *winter*

hi:nc, adv. [[hi:c, *here*]], *from here, hence*

Hippolyte:, -e:s, f. *Hippolyte*, queen of the

Amazons ho-die:, adv. [[modified form of ho:c die:,

*on this day*]], *to-day* homo:, -inis,

m. and f. (*human being*), *man, person* honestus,

-a, -um, adv. [[honor, *honor*]], *respected,*

*honorable* honor, -o:ris, m. *honor* ho:ra,

-ae, f. *hour* Hora:tius, Hora:'ti:, m.

*Horatius*, a Roman name horribilis, -e, adj.

*terrible, horrible* hortor, -a:ri, -a:tus sum,

dep. verb, *urge, incite, exhort, encourage*

(Sec. 493)

hortus, -i:, m. *garden* hospitium, hospi'ti:,

n. [[hospes, *host*]], *hospitality* hostis,

-is, m. and f. *enemy, foe* (Sec. 465.a) humilis,

-e, adj. *low, humble* (Sec. 307) Hydra, -ae,

f. *the Hydra*, a mythical water snake slain by

*Hercules*

I



# Page 245

iacio:, -ere, ie:ci:, iactus, *throw, hurl*

iam, adv. *now, already*.

nec iam, *and no longer*

Ia:niculum, -i:, n. *the Janiculum*, one of the

hills of Rome ia:nua, -ae, f. *door* ibi, adv.

*there, in that place* I:carus, -i:, m. *Ic'arus*,

the son of Daedalus ictus, -u:s, m. [[cf. i:co:, *strike*]],

*blow* i:dem, e'adem, idem, demonstrative

pron. [[is + dem]], *same*

(Sec. 481)

ido:neus, -a, -um, adj. *suitable, fit* igitur,

conj., seldom the first word, *therefore, then*.

Cf. itaque ignis, -is, m. *fire* (Secs. 243.1;

247. 2.a; 465, 1) igno:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, *not*,

+ (g)notus, *known*]],

*unknown, strange*

ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and pron. *that*

(yonder); as

pers. pron. *he, she, it*

(Sec. 481)

illi:c, adv. [[cf. ille]], *yonder, there* im-mitto:,

-ere, -mi:si:, -missus [[in, *against*, + mitto:,

*send*]],

*send against; let in*

immolo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[in, *upon*,

+ mola, *meal*]],

*sprinkle with sacrificial*

*meal; offer, sacrifice*

im-morta:lis, -e, adj. [[in-, *not*, + mortalis,

*mortal*]],

*immortal*

im-morta:lita:s, -a:tis, f. [[immorta:lis, *immortal*]],

*immortality* im-para:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-,

*not*, + para:tus, *prepared*]],

*unprepared*

impedi:mentum, -i:, n. [[impedio:, *hinder*]],

*hindrance*; in plur.

*baggage*

impedi:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of impedio:, *hinder*]],

*hindered*,

*burdened*



im-pello:, -ere, -puli:, -pulsus [[in, *against*, + pello:],  
*strike*]], *strike*  
*against; impel, drive, propel*  
 impera:tor, -o:ris, m. [[impero:, *command*]],  
*general imperium, impe'ri:, n. [[impero:,*  
*command]], command, order; realm,*  
*empire; power, authority*  
 impero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *command, order*.  
 Usually with dat. and  
 an object clause of purpose  
 (Sec. 501.41).

With acc. object, *levy, impose*  
 impetus, -u:s, m. *attack, impetum facere in,*  
*make an attack upon* im-po:no:, -ere, -posui,  
 -positus [[in, *upon*, + po:no:, *place*]],  
*place upon; impose, assign*  
 in, prep, with acc. *into, to, against, at, upon,*  
*towards; with abl.*  
*in, on.*

in reliquum tempus, *for the future*  
 in-, inseparable prefix. With nouns and adjectives  
 often with a  
 negative force, like English

*un-, in-*  
 in-cautus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, *not*, + cautus,  
*careful*]], *off*  
*one's guard*

incendium, incendi:, n. *flame, fire*. Cf.  
 ignis, flamma in-cendo:, -ere, -di:, -ce:nsus, *set*  
*fire to, burn* in-cido:, -ere, -cidi:, —,  
 [[in, *in, on*, + cado:, *fall*]],  
*fall in, fall on; happen*.  
 in furo:rem incidere, *go mad*



## Page 246

in-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi, -ceptus [[in, *on*,  
+ capio:, *take*]],  
*begin*  
in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, *not*, + cognitus,  
*known*]],  
*unknown*  
in-colo:, -ere, -ui:, —, [[in,  
*in*, + colo:,  *dwell*]], *inhabit*;  
*live*  
incolumis, -e, adj. *sound, safe, uninjured, imharmed*  
in-cre:dibilis, -e, adj. [[in-, *not*, + cre:dibilis,  
*to be*  
*believed*]], *incredible*  
inde, *from that place, thence* induo:, -ere,  
-ui:, -u:tus, *put on* indu:tus, -a, -um, adj.  
[[part. of induo:, *put on*]], *clothed*  
in-eo:, -i:re, -ii:, -itus [[in, *into*, + eo:,  
*go*]], *go into*;  
*enter upon, begin, with*  
acc. (Sec. 413)  
i:n-fa:ns, -fantis, adj. [[in-, *not*, + fa:ns,  
*\_speaking\_*]], *\_not*  
*speaking\_*. *As a noun,*  
*m. and f. \_infant\_*  
i:n-fe:li:x, -i:cis, adj. [[in-, *\_not\_*, + fe:li:x,  
*\_happy\_*]], *\_unhappy*,  
*unlucky\_*  
i:nfe:nsus, -a, -um, adj. *\_hostile\_* i:n'-fero:,  
i:nfer're, in'tuli:, inla:'tus [[in,  
*\_against\_*, + fero:,  
*\_bear\_*]], *\_bring against or*  
*upon, inflict\_*, *with acc. and dat.*  
(Sec. 501.15).  
*bellum i:nferre, with dat., \_make war*  
*upon\_*  
i:nferus, -a, -um, adj. *\_low, below\_* (Sec. 312).  
i:n-fi:ni:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[in-, *\_not\_*, + fi:ni:tus,  
*\_bounded\_*]],  
*\_boundless, endless\_*



*i:n-fi:rmus*, -a, -um, *adj.* *[[in-, \_not\_, + fi:rmus, \_strong\_]],*  
*\_weak, infirm\_*  
*ingenium*, inge'ni, *n.* *\_talent, ability\_ inge:ns,*  
*-entis, adj. \_vast, huge, enormous, large\_. Cf.*  
*magnus in-gredior*, -gredi:, -gressus *sum* *[[in, \_in\_,*  
*+ gradior, \_walk\_]],*  
*\_advance, enter\_*  
*inimi:cus*, -a, -um, *adj.* *[[in-, \_not\_, + ami:cus,*  
*\_friendly\_]],*  
*\_hostile\_.*  
*As a noun, inimi:cus, -i:, m. \_enemy,*  
*foe\_. Cf. hostis*  
*initium*, ini'ti:, *\_entrance, beginning\_ initus,*  
*-a, -um, part. of ineo:.*  
*inita: aesta:te, \_at the beginning*  
*of summer\_*  
*iniu:ria*, -ae, *f.* *[[in, \_against\_, + iu:s, \_law\_]],*  
*\_injustice,*  
*wrong, injury\_.*  
*alicui iniu:ria:s i:nferre, \_inflict wrongs*  
*upon some one\_*  
*inopia*, -ae, *f.* *[[inops, \_needy\_]], \_want, need, lack\_*  
*in-opi:na:ns, -antis, adj. [[in-, \_not\_, + opi:na:ns,*  
*\_thinking\_]],*  
*\_not expecting, taken by surprise\_*  
*inquit, \_said he, said she\_. Regularly inserted*  
*in a direct quotation in-rigo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,*  
*\_irrigate, water\_ in-rumpo:, -ere, -ru:pi:, -ruptus*  
*[[in, \_into\_, + rumpo:, \_break\_]],*  
*\_burst in, break in\_*  
*in-ruo:, -ere, -rui:,— [[in, \_in\_,*  
*+ ruo:, \_rush\_]], \_rush in\_ i:n-sequor, -sequi:, -secu:tus*  
*sum, dep. verb [[in, \_on\_, + sequor,*  
*\_follow\_]], \_follow on, pursue\_*  
*i:n-signē, -is, n. \_badge, decoration\_ (Sec. 465.b)*  
*i:nsignis, -e, adj. \_remarkable, noted\_ i:nsta:ns,*  
*-antis, adj. [[part. of i:nsto, \_be at hand\_]], \_present,*  
*immediate\_*  
*i:n-sto:, -a:re, -stiti:, -statu:rus [[in, \_upon\_,*  
*+ sto:, \_stand\_]],*  
*\_stand upon; be at hand; pursue,*  
*press on\_*



## Page 247

*i:nstru:mentum*, -i:, n. *\_instrument\_* *i:n-struo:*,  
 -ere, -stru:xi:, -stru:ctus [[in, *\_on\_*, + *struo:*, *\_build\_*]],  
*\_draw up\_*  
*i:nsula*, -ae, f. *\_island\_* *integer*, -gra, -grum, *\_untouched*,  
*whole; fresh, new\_* *intellego:*, -ere, -le:xi:, -le:ctus  
 [[inter, *\_between\_*, + *lego:*,  
*\_choose\_*]], *\_perceive, understand\_*  
 (Sec. 420.d)  
*intento:*, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *\_aim; threaten\_*  
*inter*, prep. with acc. *\_between, among; during, while\_*  
 (Sec. 340) *interfectus*, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of *inter-ficio:*,  
*\_kill\_*]], *\_slain,*  
*\_dead\_*  
*inter-ficio:*, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[inter, *\_between\_*,  
 + *facio:*,  
*\_make\_*]], *\_put out of the*  
*way, kill\_*. Cf. *neco:*, *occi:do:*, *truci:do:*  
*interim*, adv. *\_meanwhile\_* *interior*, -ius, adj. *\_interior,*  
*inner\_* (Sec. 315) *inter-mitto:*, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus,  
*\_leave off, suspend\_* *interpre:s*, -etis, m. and f. *\_interpreter\_*  
*inter-rogo:*, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *\_question\_* *inter-sum*,  
 -esse, -fui:, -futu:rus [[inter, *\_between\_*, + *sum*, *\_be\_*]],  
*\_be present, take part in\_*,  
 with dat. (Sec. 501.15)  
*inter-va:llum*, -i:, n. *\_interval, distance\_* *intra:*,  
 adv. and prep. with acc. *\_within, in\_* *intro:*, -a:re,  
 -a:vi, -a:tus, *\_go into, enter\_* *in-venio:*, -i:re,  
 -ve:ni:, -ventus [[in, *\_upon\_*, + *venio:*, *\_come\_*]],  
*\_find\_*  
*invi:sus*, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of *invideo:*, *\_envy\_*]],  
*\_hated,*  
*\_detested\_*  
*Iola:us*, -i:, m. *\_I-o-la:'us\_*, a friend of Hercules  
*ipse*, -a, -um, intensive pron. *\_that very, this very;*  
*self, himself,*  
*herself, itself\_*, (Sec. 481)  
*i:ra*, -ae, f. *\_wrath, anger\_* *i:ra:tus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 [[part. of *i:ra:scor*, *\_be angry\_*]], *\_angered,*  
*enraged\_*



is, ea, id, demonstrative adj. and pron. \_this, that;  
he, she, it\_

(Sec. 481)

iste, -a, -ud, demonstrative adj. and pron. \_that\_  
(of yours), \_he,

she, it\_ (Sec. 481)

ita, adv. \_so, thus\_. Cf. si:c and tam Italia,

-ae, f. \_Italy\_ ita-que, conj. \_and so, therefore\_

item, adv. \_also\_ iter, itineris, n. \_journey, march,  
route; way, passage\_

(Secs. 247.1.a; 468).

iter dare, \_give a right of way, allow  
to pass\_.

iter facere, \_march\_ (see p. 159)

iubeo:, -e:re, iussi:, iussus, \_order, command\_.

Usually with the infin.

and subj. acc. (Sec. 213)

iu:dex, -icis, m. and f. \_judge\_ (Sec. 464.1) iu:dico:,  
-a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[iu:dex, \_judge\_]], \_judge,  
decide\_

(Sec. 420.c)

Iu:lia, -ae, \_Julia\_, a Roman name Iu:lius, Iu:li:,

m. \_Julius\_, a Roman name iungo:, -e:re, iu:nxi:,

iu:nctus, \_join; yoke, harness\_ Iu:no:, -o:nis, f.

\_Juno\_, the queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter

Iuppiter, Iovis, m. \_Jupiter\_, the supreme god iu:ro:,

-a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, \_swear, take an oath\_ iussus,

-a, -um, part. of iubeo:, \_ordered\_

## L



## Page 248

L., abbreviation for Lu:cius labefactus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of labefacio:, *cause to shake*]], *shaken, weakened, ready to fall*

Labie:nus, -i:, m. *La-bi-e'nus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants labor, -o:ris, m. *labor, toil* labo:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[labor, labor]], *labor; suffer, be hard pressed*

lacrima, -ae, f. *tear* lacus, -u:s (dat. and abl. plur. lacubus), m. *lake* laete:, adv. [[laetus, *glad*]], compared laetius, laetissime:, *gladly*

laetitia, -ae, f. [[laetus, *glad*]], *joy* laetus, -a, -um, adj. *glad, joyful* lapis, -idis, m. *stone* (Secs. 247.2.a; 464.1) La:r, Laris, m.; plur. Lare:s, -um (rarely -ium), *the Lares or household, gods*

la:te:, adv. [[la:tus, *wide*]], compared la:tius, la:tissime:, *widely* Latine:, adv. *in Latin*.

Lati:ne: loqui:, *to speak Latin* la:titu:do:, -inis, f. [[la:tus, *wide*]], *width* La:to:na, -ae, f. *Latona*, mother of Apollo and Diana latus, -a, -um, adj. *wide* la:tus, -eris, n. *side, flank*.

ab utro:que latere, *on each side* laudo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[laus, *praise*]], *praise* laurea, -ae, f. *laurel* laurea:tus, -a, -um, adj. *crowned with laurel* laus, laudis, f. *praise* lectulus, -i:, m. *couch, bed* le:ga:tus, -i:, m. *ambassador; lieutenant* legio:, -o:nis, f. [[cf. lego:, *gather*]], (*body of soldiers*),

*legion*, about 3600 men (Sec. 464.2.a)

legio:na:rius, -a, -um, adj. *legionary*. Plur. legio:narii:, -o:rum, m. *the soldiers of the legion*

lego:, -ere, le:gi:, le:ctus, *read* le:nis, -e, adj. *gentle, smooth, mild* le:niter, adv.





[[le:nis, *gentle*]], compared le:nius, le:nissime:,  
*gently*

Lentulus, -i, m. *Lentulus*, a Roman family name

leo:, -o:nis, m. *lion* Lernaesus, -a, -um, adj.

*Lernaeean*, of Lerna, in southern Greece Lesbia,

-ae, f. *Lesbia*, a girl's name levis,

-e, adj. *light* le:x, le:gis, f. *measure*,

*law* libenter, adv. [[libe:ns, *willing*]],

compared libentius,

libentissime:, *willingly*,  
*gladly*

li:ber, -era, -erum, adj. *free* (Sec. 469.b)

li:beri:, -o:rum, m. [[li:ber, *free*]], *children*

li:bero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[li:ber, *free*]],

*set free, release*,

*liberate*

li:berta:s, -a:tis, f. [[li:ber, *free*]], *freedom*,

*liberty* li:ctor, -o:ris, m. *lictor* (p.

225) li:mus, -i:, m. *mud* littera, -ae, f.

*a letter* of the alphabet; in plur. *a letter*,

*epistle*

li:tus, -oris, n. *seashore, beach* locus, -i:,

m. (plur. loci: and loca, m. and n.), *place*,

*spot* longe:, adv. [[longus, *long*]], comp.

longius, longissime:, *a long*

*way off; by far*

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [[longus, *long*]],



## Page 249

*distant, remote* longitu:do:, -inis, f. [[longus, *long*]], *length* longus, -a, -um, adj.  
*long* loquor, loqui, locu:tus sum, dep. verb,  
*talk, speak* lo:ri:ca, -ae, f. [[lo:rum, *thong*]],  
*coat of mail, corselet* lu:do:, -ere, lu:si:,  
 lu:sus, *play* lu:dus, -i:, m. *play; school*,  
 the elementary grades. Cf. schola lu:na, -ae,  
 f. *moon* lu:x, lu:cis, f. (no gen. plur.), *light*.  
 pri:ma lu:x, *daybreak*  
 Ly:dia, -ae, f. *Lydia*, a girl's name

## M

M., abbreviation for Ma:rcus magicus, -a, -um, adj.  
*magic* magis, adv. in comp. degree [[magnus, *great*]], *more, in a higher*  
*degree* (Sec. 323)  
 magister, -tri:, m. *master, commander; teacher*  
 magistra:tus, -u:s, m. [[magister, *master*]],  
*magistracy*;  
*magistrate*  
 magnitu:do:, -inis, f. [[magnus, *great*]], *greatness*,  
*size* magnopere, adv. [[abl. of magnum opus]],  
 compared magis, maxime:,  
*greatly, exceedingly*  
 (Sec. 323)  
 magnus, -a, -um, adj., compared maior, maximus, *great*,  
*large*;  
*strong, loud* (Sec. 311)  
 maior, maius, -o:ris, adj., comp. of magnus, *greater*,  
*larger* (Sec.  
 311)  
 maio:re:s, -um, m. plur. of maior, *ancestors*  
 ma:lo:, ma:lle, ma:lui:, — [[magis,  
*more, + volo:, wish*]], *wish*  
*more, prefer* (Sec. 497)  
 malus, -a, -um, adj., compared peior, pessimus, *bad*,  
*evil* (Sec. 311) mando:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus  
 [[manus, *hand, + do:, put*]], (*put*)



*in*

*hand), intrust; order, command*

maneo:, -e:re, ma:nsi:, ma:nsu:rus, *stay, remain,*

*abide* Ma:nlius, Ma:nli:, m. *Manlius*, a

Roman name ma:nsue:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of ma:nsue:sco:,

*tame*]], *tamed* manus, -u:s, f. *hand*;

*force, band* Ma:rcus, -i:, m. *Marcus, Mark*,

a Roman first name mare, -is, n. (no gen. plur.),

*sea*.

mare tene:re, *be out to sea*

margo:, -inis, m. *edge, border* mari:tus, -i:,

m. *husband* Marius, Mari:, m. *Marius*,

a Roman name, esp. *C. Marius*, the general

Ma:rtius, -a, -um, adj. *of Mars*, esp. the *Campus*

*Martius* ma:ter, -tris, f. *mother* ma:trimo:nium,

ma:trimo:'ni:, n. *marriage*.

in ma:trimo:nium du:cere, *marry*

ma:tu:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *hasten*.

Cf. contendo:, propero: ma:tu:rus, -a, -um, adj.

*ripe, mature* maxime:, adv. in superl. degree

[[*maximus, greatest*]], compared

magnopere, magis, maxime:,

*especially, very much* (Sec. 323)

maximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of magnus, *greatest,*

*extreme*

(Sec. 311)

medius, -a, -um, adj. *middle part; middle, intervening*

melior, -ius, -o:ris, adj., comp. of bonus, *better*

(Sec. 311) melius, adv. in comp. degree, compared

bene, melius, optime:,

*better* (Sec. 323)



## Page 250

memoria, -ae, f. [[memor, *mindful*]], *memory*.

memoria: tene:re, *remember*

me:ns, mentis, f. *mind*. Cf. animus me:nsis,

-is, m. *month* (Sec. 247.2. a) merca:tor, -o:ris,

m. [[mercor, *trade*]], *trader, merchant*

meri:dia:nus, -a, -um, adj. [[meri:die:s, *noon*]],  
*of midday* meri:die:s, —

(acc. -em, abl. -e:), m. [[medius, *mid*, +

die:s, *day*]], *noon*

metus, -u:s, m. *fear, dread* meus, -a, -um,

possessive adj. and pron. *my, mine* (Sec. 98)

mi:les, -itis, m. *soldier* (Sec. 464.1) mi:lita:ris,

-e, adj. [[mi:les, *soldier*]], *military*.

re:s mi:lita:ris, *science of war*

mi:lito:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[mi:les, *soldier*]],

*serve as a*

*soldier*

mi:lle, plur. mi:lia, -ium, numeral adj. and subst.

*thousand* (Sec.

479)

minime:, adv. in superl. degree, compared parum, minus,

minime:,

*least, very little; by*

*no means* (Sec. 323)

minimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared

parvus, minor,

minimus, *least, smallest*

(Sec. 311)

minor, minus, -o:ris, adj. in comp. degree, compared

parvus, minor,

minimus, *smaller, less*

(Sec. 311)

Mi:no:s, -o:is, m. *Minos*, a king of Crete

minus, adv. in comp. degree, compared parum, minus,

minime:, *less*

(Sec. 323)

Minyae, -a:rum, m. *the Minyae*, a people of

Greece mi:ra:bilis, -e, adj. [[mi:ror, *wonder at*]],

*wonderful, marvelous* mi:ror, -a:ri:, -a:tus



sum, dep. verb [[mi:rus, *wonderful*]], *wonder*,  
*marvel, admire*

mi:rus, -a, -um, adj. *wonderful* Mi:se:num,  
 -i:, *Mise'num*, a promontory and harbor  
 on the coast of

Campania. See map

miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy, miserable*

missus, -a, -um, part. of mitto:, *sent* mitto:,

-ere, mi:si:, missus, *send* modicus, -a, -um

[[modus, *measure*]], *modest, ordinary*

modo, adv. [[abl. of modus, *measure*, with shortened  
 o]], *only*,

*merely, just now.*

modo ... modo, *now ... now, sometimes*

... *sometimes*

modus, -i:, m. *measure; manner, way; kind*

moenia, -ium, n. plur. [[cf. mu:nio:, *fortify*]],

*walls, ramparts* moleste:, adv. [[molestus,  
*troublesome*]], compared molestius,

molestissime:, *annoyingly.*

moleste: ferre, *to be annoyed*

molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome, annoying, unpleasant*

(Sec. 501.16) moneo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus, *remind*,

*advise, warn* (Sec. 489) mo:ns, montis, m. *mountain*

(Sec. 247.2. a) mo:nstrum, -i:, n. *monster*

mora, -ae, f. *delay* moror, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum,

dep. verb [[mora, *delay*]], *delay, linger*;

*impede*

mors, mortis, f. [[cf. morior, *die*]], *death*

mo:s, mo:ris, m. *custom, habit* mo:tus, -u:s,

m. [[cf. moveo:, *move*]], *motion, movement.*



## Page 251

terrae mo:tus, *earthquake*  
 moveo:, -e:re, mo:vi:, mo:tus, *move* mox, adv.  
*soon, presently* mulier, -eris, f. *woman*  
 multitu:do:, -inis, f. [[multus, *much*]], *multitude*  
 multum (multo:), adv. [[multus, *much*]], compared  
 plu:s, plu:rimum,  
*much* (Sec. 477)  
 multus, -a, -um, adj., compared plu:s, plu:rimum,  
*much*; plur. *many*  
 (Sec. 311)  
 mu:nio:, -i:re, -i:vi: or -ii:, -i:tus, *fortify*,  
*defend* mu:ni:tio:, -o:nis, f. [[mu:nio:, *fortify*]],  
*defense, fortification* mu:rus, -i:, m. *wall*.  
 Cf. moenia mu:sica, -ae, f. *music*

## N

nam, conj. *for*. Cf. enim nam-que, conj.,  
 a strengthened nam, introducing a reason or  
 explanation, *for, and in*  
*fact; seeing that*  
 na:rro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *tell, relate*  
 na:scor, na:sci:, na:tus sum, dep. verb, *be born*,  
*spring from* na:tu:ra, -ae, f. *nature* na:tus,  
 part. of na:scor nauta, -ae, m. [[for na:vita, from  
 na:vis, *ship*]], *sailor* na:va:lis, -e,  
 adj. [[na:vis, *ship*]], *naval* na:vigium,  
 na:vi'gi:, n. *ship, boat* na:vigo:, -a:re,  
 -a:vi:, -a:tus [[na:vis, *ship*, + ago:, *drive*]],  
*sail, cruise*  
 na:vis, -is (abl. -i: or -e), f. *ship*  
 (Sec. 243.1).  
 na:vem co:nscendere, *embark*,  
*go on board*.  
 na:vem solve, *set sail*.  
 na:vis longa, *man-of-war*



ne:, conj. and adv. *in order that not, that*  
(with verbs of fearing),  
*lest; not.*

ne: ... quidem, *not even*  
-ne, interrog. adv., enclitic (see Secs. 16, 210).  
Cf. no:nne and num nec or neque, conj. [[ne:, *not*,  
+ que, *and*]], *and not, nor.*

nec ... nec or neque ... neque, *neither*  
... *nor*

necessa:rius, -a, -um, adj. *needful, necessary*  
neco:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[cf. nex, *death*]],  
*kill.* Cf. interficio:,

occi:do:, truci:do:  
nego:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *deny, say not*  
(Sec. 420.a) nego:tium, nego:'ti:, n. [[nec,  
*not*, + o:tium, *ease*]], *business,*  
*affair, matter.*

alicui nego:tium dare, *to employ some*  
*one*

Nemaeus, -a, -um, adj. *Neme'an, of Neme'a,*  
in southern Greece ne:mo, dat. ne:mini: (gen.  
nu:lli:us, abl. nu:llo:, supplied from

nu:llus), m. and f. [[ne:,  
*not*, + homo:, *man*]], (*not a man*),  
*no one, nobody*

Neptu:nus, -i:, m. *Neptune*, god of the sea,  
brother of Jupiter neque, see nec neuter, -tra, -trum  
(gen. -tri:us, dat. -tri:), adj. *neither* (of  
two) (Sec. 108)

ne:-ve, conj. adv. *and not, and that not, and lest*  
nihil, n. indecl. [[ne:, *not*, + hi:lum, *a*  
*whit*]], *nothing.*

nihil posse, *to have no power*  
nihilum, -i:, n., see nihil Niobe:, -e:s, f. *Ni'obe*,  
the queen of Thebes whose children were



## Page 252

destroyed by Apollo and Diana  
 nisi, conj. [[ne:, *not*, + si:, *if*]],  
*if not, unless, except* no:bilis, -e, adj. *well*  
*known; noble* noceo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itu:rus [[cf.  
 neco:, *kill*]], *hurt, injure*,  
 with dat. (Sec. 501.14)  
 noctu:, abl. used as adv. [[cf. nox, *night*]],  
*at night, by night* No:la, -ae, f. *Nola*,  
 a town in central Campania. See map no:lo:, no:lle,  
 no:lui:, — [[ne, *not*, + volo:,  
*wish*]], *not to*  
*wish, be unwilling* (Sec.  
 497)  
 no:men, -inis, n. [[cf. no:sco:, *know*]], (*means*  
*of knowing*), *name* no:mino:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus  
 [[no:men, *name*]], *name, call*. Cf.  
 appello:, voco:  
 no:n, adv. [[ne:, *not*, + u:num, *one*]],  
*not*.  
 no:n so:lum ... sed etiam, *not only*  
*... but also*  
 no:n-dum, adv. *not yet* no:n-ne, interrog.  
 adv. suggesting an affirmative answer, *not?*  
 (Sec. 210). Cf. -ne and  
 num  
 no:s, pers. pron. *we* (see ego) (Sec. 480)  
 noster, -tra, -trum, possessive adj. and pron. *our*,  
*ours*. Plur.  
 nostri:, -o:rum, m. *our*  
*men* (Sec. 98)  
 novem, indecl. numeral adj. *nine* novus, -a,  
 -um, adj. *new*.  
 novae re:s, *a revolution*  
 nox, noctis, f. *night*, multa: nocte, *late*  
*at night* nu:llus, -a, -um (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:)

adj. [[ne:, *not*, +  
 u:llus, *any*]], *not*  
*any, none, no* (Sec. 108)  
 num, interrog. adv. suggesting a negative answer (Sec.





210). Cf. -ne and  
 no:nne. In indir. questions,  
*whether*  
 numerus, -i:, m. *number* numquam, adv. [[ne:,  
*not*, + umquam, *ever*]], *never*  
 nunc, adv. *now*. Cf. iam nu:ntio:, -a:re,  
 -a:vi:, -a:tus [[nu:ntius, *messenger*]], *report*,  
*announce* (Sec. 420.a)  
 nu:ntius, nu:nti:, m. *messenger* nu:per, adv.  
*recently, lately, just now* nympa, -ae, f.  
*nymph*

## O

ob, prep. with acc. *on account of*. In  
 compounds it often means *in*  
*front of, against*, or  
 it is intensive.  
 quam ob rem, *for this reason* (Sec.  
 340)  
 obses, -idis, m. and f. *hostage* ob-sideo:,-e:re,-se:di:,-  
 -sessus [[ob, *against*, + sedeo:, *sit*]],  
*besiege*  
 obtineo:,-e:re,-ui:,-tentus [[ob, *against*,  
 + teneo:, *hold*]],  
*possess, occupy, hold*  
 occa:sio:,-o:nis, f. *favorable opportunity, favorable*  
*moment* occa:sus, -u:s, m. *going down, setting*  
 occi:do:,-ere,-ci:di:,-ci:sus [[ob, *down*,  
 + caedo:, *strike*]],  
*strike down; cut down*,  
*kill*. Cf. interficio:, neco:  
 occupo:,-a:re,-a:vi:,-a:tus [[ob, *completely*,  
 + capio:, *take*]],  
*seize, take possession*  
*of, occupy*. Cf. rapio  
 oc-curro:,-ere,-curri:,-cursus [[ob, *against*  
 + curro:, *run*]],



## Page 253

*run towards; meet,*

with dat. (Sec. 426)

o:ceanus, -i:, m. *the ocean* octo:, indecl.

numeral adj. *eight* oculus, -i:, m. *eye*

officium, offi'ci:, n. *duty* o:lim, adv.

*formerly, once upon a time* o:men, -inis, n.

*sign, token, omen* o:-mitto:, -ere, -mi:si:,

-missus [[ob, over, past, + mitto:,

*send]], let go,*

*omit.*

consilium omittere, *give up a plan*

omni:no:, adv. [[omnis, all]], *altogether,*

*wholly, entirely* omnis, -e, adj. *all, every.*

Cf. to:tus onera:ria, -ae, f. [[onus, load]],

with na:vis expressed or

*understood, merchant vessel,*

*transport*

onus, -eris, n. *load, burden* opi:nio:, -o:nis,

f. [[opi:nor, suppose]], *opinion, supposition,*

*expectation*

oppida:nus, -i:, m. [[oppidum, town]], *townsman*

oppidum, -i:, n. *town, stronghold* opportu:nus,

-a, -um, adj. *suitable, opportune, favorable*

op-primo:, -ere, -pressi:, -pressus [[ob, against,

+ premo:,

*press]], (press*

*against), crush; surprise*

oppugna:tio:, -o:nis, f. *storming, assault*

oppugno:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[ob, against,

+ pugno: *fight]],*

*fight against, assault,*

*storm, assail*

optime:, adv. in superl. degree, compared bene, melius,

optime:, *very*

*well, best of all* (Sec.

323)

optimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared

bonus, melior,

optimus, *best, most excellent*

(Sec. 311)

opus, -eris, n. *work, labor, task* (Sec. 464.2.b)



o:ra:culum, -i:, n. [[o:ro:, *speak*]], *oracle*  
 o:ra:tor, -o:ris, m. [[o:ro:, *speak*]], *orator*  
 orbis, -is, m. *ring, circle*.  
 orbis terra:rum, *the earth, world*  
 orbita, -ae, f. [[orbis, *wheel*]], *rut*  
 Orcus, -i:, m. *Orcus, the lower world* o:rdo:,  
 -inis, m. *row, order, rank* (Sec. 247.2.a) ori:go,  
 -inis, f. [[orior, *rise*]], *source, origin*  
 orior, -i:ri:, ortus sum, dep. verb, *arise, rise,*  
*begin; spring, be*  
*born*  
 o:rna:mentum, -i:, n. [[o:rno:, *fit out*]],  
*ornament, jewel* o:rna:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part.  
 of o:rno:, *fit out*]] *fitted out;*  
*adorned*  
 o:rno:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *fit out, adorn*

## P

P., abbreviation for Pu:blus paene, adv. *nearly,*  
*almost* palu:da:mentum, -i:, n. *military cloak*  
 palu:s, -u:dis, f. *swamp, marsh* pa:nis, -is,  
 m. *bread* pa:r, paris, adj. *equal* (Sec.  
 471. III) para:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of  
 paro:, *prepare*]], *prepared,*  
*ready*  
 parco:, -ere, peper'ci: (parsi:), parsu:rus,  
*spare, with dat.*  
 (Sec. 501.14)  
 pa:reo:, -e:re, -ui:, —, *obey,*  
 with dat. (Sec. 501.14) paro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,  
*prepare for, prepare; provide, procure* pars,



## Page 254

partis, f. *part, share; side, direction* parum,  
adv., compared minus, minime:, *too little, not enough*  
(Sec.

323)

parvus, -a, -um, adj., compared minor, minimus, *small, little*

(Sec. 311)

passus, -u:s, m. *step, pace.*

mi:lle passuum, *thousand paces, mile*  
(Sec. 331.b)

pateo:, -e:re, patui:, —, *lie open, be open; stretch, extend* pater, -tris, m.  
*father* (Sec. 464.2.a) patior, -i:, passus sum,  
dep. verb, *bear, suffer, allow, permit* patria,  
-ae, f. [[cf. pater, *father*]], *fatherland, (one's) country*

paucus, -a, -um, adj. (generally plur.), *few, only a few* paulisper, adv. *for a little while*

paulo:, adv. *by a little, little* paulum adv.

*a little, somewhat* pa:x, pa:cis, f. (no gen.

plur.), *peace* pecu:nia, -ae, f. [[pecus, *cattle*]],  
*money* pedes, -itis, m. [[pe:s, *foot*]],

*foot soldier* pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [[pe:s, *foot*]], *on foot; by land* peior, peius,

-o:ris, adj. in comp. degree, compared malus, peior,  
pessimus, *worse* (Sec.

311)

pellis, -is, f. *skin, hide* penna, -ae, f.

*feather* per, prep. with acc. *through, by means of, on account of.* In

composition it often has the  
force of *thoroughly, completely, very*  
(Sec. 340)

percussus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of percutio:, *strike through*]],

*pierced*

per-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[per, *through*,  
+ du:co:, *lead*]],

*lead through.*

fossam perdu:cere, *to construct a ditch*



per-exiguus, -a, -um, adj. [[per, *very*, + *exiguus*,  
*small*]],  
*very small, very short*  
 perfidus, -a, -um, adj. *faithless, treacherous*,  
*false* per-fringo:, -ere, -fre:gi:, -fra:ctus [[per,  
*through*, frango:,  
*break*]], *shatter*  
 pergo:, -ere, perre:xi:, perre:ctus [[per, *through*,  
 + rego:,  
*conduct*]], *go on*,  
*proceed, hasten*  
 peri:culum, -i:, n. *trial, test; danger* peristy:lum,  
 -i:, n. *peristyle*, an open court with columns  
 around it peri:tus, -a, -um, adj. *skillful*  
 perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. *perpetual* Perseus,  
 -ei:, *Perseus*, a Greek hero, son of Jupiter  
 and Danae perso:na, -ae, f. *part, character, person*  
 per-sua:deo:, -e:re, -sua:si:, -sua:sus [[per, *thoroughly*,  
 + sua:deo:,  
*persuade*]], *persuade*,  
*advise*, with dat. (Sec. 501.14), often  
 with an object clause of purpose  
 (Sec. 501.41)  
 per-terreo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[per, *thoroughly*,  
 + terreo:,  
*frighten*]], *thoroughly*  
*terrify, alarm*  
 per-venio:, -i:re, -ve:ni:, -ventus [[per, *through*,  
 + venio:,  
*come*]], *arrive*,  
*reach, come to*  
 pe:s, pedis, m. *foot*.  
 pedem referre, *retreat* (Sec. 247.2.a)  
 pessimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared



# Page 255

malus, peior,  
     pessimus, *worst* (Sec.  
 311)  
 peto:, -ere, -i:vi: or -ii:, -i:tus, *strive*  
*for, seek, beg, ask; make*  
     *for, travel to.* Cf.  
 postulo:, quaero:, rogo:  
 Pharsa:lus, -i:, f. *Pharsa'lus* or *Pharsa'lia*,  
 a town in Thessaly,  
     near which Cassar defeated  
 Pompey, 48 B.C.  
 philosophia, -ae, f. *philosophy* philosophus,  
 -i:, m. *philosopher* pictus, -a, -um, adj. [[part.  
 of pingo:, *paint*]], *colored,*  
     *variegated*  
 pi:lum, -i:, n. *spear, javelin* (Sec. 462.b)  
 pisci:na, -ae, f. [[piscis, *fish*]], *fish*  
*pond* piscis, -is, m. *fish* pi:stor, -o:ris,  
 m. *baker* placeo:. -e:re, -ui:, -itus, *please,*  
*be pleasing, with dat.* (Sec.  
 501.14)  
 pla:nitie:s, -e:i:, f. [[pla:nus, *level*]],  
*plain* pla:nus, -a, -um, adj. *level, flat*  
 ple:nus, -a, -um, *full* plu:rimum, adv. in superl.  
 degree, compared multum, plu:s, plu:rimum,  
*very much.*  
     plu:rimum vale:re, *be most influential*  
 (Sec. 322)  
 plu:rimum, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared  
 multus, plu:s,  
     plu:rimum, *most, very many*  
 (Sec. 311)  
 plu:s, plu:ris, adj. in comp. degree, compared multus,  
 plu:s, plu:rimum;  
     sing. n. as substantive, *more;*  
 plur. *more, several* (Sec. 311)  
 pluteus, -i:, m. *shield, parapet* poena, -ae,  
 f. *punishment, penalty* poe:ta, -ae, m. *poet*  
 pompa, -ae, f. *procession* Pompe:ii:, -o:rum,  
 m. *Pompeii*, a city of Campania. See map  
 Pompe:ius, Pompe:'i:, m. *Pompey*, a Roman



name po:mum, -i:, n. *apple* po:no:, -ere, posui:, positus, *put, place*.

castra po:nere, *pitch camp*

po:ns, pontis, m. *bridge* (Sec. 247.2.a) popi:na, -ae, f. *restaurant* populus, -i:, m. *people*

Porsena, -ae, m. *Porsena*, king of Etruria, a district of Italy.

See map

porta, -ae, f. *gate, door* porto:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *bear, carry* portus, -u:s, m. [[cf.

porta, *gate*]], *harbor* possideo:, -e:re,

-se:di:, -sessus, *have, own, possess* possum, posse, potui:, —, irreg. verb [[potis, *able, + sum,*

*I am*]], *be able,*

*can* (Sec. 495).

nihil posse, *have no power*

post, prep, with acc. *after, behind* (Sec. 340)

postea:, adv. [[post, *after, + ea:, this*]],

*afterwards* (posterus), -a, -um, adj., compared

posterior, postre:mus or

postumus, *following, next*

(Sec. 312)

postquam, conj. *after, as soon as* postre:mo:,

adv. [[abl. of postre:mus, *last*]], *at last,*

*finally*.

Cf. de:mum, de:nique (Sec.

322)

postridie:, adv. [[postero:, *next, + die:,*

*day*]], *on the next*

*day*

postulo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *ask, demand, require*.

Cf. peto:,

quaero:, rogo:

potentia, -ae, f. [[pote:ns, *able*]], *might,*

*power, force* prae-beo:, -e:re, -ui:, -itus [[prae,



## Page 256

*forth*, + *habeo*:, *hold*]],

*offer*, *give*

*praeda*, -ae, f. *booty*, *spoil*, *plunder* *prae-di:co*:,

-ere, -di:xi:, -dictus [[*prae*, *before*, + *di:co*:, *tell*]], *foretell*,

*predict*

*prae-ficio*:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[*prae*, *before*, + *facio*:,

*make*]], *place in*

*command*, with acc. and dat. (Sec. 501.15)

*prae-mitto*:, -ere, -mi:si:, -missus [[*prae*, *forward*, + *mitto*:,

*send*]], *send forward*

*praemium*, *praemi*:, n. *reward*, *prize* *praeruptus*,

-a, -um [[part. of *prae-rumpo*:, *break off*]], *broken*

*off*, *steep*

*praese:ns*, -entis, adj. *present*, *immediate*

*praesertim*, adv. *especially*, *chiefly* *praesidium*,

*praesi'di*, n. *guard*, *garrison*, *protection*

*prae-sto*:, -a:re, -stiti:, -stitus [[*prae*, *before*, + *sto*,

*stand*]], (*stand*

*before*), *excel*, *surpass*, with dat. (Sec.

501.15); *show*, *exhibit*

*prae-sum*, -esse, -fui:, -futu:rus [[*prae*, *before*, + *sum*, *be*]],

*be over*, *be in command*

*of*, with dat. (Sec. 501.15)

*praeter*, prep, with acc. *beyond*, *contrary to*

(Sec. 340) *praeterea*:, adv. [[*praeter*, *besides*, + *ea*:, *this*]], *in*

*addition*, *besides*, *moreover*

*praetextus*, -a, -um, adj. *bordered*, *edged*

*praeto:rium*, *praeto:'ri*:, n. *praetorium*

*prandium*, *prandi*:, n. *luncheon* *premo*:, -ere,

*pressi*:, *pressus*, *press hard*, *compress*; *crowd*, *drive*, *harass*

(*prex*, *precis*), f. *prayer* *pri:mo*:, adv. [[*pri:mus*, *first*]], *at first*, *in the beginning* (Sec.

322)

*pri:mum*, adv. [[*pri:mus*, *first*]], *first*.

*quam primum*, *as soon as possible*





pri:mus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared  
prior, pri:mus,  
*first* (Sec. 315)

pri:nceps, -cipis, m. [[pri:mus, *first*, + capio:,  
*take*]],

(*taking the first place*),  
*chief, leader* (Sec. 464.1)

prior, prius, -o:ris, adj. in comp. degree, superl.,  
pri:mus, *former*

(Sec. 315)

pri:stinus, -a, -um, adj. *former, previous*

pro:, prep, with abl. *before; for, for the sake*  
*of, in behalf of;*

*instead of, as* (Sec. 209).

In composition, *forth, forward*

pro:ce:do:, -ere, -cussi:, -cessu:rus [[pro:, *forward*,  
+ ce:do:,

*go*]], *go forward*,

*proceed*

procul, adv. *far, afar off* pro:-curro:, -ere,

-curri: (-cucurri:), -cur-sus [[pro:, *forward*,

+

curro:, *run*]], *run*

*forward*

proelium, proeli, n. *battle, combat*.

proelium committere, *join battle*.

proelium facere, *fight a battle*

profectio:, -o:nis, f. *departure* profici:scor,

-i:, -fectus sum, dep. verb, *set out, march*.

Cf.

e:gredior, exeo:

pro:-gredior, -i:, -gressus sum, dep. verb [[pro:,  
*forth*, +

gradior, *go*]], *go*



## Page 257

forth, proceed, advance. Cf. pergo:,  
     pro:ce:do:  
 pro:gressus, see pro:gredior prohibeo:, -e:re, -ui:,  
 -itus [[pro:, *forth, away from*, + habeo:,  
*hold*]], *keep away*  
*from, hinder, prevent*  
 pro:-moveo:, -e:re, -mo:vi:, -mo:tus [[pro:, *forward*,  
 + moveo:,  
*move*]], *move forward*,  
*advance*  
 pro:-nu:ntio:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[pro:, *forth*,  
 + nu:ntio:,  
*announce*]], *proclaim*,  
*declare*  
 prope, adv., compared propius, proxi-me:, *nearly*.  
 Prep, with acc.  
*near*  
 pro:-pello:, -ere, -puli:, -pulsus [[pro:, *forth*,  
 + pello:,  
*drive*]], *drive forth*;  
*move, impel*  
 propero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[properus, *quick*]],  
*go quickly*,  
     *hasten*. Cf. contendo:,  
 maturo:  
 propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [[prope, *near*]], *near*,  
*neighboring* propior, -ius, -o:ris, adj. in comp.  
 degree, superl., proximus,  
*nearer* (Sec. 315)  
 propius, adv. in comp. degree, compared prope, propius,  
 proxime:,  
*nearer* (Sec. 323)  
 propter, prep. with acc. *on account of, because*  
*of* (Sec. 340) pro:-scri:bo:, -ere, -scri:psi:,  
 -scriptus [[pro:, *forth*, + scribo:,  
*write*]], *proclaim*,  
*publish*. Cf. pro:nu:ntio:  
 pro:-sequor, -sequi:, -secu:tus sum, dep. verb [[pro:,  
*forth*, +  
     *sequor, follow*]], *escort*,  
*attend*



pro:-sum, pro:desse, pro:fui:, pro:futu:rus [[pro:.,  
*for*, + *sum*, *be*]],  
*be useful, benefit*,  
 with dat. (Secs. 496; 501.15)  
 pro:-tego:., -ere, -te:x=i], -te:ctus [[pro:., *in*  
*front*, + *tego:*,  
*cover*]], *cover in front*,  
*protect*  
 pro:vincia, -ae, f. *territory, province* proxime:.,  
 adv. in superl. degree, compared *prope*, *propius*, *proxime:*,  
*nearest, next; last, most*  
*recently* (Sec. 323)  
 proximus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree, compared  
*propior*,  
*proximus, nearest, next*  
 (Sec. 315)  
 pu:blicus, -a, -um, adj. [[*populus, \_people\_*]], *of*  
*the people*,  
*public*, *res pu:blica*,  
*the commonwealth*  
 pu:ella, -ae, f. [[*diminutive of puer, boy*]],  
*girl, maiden* puer, -eri, m. *boy; slave*  
 (Sec. 462.c) pugna, -ae, f. *\_fight, battle.\_* Cf. *proelium*  
 pugno:., -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[*pugna, battle*]],  
*fight*. Cf. *contendo:*,  
*di:mico:*  
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj. *beautiful, pretty*  
 (Secs. 469.b; 304) Pullo:., -o:nis, m. *Pullo*,  
 a centurion pulso:., -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *strike*,  
*beat* puppis, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i:), f. *stern*  
 of a ship, *deck* pu:re:., adv. [[*pu:rus, pure*]],  
 comp. pu:rius, *purely* pu:rgo:., -a:re, -a:vi:,  
 -a:tus, *cleanse, clean* purpureus, -a, -um,  
 adj. *purple, dark red* puto:., -a:re, -a:vi:,  
 -a:tus, *reckon, think* (Sec. 420,\_c\_). Cf.  
*arbitror*,  
*exi:stimo:*  
 Py:thia, -ae, f. *Pythia*, the inspired priestess  
 of Apollo at Delphi



# Page 258

## Q

qua: de: causa:, *for this reason, wherefore*

qua: re:, *therefore, for this reason* quaero:,

-ere, -si:vi:, -si:tus, *seek, ask, inquire.*

Cf. peto:, postulo:,

rogo:

qua:lis, -e, interrog. pronom. adj. *of what sort, what kind of.*

talis ... qualis, *such*

... *as*

quam, adv. *how*; after a comparative, *than*;  
with a superlative,

translated *as ... as possible,*

quam pri:mum, *as soon as possible*

quantus, -a, -um, adj. [[quam, *how*]], *how great, how much,*

tantus ... quantus, *as*

*great as*

qua:rtus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [[quattuor, *four*]],

*fourth* quattuor, indecl. numeral adj. *four*

quattuor-decim, indecl. numeral adj. *fourteen*

-que, conj., enclitic, *and* (Sec. 16). Cf.

ac, atque, et qui:, quae, quod, rel. pron. and adj.

*who, which, what, that* (Sec.

482)

quia, conj. *because.* Cf. quod qui:dam,

quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), indef. pron. and adj. *a certain*

*one, a certain, a* (Sec.

485).

quidem, adv. *to be sure, certainly, indeed,*

ne: ... quidem, *not*

*even*

quie:s, -e:tis, f. *rest, repose* quie:tus,

-a, -um, adj. *quiet, restful* qui:ndecim, indecl.

numeral adj. *fifteen* qui:ngenti:, -ae, -a,

numeral adj. *five hundred* qui:nque, indecl.

numeral adj. *five* qui:ntus, -a, -um, numeral

adj. *fifth* quis (qui:), quae, quid (quod),



interrog. pron. and adj. *who? what?*

*which?* (Sec. 483).

quis (qui:), qua (quae), quid (quod), indef. pron.  
and adj., used after

si:, nisi, ne:, num, *any*

*one, anything, some one, something, any,*  
*some* (Sec. 484).

quisquam, quicquam or quidquam (no fem. or plur.),  
indef. pron. *any*

*one* (at all), *anything*  
(at all) (Sec. 486).

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), indef. pron.  
and adj. *each, each*

*one, every* (Sec. 484).

quo:, interrog. and rel. adv. *whither, where*

quo:, conj. *in order to, that*, with comp. degree  
(Sec. 350). quod, conj. *because, in that*.

Cf. quia quoque, conj., following an emphatic word,  
*also, too*. Cf. etiam quot-anni:s, adv.

[[quot, *how many + annus, year*]], *every*  
*year, yearly*

quotie:ns, interrog. and rel. adv. *how often? as*  
*often as*

## R

ra:di:x, -i:cis, f. *root; foot* rapio:, -ere,

-ui:, -tus, *seize, snatch* ra:ro:, adv. [[ra:rus,  
*rare*]], *rarely* ra:rus, -a, -um, adj.

*rare* re- or red-, an inseparable prefix, *again,*

*back, anew, in return* rebellio:, -o:nis, f. *renewal*  
*of war, rebellion* rece:ns, -entis, adj. *recent*

re-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi:, -ceptus [[re-, *back,*  
+ capio:, *take*]],

*take back, receive*.

se: recipere, *withdraw, retreat*



## Page 259

re-cli:na:tus, -a, -um, part. of reclino:, *leaning back*  
 re-crea:tus, -a, -um, part. of recreo:, *refreshed*  
 re:ctus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of rego:, *keep straight*]],  
*straight,*

*direct*

re-cu:so:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *refuse* red-a:ctus,  
 -a, -um, part. of redigo:, *reduced, subdued*  
 red-eo:, -i:re, -ii:, -itus [[red-, *back*, +  
 eo:, *go*]], *go back,*  
*return* (Sec. 413).

Cf. revento:

reditus, -u:s, m. [[cf. redeo:, *return*]], *return,*  
*going back* re-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[re-,  
*back*, + du:co:, *lead*]],  
*lead back*

re-fero:, -ferre, rettuli:, -la:tus [[re-, *back*,  
 + fero:, *bear*]],  
*bear back; report.*

pedem referre, *withdraw, retreat*  
 re-ficio:, -ere, -fe:ci:, -fectus [[re-, *again*,  
 + facio:, *make*]],  
*make again, repair.*

se: reficere, *refresh one's*  
*self*

re:gi:na, -ae, f. [[re:x, *king*]], *queen*  
 regio:, -o:nis, f. *region, district* re:gnum,  
 -i:, n. *sovereignty; kingdom* rego:, -ere, re:xi:,  
 re:ctus [[cf. re:x, *king*]], *govern, rule*  
 (Sec.

490)

re-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:, -iectus [[re-, *back*,  
 + iacio:, *hurl*]],  
*hurl back; throw away*

re-linquo:, -ere, -li:qui:, -lictus [[re-, *behind*,  
 + linquo:,  
*leave*]], *leave behind,*  
*leave, abandon*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [[cf. relinquo:, *leave*]],  
*left over,*



*remaining*. As a noun,  
 plur. *the rest*  
 remo:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of re-moveo:, *remove*]],  
*remote*,  
*distant*  
 re-moveo:, -e:re, -mo:vi:, -motus [[re-, *back*,  
 + moveo:, *move*]],  
*remove*  
 re:mus, -i:, m. oar re-perio:, -i:re, repperi:,  
 repertus, *find* re-porto:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus  
 [[re-, *back*, + porto:, *carry*]],  
*carry back*, *bring back*,  
*win*, *gain*  
 re:s, rei:, f. *thing*, *business*, *matter*, *deed*, *event*,  
*circumstance*  
 (Sec. 467).  
 quam ob rem, *for this reason*.  
 re:s adversae, *adversity*.  
 re:s fru:menta:ria, *grain supplies*.  
 re:s gestae, *exploits*.  
 re:s milita:ris, *science of war*.  
 re:s pu:blica, *the commonwealth*.  
 re:s secunda:, *prosperity*  
 re-scindo:, -ere, -scidi:, -scissus [[re-, *back*,  
 + scindo:,  
*cut*]], *cut off*,  
*cut down*  
 re-sisto:, -ere, -stiti:, — [[re-,  
*back*, + sisto:, *cause to*  
*stand*]], *oppose*, *resist*,  
 with dat. (Sec. 501.14)  
 re-spondeo:, -e:re, -spondi:, -spo:nsus [[re-, *in*  
*return*, + spondeo:,  
*promise*]], *answer*,  
 reply (Sec. 420.a)  
 re-vertō:, -ere, -i:, —, or dep.  
 verb re-vertor, -i:, -sus sum  
 [[re-, *back*, + verto:,  
*turn*]], *turn back*, *return*. Usually  
 active in the perf. system  
 re-vincio:, -i:re, -vi:nxi:, -vi:nctus [[re-, *back*,



## Page 260

+ vincio:,  
*bind*]], *fasten*  
 re:x, re:gis, m. [[cf. rego:, *rule*]], *king*  
 Rhe:nus, -i:, m. *the Rhine*, a river of Germany  
 ri:pa, -ae, f. *bank* rogo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,  
*ask*. Cf. peto:, postulo:, quaero:  
 Ro:ma, -ae, f. *Rome*. See map Ro:ma:nus,  
 -a, -um, adj. [[Ro:ma, *Rome*]], *Roman*,  
 follows its noun.

As a noun, m. and f. *a*  
*Roman*  
 rosa, -ae, f. *rose* ro:strum, -i:, n. *beak*  
 of a ship. In plur., *the rostra*, the  
 speaker's stand in the  
 Roman Forum  
 rota, -ae, f. *wheel* Rubico:, -o:nis, m. *the*  
*Rubicon*, a river in northern Italy. See map  
 ru:mor, -o:ris, m. *report, rumor* ru:rsus, adv.  
 [[for reversus, *turned back*]], *again, in*  
*turn* ru:s, ru:ris (locative abl. ru:ri:, no gen.,  
 dat., or abl. plur.), n.  
*the country* (Sec. 501.36.1).  
 Cf. ager, patria, terra

## S

Sabi:nus, -a, -um, adj. *Sabine*. As a noun,  
 m. and f. *a Sabine*. The  
 Sabines were an ancient people  
 of central Italy. See map  
 sacrum, -i:, n. [[sacer, *consecrated*]], *something*  
*consecrated*,  
*sacrifice*; usually in  
 plur., *religious rites*  
 saepe, adv., compared saepius, saepissime:, *often*,  
*frequently* saevus, -a, -um, adj. *cruel, savage*  
 sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow* salio:, -i:re, -ui:,





salvus, *jump* salu:s, -u:tis, f. *safety*;  
*health*.

salu:tem di:cere, *send greetings*  
salu:to:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[salu:s, *health*]],  
*greet, salute* salve:, imv. of salveo:, *hail*,  
*greetings* sanguis, -inis, m. *blood* (Sec.  
247.2.a) sa:nita:s, -a:tis, f. [[sa:nus, *sound*]],  
*health, sanity* sapie:ns, -entis, adj. [[part.  
of sapio:, *be wise*]], *wise*,

*sensible*

satis, adv. and indecl. noun, *enough, sufficient*,  
*sufficiently* saxum, -i:, n. *rock, stone*  
scelus, -eris, n. *crime, sin* sce:ptrum, -i:,  
n. *scepter* schola, -ae, f. *school*, the  
higher grades. Cf. lu:dus scientia, -ae, f. [[scie:ns,  
*knowing*]], *skill, knowledge, science*  
scindo:, -ere, scidi:, scissus, *cut, tear* scio:,  
-i:re, -i:vi:, -i:tus, *know* (Sec. 420.b).  
Cf. cogno:sco: scri:bo:, -ere, scri:psi:, scri:ptus,  
*write* scu:tum, -i:, n. *shield, buckler*  
se:, see sui: se:cum = se: + cum secundus,  
-a, -um, adj. [[sequor, *follow*]], *following*,  
*next*,

*second; favorable, successful*.

re:s secundae, *prosperity*  
sed, conj. *but, on the contrary*.

no:n so:lum ... sed etiam, *not only*  
... *but also*

se:decim, indecl. numeral adj. *sixteen* sedeo:,  
-e:re, se:di:, sessus, *sit* semper, adv. *always*,  
*forever* sena:tus, -u:s, m. [[cf. senex, *old*]],  
*council of elders, senate* sentio:, -i:re, se:nsi:,  
se:nsus, *feel, know, perceive* (Sec. 420.d).



## Page 261

Cf. intellego:, video:

septem, indecl. numeral adj. *seven* septimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. *seventh* sequor, -i:, secu:tus sum, dep. verb, *follow* (Sec. 493) serpe:ns, -entis, f. [[serpo:, *crawl*]], *serpent*, *snake* sertae, -a:rum, f. plur. *wreaths*, *garlands* servitu:s, -u:tis, f. [[servus, *slave*]], *slavery*, *servitude* servo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *save*, *rescue*, *keep* servus, -i:, m. *slave* se:se:, emphatic for se: sex, indecl. numeral adj. *six* Sextus, -i:, m. *Sextus*, a Roman first name si:, conj. *if* si:c, adv. *thus*, *in this way*.

Cf. ita, tam Sicilia, -ae, f. *Sicily*.

See map si:c-ut, *just as*, *as if* signifer, -eri:, m. [[signum, *standard*, + fero:, *bear*]], *standard bearer* (p. 224)

signum, -i:, n. *ensign*, *standard*; *signal* silva, -ae, f. *wood*, *forest* similis, -e, adj., compared similior, simillimus, *like*, *similar*

(Sec. 307)

simul, adv. *at the same time* simul ac or simul atque, conj. *as soon as* sine, prep. with abl. *without* (Sec. 209) singuli:, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *one at a time*, *single*

(Sec. 334)

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj. *left* Sinuessā, -ae, f. *Sinues'sa*, a town in Campania.

See map sitis, -is (acc. -im, abl. -i:, no plur.), f. *thirst* situs, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of sino:, *set*]], *situated*, *placed*, *lying*

socius, soci:, m. *comrade*, *ally* so:l, so:lis (no gen. plur.), m. *sun* soleo:, -e:re, solitus sum, semi-dep. verb, *be wont*, *be accustomed* sollicitus, -a, -um, adj. *disturbed*, *anxious* so:lum, adv. [[so:lus, *alone*]], *alone*, *only*.

no:n so:lum ... sed etiam, *not only* ... *but also*



so:lus, -a, -um (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *alone, only* (Sec. 108) solvo:, -ere, solvi:, solu:tus, *loosen, unbind*.

na:vem solvere, *set sail*

somnus, -i:, m. *sleep* soror, -o:ris, f. *sister*

spatium, spati:, n. *space, distance; time; opportunity*

specta:culum, -i:, n. [[specto:, *look at*]],

*show, spectacle* spectro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,

*look at, witness* spe:ro:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus

[[spe:s, *hope*]], *hope, expect* (Sec.

420.c)

spe:s, spei:, f. *hope* (Sec. 273.2) splendide:,

adv. [[splendidus]], compared splendidus,

splendidissime:, *splendidly*,

*handsomely*

splendidus, -a, -um, adj. *brilliant, gorgeous,*

*splendid* Stabia:nus, -a, -um, *Stabian*

stabulum, -i:, n. [[cf. sto:, *stand*]], *standing*

*place, stable,*

*stall*

statim, adv. [[cf. sto:, *stand*]], *on the*

*spot, at once, instantly* statua, -ae, f. [[sisto:,

*place, set*]], *statue* statuo:, -ere,

-ui:, -u:tus [[status, *station*]], *decide,*

*determine* stilus, -i:, m. *iron pencil, style*

(p. 210) sto:, -a:re, steti:, status, *stand*



## Page 262

stra:tus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of sterno:, *spread*]],  
*paved* (of  
     streets)  
 strepitus, -u:s, m. [[strepo:, *make a noise*]],  
*noise, din* stringo:, -ere, stri:nxi:, strictus,  
*bind tight; draw, unsheathe* studeo:, -e:re,  
 -ui:, —, *give attention to, be*  
*eager*, with dat.  
     (Sec. 501.14)  
 studium, studi:, n. [[cf. studeo:, *be eager for*]],  
*eagerness*,  
     *desire, zeal, devotion*  
 stultus, -a, -um, adj. *foolish, stupid* Stympa:lis,  
 -idis, adj. f. *Stymphalian, of Stympa'lus*,  
 a lake in  
     southern Greece  
 Stympa:lus, -i:, m. *Stympa'lus*, a district  
 of southern Greece with a  
     town, mountain, and lake,  
 all of the same name  
 sua:deo:, -e:re, -si:, -sus, *advise, recommend*,  
 with subjv. of purpose  
     (Sec. 501.41)  
 sub, prep, with acc. and abl. *under, below, up*  
*to; at or to the*  
     *foot of*  
 sub-igo:, -ere, -e:gi:, -a:ctus [[sub, *under*,  
 + ago:, *drive*]],  
*subdue, reduce*  
 subito:, adv. [[subitus, *sudden*]], *suddenly*  
 sub-sequor, -i:, -secu:tus sum, dep. verb [[sub, *below*,  
 + sequor,  
*follow*]], *follow*  
*close after, follow up*  
 suc-ce:do:, -ere, -cessi:, -cessus [[sub, *below*,  
 + ce:do:, *go*]],  
*follow, succeed*  
 sui:, reflexive pron. *of himself (herself, itself,*  
*themselves)*  
     (Sec. 480).  
 se:cum = se: + cum.



se:se:, emphatic form of se:  
 sum, esse, fui:, futu:rus, irreg. verb, *be; exist*  
 (Sec. 494) summus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree,  
 compared superus, superior,  
 supre:mus or summus (Sec.  
 312), *supreme, highest; best, greatest.*  
 in summo: colle, *on the top of*  
*the hill*  
 su:mo:, -ere, su:mpsi:, su:mptus, *take up; assume,*  
*put on.*  
 su:mere supplicium de:, *inflict punishment*  
*on*  
 super, prep. with acc. and abl. *over, above*  
 superbia, -ae, f. [[superbus, *proud*]], *pride,*  
*arrogance* superbus, -a, -um, adj. *proud, haughty*  
 superior, comp. of superus supero:, -a:re, -a:vi:,  
 -a:tus [[superus, *above*]], *go over; subdue,*  
*overcome; surpass, excel*  
 super-sum, -esse, -fui:, —, *be*  
*over, survive*, with dat. (Sec.  
 501.15)  
 superus, -a, -um, adj., compared superior, supre:mus  
 or summus,  
*above, upper* (Sec.  
 312)  
 supplicium, suppli'ci:, n. [[supplex, *kneeling*  
*in entreaty*]],  
*punishment, torture.*  
 supplicium su:mere de:, *inflict punishment*  
*on.*  
 supplicium dare, *suffer punishment*  
 surgo:, -ere, surre:xi:, — [[sub,  
*from below*, + rego:, *straighten*]], *rise*  
 sus-cipio:, -ere, -ce:pi:, -ceptus [[sub, *under,*  
 + capio:, *take*]],  
*undertake, assume, begin*  
 suspicor, -a:ri:, -a:tus sum, dep. verb, *suspect,*  
*surmise, suppose* sus-tineo:, -e:re, -tinui:, -tentus  
 [[sub, *under*, + teneo:,  
*hold*]], *hold up,*  
*bear, sustain, withstand*  
 suus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. and pron.,  
*his, her, hers,*  
*its, their, theirs* (Sec.  
 98)



# Page 263

## T

T., abbreviation of Titus taberna, -ae, f. *shop*,  
*stall* tabula, -ae, f. *tablet* for writing  
 ta:lis, -e, adj. *such*.

ta:lis ... qua:lis, *such ... as*  
 tam, adv. *so, such*. Cf. ita, si:c tamen,  
 adv. *yet, however, nevertheless* tandem, adv.  
*at length, finally* tango:, -ere, tetigi:, ta:ctus,  
*touch* tantum, adv. [[tantus]], *only*  
 tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great, such*.

tantus ... quantus, *as large as*  
 tardus, -a, -um, adj. *slow, late; lazy* Tarpe:ia,  
 -ae, f. *Tarpeia* (pronounced *Tar-pe:'ya*),  
 the maiden who

opened the citadel to the  
 Sabines

Tarquinius, Tarqui'ni:, *Tarquin*, a Roman  
 king. With the surname

Superbus, *Tarquin the Proud*  
 Tarraci:na, -ae, f. *Tarraci'na*, a town  
 in Latium. See map taurus, -i:, m. *bull*  
 te:ctus, -a, -um, adj. [[part. of tego:, *cover*]],  
*covered*,  
*protected*

te:lum, -i:, n. *weapon* temere:, adv. *rashly*,  
*heedlessly* tempesta:s, -a:tis, f. [[tempus, *time*]]  
*storm, tempest* templum, -i:, n. *temple*,  
*shrine* tempto, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *try*,  
*test; make trial of, attempt* tempus, -oris, n.  
*time* (Sec. 464.2.b).

in reliquum tempus, *for the future*  
 teneo:, -e:re, tenui:, —, *hold*,  
*keep* tergum, -i:, n. *back*, a: tergo:,  
*on the rear*, tergum vertere, *retreat, flee*  
 terni:, -ae, -a, distributive numeral adj. *three*  
*each, by threes*

(Sec. 334)

terra, -ae, f. *earth, ground, land*.  
 orbis terra:rum, *the whole world*



terror, -o:ris, m. [[cf. *terreo*:, *frighten*]],  
*dread, alarm, terror* tertius, -a, -um, numeral  
 adj. *third* Teutone:s, -um, m. *the Teutons*  
 thea:trum, -i:, n. *theater* The:bae, -a:rum,  
 f. *Thebes*, a city of Greece The:ba:ni:, -o:rum,  
 m. *Thebans*, the people of Thebes thermae, -a:rum,  
 f. plur. *baths* Thessalia, -ae, f. *Thessaly*,  
 a district of northern Greece Thra:cia, -ae, f. *Thrace*,  
 a district north of Greece Tiberius, Tibe'ri:,  
 m. *Tiberius*, a Roman first name ti:bi:cen,  
 -i:nis, m. [[cf. ti:bia, *pipe*]], *piper, flute*  
*player* timeo:, -e:re, -ui:, —,  
*fear, be afraid of*. Cf. vereor timor,  
 -o:ris, m. [[cf. timeo:, *fear*]], *fear, dread,*  
*alarm*.

Cf. metus

Ti:ryns, Ti:rynthi:, f. *Ti'ryns*, an ancient  
 town in southern Greece,

where Hercules served Eurystheus  
 toga, -ae, f. [[cf. tego:, *cover*]], *toga*  
 tormentum, -i:, n. *engine of war* totie:ns,  
 adv. *so often, so many times* to:tus, -a, -um,  
 (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *all, the whole,*  
*entire* (Sec. 108)

tra:-do:, -ere, -didi:, -ditus [[tra:ns, *across*,  
 + do:, *deliver*]],  
*give up, hand over, surrender,*  
*betray*

tra:-du:co:, -ere, -du:xi:, -ductus [[tra:ns, *across*,



# Page 264

+ du:co:,  
*lead*]], *lead across*  
 traho:, -ere, tra:xi:, tra:ctus, *draw, pull, drag*.  
   multum trahere, *protract, prolong much*  
 tra:-icio:, -ere, -ie:ci:, -iectus [[tra:ns, *across*,  
 + iacio:,  
*hurl*]], *throw across*;  
*transfix*  
 tra:-no:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[tra:ns, *across*,  
 + no:, *swim*]],  
*swim across*  
 tra:ns, prep. with acc. *across, over* (Sec.  
 340) tra:ns-eo:, -i:re, -ii:, -itus [[tra:ns, *across*,  
 + eo:, *go*]], *go*  
   *across, cross* (Sec. 413)  
 tra:ns-fi:go:, -ere, -fi:xi:, -fi:xus [[tra:ns, *through*,  
 + fi:go:,  
*drive*]], *transfix*  
 tra:nsitus, — (acc. -um, abl. -u:),  
 m. [[cf. tra:nseo:, *cross*  
   *over*]], *passage across*  
 tre:s, tria, numeral adj. *three* (Sec. 479)  
 tri:duum, tri:dui:, n. [[tre:s, *three*, + die:s,  
*days*]], *three*  
   *days' time, three days*  
 tri:ginta:, indecl. numeral adj. *thirty* triplex,  
 -icis, adj. *threefold, triple* tri:stis, -e,  
 adj. *sad; severe, terrible* tri:stitia, -ae,  
 f. [[tri:stis, *sad*]], *sadness, sorrow*  
 triumpho:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[triumphus, *triumph*]],  
*celebrate a*  
   *triumph*  
 triumphus, -i:, m. *triumphal procession, triumph*.  
   triumphum agere, *celebrate a triumph*  
 truci:do:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *cut to pieces*,  
*slaughter*. Cf.  
   interficio:, neco:, occi:do:  
 tu:, tui: (plur. vo:s), pers. pron. *thou*,  
*you* (Sec. 480) tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet* Tullia,  
 -ae, f. *Tullia*, a Roman name tum, adv. *then*,  
*at that time* turris, -is, f. *tower* (Sec.





465.2) tu:tus, -a, -um, adj. *safe* tuus, -a, -um, possessive adj. and pron. *your, yours* (Sec. 98)

## U

ubi, rel. and interrog. adv. *where, when* u:llus, -a, -um (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), adj. *any* (Sec. 108) ulterior, -ius, -o:ris, adj. in comp. degree, superl. ultimus, *farther, more remote* (Sec. 315)

ultimus, -a, -um, adj. in superl. degree (see ulterior), *farthest* (Sec. 315)

umbra, -ae, f. *shade* umerus, -i:, m. *shoulder*

umquam, adv. *ever, at any time* u:na:, adv.

[[u:nus, *one*]], *in the same place, at the same time* u:ndecimus, -a, -um, numeral adj. [[u:nus, *one*, + decimus, *tenth*]], *eleventh*

undique, adv. *from every quarter, on all sides, everywhere* u:nus, -a, -um (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), numeral adj. *one; alone*

(Sec. 108)

urbs, -is, f. *city* (Sec. 465.a) urgeo:, -e:re,

ursi:, —, *press upon, crowd,*

*hem in* u:rus, -i:, m. *wild ox*, urus u:sque,

adv. *all the way, even* u:sus, -u:s, m. *use,*

*advantage* ut, conj. with the subjv. *that, in order that, that not* (with verbs

of fearing), *so that, to*



## Page 265

(Sec. 350.1)

uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -i:us, dat. -i:), interrog.

pron. *which of*

*two? which?* (Sec. 108)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each of two, each, both.*

ab utra:que parte, *on both sides*

u:tilis, -e, adj. [[u:tor, *use*]], *useful*

utrimque, adv. [[uterque, *each of two*]], *on each side, on either*

*hand*

u:va, -ae, f. *grape, bunch of grapes* uxor,

-o:ris, f. *wife*

## V

va:gi:na, -ae, *sheath, scabbard* vagor, -a:ri:,  
-a:tus sum, dep. verb, *wander* valeo:, -e:re,  
-ui:, -itu:rus, *be powerful, be well*; in the  
imperative

*as a greeting, farewell.*

plu:rimum vale:re, *have the most power*  
vale:tu:do:, -inis, f. [[valeo:, *be well*]],  
*health* validus, -a, -um, adj. [[cf. valeo:,  
*be strong*]], *strong, able,*

*well*

valle:s, -is, f. *valley* va:llum, -i:, n. *rampart,*  
*earthworks* varius, -a, -um, adj. *bright-colored*

va:sto:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus [[va:stus, *empty*]],  
(*make empty*),

*devastate, lay waste*

vecti:gal, -a:lis, n. *tax, tribute* vehementer,

adv. [[veheme:ns, *eager*]], compared vehementius,

*vehementissime:, eagerly,*

*vehemently*

veho:, -ere, vexi:, vectus, *convey, carry.*

In the passive often in the



sense of *ride, sail*  
vel, conj. *or*.

vel ... vel, *either ... or*.

Cf. aut

ve:lo:cita:s, -a:tis, f. [[ve:lo:x, *swift*]],  
*swiftness* ve:lo:x, -o:cis, adj. *swift, fleet*  
ve:lum, -i:, n. *sail* ve:ndo:, -ere, ve:ndidi:,  
ve:nditus, *sell* venio:, -i:re, ve:ni:, ventus,  
*come, go* ventus, -i:, m. *wind* verbum,  
-i:, n. *word*.

verba facere pro:, *speak in behalf*  
*of*

vereor, -e:ri:, -itus sum, dep. verb, *fear; reverence,*  
*respect*

(Sec. 493). Cf. timeo:

Vergilius, Vergi'li:, m. *Vergil*, the  
poet vergo:, -ere, —, —,  
*turn, lie* ve:ro:, adv. [[ve:rus, *true*]],  
*in truth, surely; conj. but,*  
*however.*

tum ve:ro:, *then you may be sure,*  
introducing the climax of a story  
verto:, -ere, -ti:, -sus, *turn, change.*

tergum vertere, *retreat, flee*  
ve:rus, -a, -um, *true, actual* vesper, -eri:,  
m. *evening* vester, -tra, -trum, possessive  
adj. and pron. *your, yours* (Sec. 98) vesti:gium,  
vesti:'gi:, n. [[cf. vesti:go:, *track*]],  
*footstep, track,*

*trace*

vesti:mentum, -i:, n. [[vestis, *clothing*]],  
*garment* vestio:, -i:re, -i:vi:, -i:tus [[vestis,  
*clothing*]], *clothe, dress* vestis, -is,  
f. *clothing, attire, garment, robe* vesti:tus,  
-a, -um, adj. [[part. of vestio:, *clothe*]],  
*clothed* Vesuvius, Vesu'vi, m. *Vesuvius*,  
the volcano near Pompeii. See map vetera:nus,  
-a, -um, adj. *old, veteran* veto:, -a:re, -ui:,



## Page 266

-itus, *forbid, prohibit* vexo:, -a:re, -a:vi:,  
 -a:tus, *trouble, annoy* via, -ae, f. way,  
*road, street; way, manner*. Cf. iter via:tor,  
 -o:ris, m. [[via]], *traveler* victor, -o:ris,  
 m. [[vinco:, *conquer*]], *conqueror, victor*.

In

apposition, with adj. force

\_victorious\_

victo:ria, -ae, f. [victor, *victor*], *victory*  
 vi:cus, -i:, m. *village* video:, -e:re, vi:di:,  
 vi:sus, *see, perceive*. Pass. *be seen*;  
*seem*

(Sec. 420.d)

vigilia,-ae, f. [[vigil *awake*]], watch.

de: tertia vigilia, *about the*  
*third watch*

vi:ginti:, indecl. numeral adj. *twenty* vi:licus,  
 -i:, m. [[vi:lla, *farm*]], *steward, overseer*  
*of a farm* vi:lla, -ae, f. *farm, villa*

vincio:, -i:re, vi:nxi:, vi:nctus, *bind, tie, fetter*  
 vinco:, -ere, vi:ci:, victus, *conquer, defeat, overcome*.

Cf. subigo:,

supero:

vi:nea, -ae, f. *shed* (p. 219) vi:num, -i:,  
 n. *wine* violenter, adv. [[violentus, *violent*]],  
 compared violentius,

violentissime:, *violently*,  
*furiously*

vir, viri:, m. *man, husband; hero* (Sec. 462.c)

vir:lis, -e, adj. [[vir, *man*]], *manly*

virtu:s, -u:tis, f. [[vir, *man*]], *manliness*;  
*courage, valor*;

*virtue* (Sec. 464.1)

vi:s, (vi:s), f. *strength, power, might, violence*  
 (Sec. 468) vi:ta, -ae, f. [[cf. vi:vo:, *live*]],  
*life*, vi:tam agere, *spend or*

*pass life*

vi:to, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus, *shun, avoid*

vi:vo:, -ere, vi:xi:, —, *live*.

Cf. habito:, incolo: vi:vus, -a, -um, adj. [[cf.  
 vi:vo:, *live*]], *alive, living* vix, adv.



*scarcely, hardly* voco:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus,  
*call, summon, invite*. Cf. appello:,

no:mino:

volo:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tu:rus, *fly* volo:,

velle, volui:, —, irreg. verb, *will,*

*be willing; wish*

(Sec. 497). Cf. cupio

volu:men, -inis, n. *roll, book* Vore:nus, -i:,

m. *Vore'nus*, a centurion vo:s, pers.

pron.; *you* (see tu:) (Sec. 480) vo:tum, -i:,

n. [[neut. part. of voveo:, *vow*]], *vow, pledge,*

*prayer* vo:x, vo:cis, f. [[cf. voco:, *call*]],

*voice, cry; word* vulnero:, -a:re, -a:vi:, -a:tus

[[vulnus, *wound*]], *wound, hurt* vulnus,

-eris, n. *wound, injury* vulpe:s, -i:s, f. *fox*

[Illustration: EQUUS ROMANUS]

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

This vocabulary contains only the words used in the English-Latin exercises. For details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English vocabulary. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation.

### A



## Page 267

a, an, *commonly not translated* able (be),  
 possum, posse, potui:, —(Sec. 495)  
 abode, domicilium, domici'li:, *n.* about  
 (*adv.*), circiter about (*prep.*), de:,  
*with abl.* about to, *expressed by fut. act.*  
*part.* abundance, co:pia, -ae, *f.* across,  
 tra:ns, *with acc.* active, a:cer, a:cris, a:cre  
 advance, pro:gredior, 3 advantage, u:sus, -u:s, *m.*  
 advise, moneo:, 2 after (*conj.*), postquam;  
*often expressed by the perf. part. after (prep.)*,  
 post, *with acc.* against, in, contra:, *with*  
*acc.* aid, auxilium, auxi'li:, *n.*  
 all, omnis, -e; to:tus, -a, -um (Sec. 108) allow,  
 patior, 3 ally, socius, soci:, *m.* almost,  
 paene; fere: alone, u:nus, -a, -um; so:lus, -a,  
 -um (Sec. 108) already, iam also, quoque always,  
 semper ambassador, le:ga:tus, -i:, *m.* among,  
 apud, *with acc.* ancient, anti:quus, -a, -um  
 and, et; atque (ac); -que and so, itaque Andromeda,  
 Andromeda, -ae, *f.* angry, i:ra:tus, -a, um  
 animal, animal, -a:lis, *n.* announce, nu:ntio:,  
 1 annoying, molestus, -a, -um another, alius, -a,  
 -ud (Sec. 109) any, u:llus, -a, -um (Sec. 108) any  
 one, anything, quisquam, quicquam *or* quidquam  
 (Sec. 486) appearance, fo:rma, -ae, *f.* appoint,  
 creo:, 1 approach, adpropinquo:, 1, *with dat.*  
 are, *used as auxiliary, not translated; as*  
*a copula*, sum (Sec. 494) arise, orior, 4 arm,  
 brachium, brachi:, *n.* armed, arma:tus, -a,  
 -um arms, arma, -o:rum, *n. plur.* army, exercitus,  
 -u:s, *m.* around, circum, *with acc.*  
 arrival, adventus, -us, *m.* arrow, sagitta,  
 -ae, *f.* art of war, re:s mi:lita:ris as possible,  
*expressed by quam and superl.* ask,  
 peto:, 3; quaero:, 3; rogo:, 1 assail, oppugno:, 1  
 at, in, *with acc. or abl.*;  
*with names of towns, locative case or*  
*abl. without a preposition*  
 (Sec. 268);  
*time when, abl.*  
 at once, statim at the beginning of summer, inita:



aesta:te Athens, Athe:nae, -a:rum, *f.* attack,  
 impetus, -us, *m.* attempt, co:nor, 1; tempto:,  
 1 away from, a: *or ab, with abl.*

## B

bad, malus, -a, -um baggage, impedi:menta, -o:rum,  
*n. plur.* bank, ri:pa, -ae, *f.* barbarians,  
 barbari:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* battle, proelium,  
 proeli:, *n.*; pugna, -ae. *f.* be, sum  
 (Sec. 494) be absent, be far, absum (Sec. 494) be  
 afraid, timeo:, 2; vereor, 2 be away, absum (Sec.  
 494) be in command of, praesum, *with dat.* (Secs.  
 494, 426) be informed, certior fi:o: be off,  
 be distant, absum (Sec. 494) be without, egeo:, *with*  
*abl.* (Sec. 180) beast (wild), fera, -ae, *f.*  
 beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum because, quia; quod  
 because of, propter, *with acc.*; *or abl. of*  
*cause* before, heretofore (*adv.*), antea:  
 before (*prep.*), ante, *with acc.*; pro:,  
*with abl.* begin, incipio:, 3 believe, cre:do:,



## Page 268

3, *with dat.* (Sec. 153) belong to, *predicate*  
*genitive* (Sec. 409) best, optimus, *superl.*  
 of bonus betray, tra:do:, 3 better, melior, *comp.*  
 of bonus between, inter, *with acc.* billow,  
 fluctus, -us, *m.* bird, avis, -is, *f.*  
 (Sec. 243.1) blood, sanguis, -inis, *m.* body,  
 corpus, -oris. *n.* bold, auda:x, -a:cis; fortis,  
 -e boldly, auda:cter; fortiter boldness, auda:cia,  
 -ae, *f.* booty, praeda, -ae, *f.* both,  
 each (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque both  
 ... and, et ... et boy, puer, -eri:, *m.* brave,  
 fortis, -e bravely, fortiter bridge, po:ns, pontis,  
*m.* bright, cla:rus, -a, -um bring back, reporto:,  
 1 bring upon, i:nfero:, -ferre, -tuli:, -la:tus, *with*  
*acc. and dat.*

(Sec. 426)

brother, fra:ter, -tris, *m.* building, aedificium,  
 aedifi'ci:. *n.* burn, cremo:, 1; incendo:,  
 3 business, nego:tium, nego:'ti:, *n.*  
 but, however, autem, sed by, a:, ab, *with abl.*;  
*denoting means, abl. alone*;  
*sometimes implied in a*  
*participle*  
 by night, noctu:

## C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.* calamity, calamita:s,  
 -a:tis, *f.* call, voco:, 1; appello:, 1; no:mino:,  
 1 call together, convoco:, 1 camp, castra, -o:rum,  
*n. plur.* can, could, possum, posse, potui:,  
 — (Sec. 495) capture, capio:, 3;  
 occupo:, 1 care, cu:ra, -ae, *f.* care for,  
 cu:ro:, 1 careful, attentus, -a, -um carefulness,  
 di:ligentia, -ae, *f.* carry, fero:, ferre, tuli:,  
 la:tus (Sec. 498); porto:, 1 carry on, gero:, 3 cart,  
 carrus, -i:, *m.* cause, causa, -ae, *f.*





cavalry, equita:tus, -u:s, *m.* cease, cesso:,  
 1 Cepheus, Ce:pheus, -i:, *m.* certain (a),  
 qui:dam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam) (Sec. 485) chicken,  
 galli:na, -ae, *f.* chief, pri:nceps, -cipis,  
*m.* children, li:beri:, -o:rum, *m. plur.*  
 choose, de:ligo:, 3 choose, elect, creo:, 1 citizen,  
 ci:vis, -is, *m. and f.* (Sec. 243.1) city, urbs,  
 urbis, *f.* clear, cla:rus, -a, -um cohort,  
 cohors, -rtis, *f.* come, venio:, 4 command,  
 impero:, 1, *with dat.* (Sec. 45);  
 iubeo:, 2;  
 praesum, *with dat.* (Sec. 426)  
 commit, committo:, 3 commonwealth, re:s pu:blica,  
 rei: pu:blicae concerning, de:, *with abl.*  
 conquer, supero:, 1; vinco:, 3 construct (*a ditch*),  
 perdu:co:, 3 consul, co:nsul, -ulis, *m.* contrary  
 to, contra:, *with acc.* Corinth, Corinthus,  
 -i:, *f.* Cornelia, Corne:lia, -ae, *f.*  
 Cornelius, Corne:lius, Corne:'li, *m.*  
 corselet, lo:ri:ca, -ae, *f.* cottage, casa,  
 -ae, *f.* country, *as distinguished from the*  
*city*, ru:s, ru:ris, *n.*;  
*as territory*, fi:ne:s, -ium, *m.*,  
*plur. of* fi:nis  
 courage, virtu:s, -u:tis, *f.* crime, scelus,  
 -eris, *n.* cross, tra:nseo:, 4 (Sec. 499) crown,  
 coro:na, -ae, *f.*

## D



## Page 269

daily, coti:die: danger, peri:culum, -i:, *n.*  
 daughter, fi:lia, -ae, *f.* (Sec. 67) day, die:s,  
 -e:i:, *m.* daybreak, pri:ma lu:x dear, ca:rus,  
 -a, -um death, mors, mortis, *f.* deed, re:s,  
 rei:, *f.* deep, altus, -a, -um defeat, calamita:s,  
 -a:tis, *f.* defend, de:fendo:, 3 delay (*noun*),  
 mora, -ae, *f.* delay (*verb*), moror, 1  
 demand, postulo:, 1 dense, de:nsus, -a, -um depart,  
 disce:do:, 3; exeo:, 4; profici:scor, 3 dependent,  
 clie:ns, -entis, *m.* design, co:nsilium, consi'li:  
*n.* desire, cupio:, 3 destroy, de:leo:, 2  
 Diana, Dia:na, -ae, *f.* differ, differo:, differre,  
 distuli:, di:la:tus (Sec. 498) different, dissimilis,  
 -e difficult, difficilis, -e difficulty, difficulta:s,  
 -a:tis, *f.* diligence, di:ligentia, -ae, *f.*  
 dinner, ce:na, -ae, *f.* disaster, calamita:s,  
 -a:tis, *f.* distant (be), absum, -esse, a:fui:,  
 a:futu:rus (Sec. 494) ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*  
 do, ago:, 3; facio:, 3;  
*when used as auxiliary, not translated*  
 down from, de:, *with abl.* drag, traho:, 3  
 drive, ago:, 3 dwell, habito:, 1; incolo:, 3; vi:vo:,  
 3 dwelling, aedificium, aedifi'ci:, *n.*

## E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque) (Sec. 484)  
 each of two, uterque, utraque, utrumque each other,  
 inter *with acc. of a reflexive* eager, a:cer,  
 a:cris, a:cre; alacer, alacris, alacre eager (be),  
 studeo:, 2 eagerness, studium, studi:, *n.*  
 eagle, aquila, -ae, *f.* easily, facile easy,  
 facilis, -e either ... or, aut ... aut empire, imperium,  
 impe'ri:, *n.* employ, nego:tium do:  
 encourage, hortor, 1 enemy, hostis, -is, *m. and*  
*f.*; inimi:cus, -i:, *m.* enough, satis entire,  
 to:tus, -a, -um (Sec. 108) expectation, opi:nio:,  
 -o:nis, *f.* eye, oculus, -i:, *m.*



## F

faithless, perfidus, -a, -um famous, cla:rus, -a,  
 -um far, longe: farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*  
 farther, ulterior, -ius father, pater, patris, *m.*  
 fatherland, patria, -ae, *f.* favor, faveo:,  
 2 favorable, ido:neus, -a,-um; secundus, -a, -um  
 fear, metus, -u:s, *m.*; timor, -o:ris, *m.*  
 fear, be afraid, timeo:, 2 few, pauci:, -ae, -a field,  
 ager, agri:, *m.* fifteen, qui:ndecim fight,  
 contendo:, 3; pugno:, 1 find, reperio:, 4 finish,  
 co:nficio:, 3 fire, ignis, -is, *m.* (Sec. 243.1)  
 firmness, co:nstantia, -ae, *f.* first, pri:mus,  
 -a, -um flee, fugio:, 3 flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*  
 fly, volo:, 1 foe, see enemy follow close after,  
 subsequor, 3 food, cibus, -i:, *m.* foot, pe:s,  
 pedis, *m.* foot-soldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*  
 for (*conj.*), enim, nam for (*prep.*),  
*sign of dat.;*  
*de:, pro:, with abl.;*  
*to express purpose, ad, with gerundive;*  
*implied in acc. of time and of extent*  
*of space*  
 for a long time, diu: forbid, veto:, 1 forces,



## Page 270

co:piae, -a:rum, *f.*, *plur.* of co:pia forest,  
 silva, -ae, *f.* fort, castellum, -i:, *n.*;  
 castrum, -i:, *n.* fortification, mu:nitio:,  
 -o:nis, *f.* fortify, mu:nio:, 4 fortune, fortu:na,  
 -ae, *f.* fourth, qua:rtus, -a, -um free, li:ber,  
 -era, -erum free, liberate, li:bero:, 1 frequent,  
 cre:ber, -bra, -brum friend, ami:cus, -i:, *m.*  
 friendly (*adj.*), ami:cus, -a, -um friendly  
 (*adv.*), ami:ce: friendship, ami:citia,  
 -ae, *f.* frighten, perterreo:, 2 from, a:  
 or ab, de:, e:, ex, *with abl.*  
*Often expressed by the separative ablative*  
*without a prep.*  
 from each other, inter, *with acc. of a reflexive*  
*pron.* full, ple:nus, -a, -um

## G

Galba, Galba, -ae, *m.*  
 garland, coro:na, -ae, *f.*  
 garrison, praesidium, praesi'di:, *n.*  
 gate, porta, -ae, *f.*  
 Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*  
 Gaul (a), Gallus, -i:, *m.*  
 general, impera:tor, -o:ris, *m.*  
 Geneva, Gena:va, -ae, *f.*  
 gentle, le:nis, -e  
 German, Germa:nus, -a, -um  
 Germans (the), Germa:ni:, -o:rum, *m. plur.*  
 Germany, Germa:nia, -ae, *f.*  
 get (*dinner*), paro:, 1  
 girl, puella, -ae, *f.*  
 give, do:, dare, dedi:, datus  
 give over, surrender, de:do:, 3; tra:do:, 3  
 give up, omitto:, 3  
 go, eo:, 4 (Sec. 499)  
 go forth, pro:gredior, 3



god, deus, -i:, *m.* (Sec. 468)  
 goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (Sec. 67)  
 gold, aurum, -i:, *n.*  
 good, bonus, -a, -um  
 grain, fru:mentum, -i:, *n.*  
 grain supply, re:s fru:menta:ria  
 great, inge:ns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um  
 greatest, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um  
 guard, praesidium, praesi'di:, *n.*

## H

hand, manus, -u:s, *f.* happy, laetus, -a, -um  
 harbor, portus, -u:s, *m.* hasten, contendo:,  
 3; ma:tu:ro:, 1; propero:, 1 hateful, invi:sus, -a,  
 -um haughty, superbus, -a, -um have, habeo:, 2 have  
 no power, nihil possum he, is; hic; iste; ille; *or*  
*not expressed* head, caput, -itis, *n.* hear,  
 audio: heart, animus, -i:, *m.* heavy,  
 gravis, -e Helvetii (the), Helve:tii:, -o:rum, *m.*  
*plur.* hem in, contineo:, 2 hen, galli:na, -ae,  
*f.* her, eius; huius; isti:us; illi:us;  
*reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (Sec.  
 116)  
 hide, abdo:, 3 high, altus, -a, -um highest, summus,  
 -a, -um hill, collis, -is, *m.* himself, sui:.  
 See self hindrance, impedi:mentum, -i:, *n.*  
 his, eius; huius; isti:us; illi:us;  
*reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (Sec.  
 116)  
 hither, citerior, -ius (Sec. 315) hold, teneo:, 2  
 home, domus, -u:s, *f.* (Sec. 468).  
   at home, domi: (Sec. 267)  
 hope (*noun*), spe:s, spei:, *f.* hope  
 (*verb*), spe:ro:, 1 horse, equus, -i:, *m.*  
 horseman, eques, -itis, *m.* hostage, obses,  
 -idis, *m.* and *f.* hostile, inimi:cus, -a, -um  
 hour, ho:ra, -ae, *f.* house, domicilium, domici'li:,  
*n.*; domus, -u:s, *f.* (Sec. 468) hurl,  
 iacio:, 3



# Page 271

## I

I, ego (Sec. 280); *or not expressed* if, si:.

if not, nisi

ill, aeger, -gra, -grum immediately, statim in (*of place*), in, *with abl.*;

(*of time or of specification*) *abl.*

*without prep.*

in order that, ut, *with subjv.*;

in order that not, lest, ne:, *with subjv.*

in vain, fru:stra: industry, di:ligentia, -ae,

*f.* inflict injuries upon, iniu:ria:s i:nfero:

*with dat.* (Sec. 426) inflict punishment on,

supplicium su:mo: de inform some one, aliquem

certio:rem facio: injure, noceo:, 2, *with*

*dat.* (Sec. 153) injury, iniu:ria, -ae, *f.*

into, in, *with acc.* intrust, committo:, 3;

mando:, 1 invite, voco:, 1 is, *used as auxiliary, not translated*;

*as a copula*, sum (Sec. 494)

island, i:nsula, -ae, *f.* it, is; hie; iste;

ille; *or not expressed* Italy, Italia, -ae,

*f.* its, eius; huius; isti:us; illi:us;

*reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (Sec.

116)

itself, sui:. See self

## J

join battle, proelium committo: journey, iter,

itineris, *n.* (Sec. 468) judge (*noun*),

iu:dex, -icis, *m.* judge (*verb*), iu:dico:,

1 Julia, Iu:lia, -ae, *f.* just now, nu:per



## K

keep, contineo:, 2; prohibeo, 2; teneo:, 2 keep on  
doing something, *expressed by the impf. indic.*  
kill, interficio:, 3; neco:, 1; occi:do:, 3 king,  
re:x, re:gis, *m.* kingdom, re:gnum, -i:, *n.*  
know, cogno:sco:, 3, *in perf.*; scio:, 4

## L

labor (*noun*), labor, -o:ris, *m.* labor  
(*verb*), labo:ro:, 1 lack (*noun*), inopia,  
-ae, *f.* lack (*verb*), egeo:, 2, *with*  
*abl.* (Sec. 180) lady, domina, -ae, *f.*  
lake, lacus, -u:s, *m.* (Sec. 260.2) land, terra,  
-ae, *f.* language, lingua, -ae, *f.* large,  
inge:ns, -entis; magnus, -a, -um larger, maior, maius  
lately, nu:per Latona, La:to:na, -ae, *f.* law,  
le:x, le:gis, *f.* lay waste, va:sto:, 1 lead,  
du:co, 3 leader, dux, ducis, *m.* and *f.* learn,  
know, cogno:sco:, 3 leave, depart from, disce:do:,  
3 leave behind, abandon, relinquo:, 3 left, sinister,  
-tra, -trum legion, legio:, -o:nis, *f.* legionaries,  
legio:na:rii:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* length, longitu:do:,  
-inis, *f.* lest, ne:, *with subjv.* letter  
(*of the alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f.*;  
(*an epistle*) litterae, -a:rum,  
*f. plur.*  
lieutenant, le:ga:tus, -i:, *m.* light, lu:x,  
lu:cis, *f.* like (*adj.*), similis, -e  
like, love, amo:, 1 line of battle, acie:s, acie:i:,  
*f.* little, parvus, -a, -um live, habito:,  
1; incolo:, 3; vi:vo:, 3 long, longus, -a, -um long,  
for a long time, diu: long for, de:si:dero:,  
1 look after, cu:ro:, 1 love, amo:, 1



# Page 272

## M

maid, maid servant, ancilla, -ae, *f.* make, facio:,  
 3 make war upon, bellum i:nfero: *with dat.*  
 (Sec. 426) man, homo:, -inis, *m. and f.*; vir,  
 viri:, *m.* man-of-war, na:vis longa many, multi:,  
 -ae, -a, *plur. of* multus march, iter, itineris,  
*n.* (Sec. 468) Mark, Ma:rcus, -i:, *m.*  
 marriage, ma:trimo:nium, ma:trimo:'ni:, *n.*  
 master, dominus, -i:, *m.*; magi:ster, -tri:,  
*m.* matter, nego:tium, nego:'ti:, *n.*;  
 re:s, rei:, *f.* means, by means of, *the abl.*  
 messenger, nu:ntius, nu:nti:, *m.* midnight,  
 media nox mile, mi:lle passuum (Sec. 331.b) miles,  
 mi:lia passuum mind, animus, -i:, *m.*; me:ns,  
 mentis, *f.* mine, meus, -a, -um mistress, domina,  
 -ae, *f.* money, pecu:nia, -ae, *f.* monster,  
 mo:nstrum, -i:, *n.* month, me:nsis, -is, *m.*  
 moon, lu:na, -ae, *f.* more (*adj.*), plu:s,  
 plu:ris (Sec. 313); *or a comparative. Adverb,*  
     magis  
 most (*adj.*), plu:rimus, -a, -um;  
*superl. degree. Adverb,* maxime;;  
 plu:rimum  
 mother, ma:ter, ma:tris, *f.* mountain, mo:ns,  
 montis, *m.* move, moveo:, 2 moved, commo:tus,  
 -a, -um much (by), multo: multitude, multitu:do:,  
 -inis. *f.* my, meus, -a, -um myself, me:, *reflexive.*  
 See self

## N

name, no:men, -inis, *n.* nation, ge:ns, gentis,  
*f.* near, propinquus, -a, -um nearest, proximus,  
 -a, -um nearly, fere: neighbor, fi:nitimus,  
 -i:, *in.* neighboring, fi:initimus, -a, -um  
 neither, neque *or* nec;





neither ... nor, neque (nec) ... neque  
 (nec)  
 never, numquam nevertheless, tamen new, novus, -a,  
 -um next day, postridie: eius die: next  
 to, proximus, -a, -um night, nox, noctis, *f.*  
 nine, novem no, minime;; *or repeat verb with a  
 negative* (Sec. 210) no, none, nullus, -a, -um  
 (Sec. 109) no one, nemo:, nullius nor, neque *or*  
 nec not, non not even, ne: ... quidem not  
 only ... but also, non solum ... sed etiam nothing,  
 nihil *or* nihilum, -i:, *n.* now, nunc  
 number, numerus, -i:, *m.*

## O

obey, parere:, 2, *with dat.* (Sec. 153) of,  
*sign of gen.*;  
 de:, *with abl.*;  
 out of, e: *or ex, with  
 abl.*  
 often, saepe on (*of place*), in, *with abl.*;  
 (*of time*) *abl. without prep.*  
 on account of, propter, *with acc.*; *or abl.*  
*of cause.* on all sides, undique once (*upon  
 a time*), olim one, unus, -a, -um (Sec. 108)  
 one ... another, alius ... alius (Sec. 110) only (*adv.*),  
 solum; tantum opportune, opportunus, -a, -um opposite,  
 adversus, -a, -um oracle, oraculum, -i:, *n.*  
 orator, orator, -oris, *m.* order, impero:,  
 1; iubeo:, 2 ornament, orna:mentum, -i:, *n.*  
 other, alius, -a, -ud (Sec. 109) others (the), reliqui:,  
 -orum, *m. plur.* ought, debeo:, 2 our, noster,  
 -tra, -trum ourselves, nos:, *as reflexive object.*  
 See self overcome, supero:, 1; vinco:, 3 own (his,  
 her, its, their), suus, -a, -um



# Page 273

## P

part, pars, partis, *f.* peace, pa:x, pa:cis,  
*f.* people, populus, -i:, *m.* Perseus,  
 Perseus, -i:, *m.* persuade, persua:deo:, 2,  
*with dat.* (Sec. 153) pitch camp, castra po:no:  
 place (*noun*), locus, -i:, *m.* place,  
 arrange, conloco:, 1 place, put, po:no:, 3 place  
 in command, praeficio:, 3, *with acc. and dat.*  
 (Sec. 426) plan (a), co:nsilium, co:nsi'li:,  
*n.* please, placeo:, 2, *with dat.* (Sec.  
 154) pleasing, gra:tus, -a, -um plow, aro:, 1 Pompeii,  
 Pompe:ii:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* possible (as),  
*expressed by quam and superl.* powerful  
 (be), valeo:, 2 praise, laudo:, 1 prefer, ma:lo:,  
 ma:lle, ma:lui:, — (Sec. 497) prepare  
 for, paro:, 1, *with acc.* press hard, premo:,  
 3 protection, fide:s, fidei:, *f.* province,  
 pro:vincia, -ae, *f.* public, pu:blicus, -a,  
 -um Publius, Pu:blus, Pu:bli:, *m.* punishment,  
 poena, -ae, *f.*; supplicium, suppli'ci:,  
*n.* purpose, for the purpose of, ut, qui:, *or*  
 quo:, *with subjv.*;  
*ad, with gerund or gerundive*;  
*causa:, following the genitive of a*  
*gerund or gerundive*  
 pursue, i:nsequor, 3

## Q

queen, re:gi:na, -ae, *f.* quickly, celeriter  
 quite, *expressed by the comp. degree*

## R



rampart, va:llum, -i:, *n.* rear, novissimum  
 agmen reason, causa, -ae, *f.* receive, accipio:,  
 3; excipio:, 3 recent, rece:ns, -entis recently,  
 nu:per redoubt, castellum, -i:, *n.* refuse,  
 recu:so:, 1 remain, maneo:, 2 remaining, reliquus,  
 -a, -um reply, respondeo:, 2 report (*noun*),  
 fama, -ae, *f.*; ru:mor, -o:ris, *m.* report  
 (*verb*), adfero::; de:fero::; refero: (Sec.  
 498) republic, re:s pu:blica require, postulo:, 1  
 resist, resisto:, 3, *with dat.* (Sec. 154) rest  
 (the), reliqui:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* restrain,  
 contineo:, 2 retainer, clie:ns, -entis, *m.*  
 retreat, pedem refero::; terga verto: return,  
 redeo:, 4; revertor, 3 revolution, re:s novae Rhine,  
 Rhe:nus, -i:, *m.* right, dexter, -tra, -trum  
 river, flu:men, -inis, *n.*; fluvius, fluvi:,  
*m.* road, via, -ae, *f.* Roman, Ro:ma:nus,  
 -a, -um Rome, Ro:ma, -ae, *f.* row, o:rdo:,  
 -inis, *m.* rule, rego:, 3 rumor, fa:ma, -ae,  
*f.*; ru:mor, -o:ris, *m.* run, curro:,  
 3

## S

sacrifice, sacrum, -i:, *n.* safety, salu:s,  
 -u:tis, *f.* sail, na:vigo:, 1 sailor, nauta,  
 -ae, *m.* sake, for the sake of, causa:, *following*  
*a gen.* same, i:dem, eadem, idem (Sec. 287) savages,  
 barbari:, -o:rum, *m. plur.* save, servo:, 1  
 say, di:co:, 3 school, lu:dus, -i:, *m.*; schola,  
 -ae, *f.* scout, explo:ra:tor, -o:ris, *m.*  
 sea, mare, -is, *n.* second, secundus, -a, -um



## Page 274

see, video:, 2 seek, peto:, 3 seem, videor, 2, *passive of video*: seize, occupo:, 1; rapio:, 3 self, ipse, -a, -um (Sec. 286); sui: (Sec. 281) send, mitto:, 3 set fire to, incendo:, 3 set out, profici:scor, 3 seven, septem Sextus, Sextus, -i:, *m.* she, ea; haec; ista; illa (Sec. 115);  
*or not expressed*  
 ship, na:vis, -is, *f.* (Sec. 243.1) short, brevis, -e shout, cla:mor, -o:ris, *m.* show, de:mo:nstro:, 1 Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.* sick, aeger, -gra, -grum side, latus, -eris, *n.* siege, obsidio:, -o:nis, *f.* since, cum, *with subjv.* (Sec. 396);  
*the abl. abs.* (Sec. 381)  
 sing, cano:, 3; canto:, 1 sister, soror, -o:ris, *f.* sit, sedeo:, 2 size, magnitu:do:, -inis, *f.* skillful, peri:tus, -a, -um slave, servus, -i:, *m.* slavery, servitiu:s, -u:tis, *f.* slow, tardus, -a, -um small, parvus, -a, -um snatch, rapio:, 3 so, ita; si:c; tam so great, tantus, -a, -um so that, ut;  
 so that not, ut no:n  
 soldier, mi:les, -itis, *m.* some, *often not expressed*;  
 quis (qui:), qua (quae), quid (quod);  
 aliqui:, aliqua, aliquod  
 some one, quis; aliquis (Sec. 487) some ... others, alii: ... alii: (Sec. 110) something, quid;  
 aliquid (Sec. 487) son, fi:lius, fi:li:, *m.* soon, mox space, spatium, spati:, *n.* spear, pi:lum, -i:, *n.* spirited, a:cer, a:cris, a:cre; alacer, alacris, alacre spring, fo:ns, fontis, *m.* spur, calcar, -a:ris, *n.* stand, sto:, 1 state, ci:vita:s, -a:tis, *f.* station, conloco:, 1 steadiness, co:nstantia, -ae, *f.* stone, lapis, -idis, *m.* storm, oppugno:, 1 story, fa:bula, -ae, *f.* street, via, -ae, *f.* strength, vi:s, (vi:s), *f.* strong, fortis, -e; validus, -a, -um sturdy, validus, -a, -um such, ta:lis, -e suddenly, subito: suffer punishment, supplicium do: sufficiently, satis suitable, ido:neus,



-a, -um summer, aesta:s, -a:tis, *f.* sun, so:l,  
 so:lis, *m.* supplies, commea:tus, -u:s, *m.*  
 surrender, tra:do:, 3 suspect, suspicor, 1 swift,  
 celer, -eris, -ere; ve:lo:x, -o:cis sword, gladius,  
 gladi:, *m.*

## T

take, capture, capio:, 3 take part in, intersum,  
 -esse, -fui:, -futu:rus, *with dat.* (Sec. 426)  
 take possession of, occupo:, 1 tall, altus, -a, -um  
 task, opus, operis, *n.* teach, doceo:, 2 teacher,  
 magister, -tri:, *m.* tear (*noun*), lacrima,  
 -ae, *f.* tell, di:co:, 3; na:rro:, 1 ten, decem  
 terrified, perterritus, -a, -um terrify, perterreo:,  
 2 than, quam that (*conj. after verbs of saying*  
*and the like*), *not expressed* that (*pron.*),  
 is; iste; ille that, in order that, *in purpose*  
*clauses*, ut; *after verbs of fearing*, ne:  
 (Secs. 349, 366, 372) that not, lest, *in purpose*  
*clauses*, ne;;  
*after verbs of fearing*, ut (Secs.  
 349, 366, 372)  
 the, *not expressed* their, *gen. plur. of*



## Page 275

is; *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um (Sec. 116) their own, suus, -a, -um (Sec. 116) then, at that time, tum then, in the next place, deinde, tum there, *as expletive, not expressed* there, in that place, ibi therefore, itaque they, ii:: hi:: isti:: illi:: *or not expressed* think, arbitror, 1; exi:stimo:, 1; puto:, 1 third, tertius, -a, -um this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id though, cum. *with subjv.* (Sec. 396) thousand, mi:lle (Sec. 479) three, tre:s, tria (Sec. 479) through, per, *with acc.* thy, tuus, -a, -um time, tempus, -oris, *n. to, sign of dat.*; ad, in, *with acc.*; *expressing purpose*, ut, qui:, *with subjv.*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive* to each other, inter, *with acc. of a reflexive pron.* to-day, hodie: tooth, de:ns, dentis, *m.* top of, summus, -a, -um tower, turris, -is, *f.* (Sec. 243.2) town, oppidum, -i:, *n.* townsman, oppida:nus, -i:, *m.* trace, vesti:gium, vesti:'gi:, *n.* trader, merca:tor, -o:ris, *m.* train, exerceo:, 2 tree, arbor, -oris, *f.* tribe, ge:ns, gentis, *f.* troops, co:piae, -a:rum, *f. plur.* true, ve:rus, -a, -um trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.* try, co:nor, 1; tempto:, 1 twelve, duodecim two, duo, duae, duo (Sec. 479)

## U

under, sub, *with acc. or abl.* undertake, suscipio:, 3 unharmed, incolumis, -e unless, nisi unlike, dissimilis, -e unwilling (be), no:lo:, no:lle, no:lui:, — (Sec. 497) up to, sub, *with acc.* us, no:s, *acc. plur. of ego*



## V

very, *superl. degree*; maxime:: ipse, -a, -um  
 (Sec. 285) victor, victor, -o:ris, *m.* victory,  
 victo:ria, -ae, *f.* village, vi:cus, -i:, *m.*  
 violence, vi:s, (vi:s), *f.* violently, vehementer  
 voice, vo:x, vo:cis, *f.*

## W

wage, gero:, 3 wagon, carrus. -i:, *m.* wall,  
 mu:rus, -i:, *m.* want, inopia, -ae, *f.*  
 war, bellum, -i:, *n.* watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*  
 water, aqua, -ae, *f.* wave, fluctus, -u:s, *m.*  
 way, iter, itineris, *n.* (Sec. 468); via, -ae,  
*f.* way, manner, modus, -i:, *m.* we,  
 no:s, *plur. of ego; or not expressed*  
 weak, i:nfi:rmus, -a, -um weapons, arma, -o:rum, *n.*  
*plur.*; te:la, -o:rum, *n. plur.* wear, gero:,  
 3 weary, de:fessus, -a, -um what, quis (qui:), quae,  
 quid (quod) (Sec. 483) when, ubi; cum (Sec. 396);  
*often expressed by a participle* where, ubi  
 which, qui:, quae, quod (Sec. 482);  
 which of two, uter, utra, utrum (Sec.  
 108)  
 while, *expressed by a participle* whither,  
 quo: who (*rel.*), qui:, quae (Sec. 482);  
 (*interrog.*) quis (Sec. 483) whole, to:tus,  
 -a, -um (Sec. 108) whose, cuius;  
 quo:rum, qua:rum, quo:rum, *gen. of*  
 qui:, quae, quod, *rel.*;



## Page 276

*or of* quis, quid, *interrog.*

why, cu:r wicked, malus, -a, -um wide, la:tus, -a,

-um width, la:titu:do:, -inis, *f.* wild beast,

fera, -ae, *f.* willing (be), volo:, velle, volui:,

— (Sec. 497) win (*a victory*),

reporto:, 1 wind, ventus, -i:, *m.* wine, vi:num,

-i:, *n.* wing, cornu:, -u:s, *n.* winter,

hiems, -emis, *f.* wisdom, co:nsilium, consi'li:,

*n.* wish, cupio:, 3; volo:, velle, volui:, —

(Sec. 497);

wish not, no:lo:, no:lle, no:lui:, —

(Sec. 497)

with, cum, *with abl.; sometimes abl. alone*

withdraw, se: recipere without, sine, *with*

*abl.* woman, fe:mina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, -eris,

*f.* wonderful, mi:rus, -a, -um word, verbum,

-i:, *n.* work, labor, -o:ris, *m.*; opus,

-eris, *n.* worse, peior, peius, *comp. of*

malus worst, pessimus, -a, -um, *superl. of*

malus wound (*noun*), vulnus, -eris, *n.*

wound (*verb*), vulnero:, 1 wreath, coro:na,

-ae, *f.* wretched, miser, -era, -erum wrong,

iniu:ria, -ae, *f.*

## Y

year, annus, -i:, *m.* yes, certe:; ita; ve:ro:;

*or, more usually, repeat the verb* (Sec. 210)

yonder (that), ille, -a, -ud you, *sing.* tu:;

*plur.* vo:s (Sec. 480); *or not expressed*

your, *sing.* tuus, -a, -um; *plur.* vester,

-tra, -trum (Sec. 98.b)

## Z





zeal, studium, studi:, *n.*

## INDEX

The numbers in all cases refer to sections.

- a:-declension of nouns, 57, 461
- a:-verbs, conjugation of, 488
- ablative case, 48, 50
  - absolute, 381
  - after a comparative, 309
  - of accompaniment, 104
  - of agent, 181
  - of cause, 102
  - of description, 444, 445
  - of manner, 105
  - of means or instrument, 103
  - of measure of difference, 317
  - of place from which, 179
  - of place where, 265
  - of separation, 180
  - of specification, 398
  - of time, 275
- accent, 14-16
- accompaniment
  - abl. of, 104
- accusative case, 33
  - as subject of the infinitive, 214
  - object, 37
  - of duration and extent, 336
  - of place to which, 263, 266
  - predicate, 392
  - with prepositions, 340
- adjectives, 54, 55
- agreement, 65
- comparison
  - regular, 301
  - by adverbs, 302
  - irregular, 307, 311, 312,
- 315
  - declension of comparatives, 303
  - of first and second declensions, 83, 93,
- 469



- of third declension, 250-257, 471
- with the dative, 143
- adverbs, 319
  - comparison, 320, 323
  - formation
    - regular, 320, 321
    - irregular, 322, 323
- agent
  - expressed by the abl. with *a:* or *ab*, 181
- agreement
  - of adjectives, 65, 215.a
  - of appositives, 81
  - of predicate nouns, 76
  - of relative pronouns, 224



## Page 277

- of verbs, 28
- aliquis, 487
- alius, 108, 110, 470
- alphabet, 1-3
- alter, 108, 110
- antepenult, 9.3; accent of, 15
- apposition, 80, 81
- article
  - not used in Latin, 22.a
- base, 58
- cardinal numerals, 327-329, 478
- case, 32.2
- causal clauses with *cum*, 395, 396
- cause,
  - expressed by the abl., 102
- characteristic
  - subjv. of, 389, 390
- comparative
  - declension of, 303
- comparison
  - abl. of, 309
  - degrees of, 300
  - of adjectives, 300-315
    - irregular, 311-315, 473, 475
  - of adverbs
    - regular, 320-476
    - irregular, 323, 477
  - positive wanting, 315
  - six adjectives in *-lis*, 307
- complementary infinitive, 215
- compound verbs
  - with the dative, 425, 426
- concessive clauses with *cum*, 395, 396
- conjugation stems, 184
  - the four regular, 126, 488-491
  - irregular, 494-500
- consonants, 2
- copula, 21
- cum*
  - conjunction, 395
- cum*
  - preposition, 209



- dative case, 43
  - of indirect object, 44, 45
  - of purpose, or end for which, 437
  - with adjectives, 143
  - with compound verbs, 426
  - with special verbs, 153
- dea
  - declension of, 67
- declension, 23, 32
- degree of difference
  - expressed by the abl., 317
- demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, 112-115, 290-292, 481
- deponent verbs, 338, 339, 493
- descriptive ablative and genitive, 441-445
- descriptive relative clause
  - with the subjv., 389, 390
- deus
  - declension of, 468
- difference, measure of, 316, 317
- diphthongs, 6
- direct statements, 414
- distributive numerals, 327.3, 334
- domi:
  - locative, 267
- domus
  - declension of, 468
- duo
  - declension of, 479
- duration of time, expressed by the acc., 336
  
- e:-declension of nouns, 272, 273, 467 e:-verbs, conjugation of, 489 e-verbs, conjugation of, 490 ego
  - declension of, 280, 480
- enclitics, 16 eo:
  - conjugation of, 499
- extent of space
  - expressed by the acc., 336
  
- fearing
  - subjv. after verbs of, 370-372
- fero:
  - conjugation of, 498
- fifth or e:-declension, 272, 273, 467 fi:lia
  - declension of, 67



fi:lius

declension of, 87-89

finite verb

defined, 173

fi:o:

conjugation of, 500

first conjugation, 488 first or a:-declension, 57,  
461 fourth conjugation, 491 fourth or u-declension,  
259, 260, 466 from

how expressed, 178-181

future participle

formation of, 374.c

future perfect

formation of

active, 187.3

passive, 202

future tense

formation of, 137, 156

gender

in English and in Latin, 60

in the first declension, 61

in the second declension, 72

in the third declension, 247

in the fourth declension, 260

in the fifth declension, 272

general observations on declension, 74

genitive case

English equivalents of, 33



## Page 278

- of description, 443, 445
- of nouns in *\_-ius\_* and *\_-ium\_*, 87
- partitive, 331
- possessive, 38, 409
- gerund
  - a verbal noun, 402, 403
- gerundive
  - a verbal adjective, 404
  - with *ad* to express purpose, 407
- hic
  - declension and use of, 290, 291
- how to read Latin, 17
- i
  - consonant, 3
- i-stems of nouns, 231, 241-244 i:-verbs
  - conjugation of, 491
- i:dem
  - declension of, 287, 481
- ie:ns
  - declension of, 472
- ille
  - declension and use of, 290-293, 481
- imperative
  - formation of, 161, 175
  - irregular, 161.2
  - in commands, 161
- imperfect indicative, formation and use of, 133, 134, 165.1
- imperfect subjunctive, 354
- indefinite pronouns and adjectives, 296, 297, 484-487
- independent clauses, 219
- indirect object, 44, 45
- indirect questions, 430-432
- indirect statements, 414-419
- infinitive
  - as object, 213
  - as subject, 216
  - complementary, 215
  - definition of, 173
  - does not express purpose, 352
  - formation of, 126, 174, 205, 206



- in indirect statements, 415-410
- used as in English, 213-216
- inflection
  - defined, 23
- instrument
  - abl. of, 100.b, 103
- intensive pronoun
- ipse*, declension and use of, 285, 286, 481
- interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 225-227, 483
- intransitive verbs,
  - defined, 20.a
  - with the dative, 153
- io:-verbs of the third conj., 492 *ipse*
  - declension and use of, 285, 481
- irregular adjectives, 108 irregular comparison
  - of adjectives, 307 311, 312
  - of adverbs, 323
- irregular nouns, 67, 246, 468 irregular verbs, 494-500
- is
  - declension and use of, 113-116
- iste
  - declension and use of, 290, 292, 481
- iter
  - declension of, 468
- Latin word order, 68
- locative case, 267
- magis and maxime:
  - comparison by, 302
- ma:lo:
  - conjugation of, 4.97
- manner
  - abl. of, 105
- means
  - abl. of, 103
- measure of difference
  - abl. of, 316, 317
- mi:lle,
  - declension of, 479
  - construction with, 331.a,b
- moods, defined, 121
- ne, enclitic
  - in questions, 210



ne:, conj., *that not, lest*  
with negative clauses of purpose, 350.II  
with verbs of fearing, 370  
nine irregular adjectives, 108-110 no:lo:  
conjugation of, 497  
nominative case, 35, 36 no:nne  
in questions, 210  
no:s  
declension of, 280, 480  
nouns, 19. 2  
first declension, 57, 461  
second declension, 71-74, 87-92, 462  
third declension, 230-247, 463-465  
fourth declension, 259, 260, 466  
fifth declension, 272, 273, 467  
num, in questions, 210 number, 24 numerals, 327-334,  
478, 479  
  
o-declension of nouns, 71-74, 87-92, 462 object,  
20  
direct, 37  
indirect, 44, 45  
order of words, 68 ordinal numerals, 327. 2, 478





## Page 279

- participial stem, 201.2
- participles, defined, 203
  - agreement of, 204
  - formation,
    - of present, 374.b
    - of perfect, 201
    - of future, 374.c,d
  - of deponent verbs, 375
  - tenses of, 376
  - translated by a clause, 377
- partitive genitive, 330, 331
- passive voice
  - defined, 163
  - formation of, 164, 202
- penult, 9.3
  - accent of, 15
- perfect indicative
  - formation,
    - in the active, 185, 186
    - in the passive, 202
  - meaning of, 190
  - definite, 190
  - indefinite, 190
  - distinguished from the imperfect, 190
- perfect infinitive
  - active, 195
  - passive, 205
- perfect passive participle, 201
- perfect stem, 185
- perfect subjunctive
  - active, 361
  - passive, 362
- person, 122
- personal endings
  - active, 122
  - passive, 164
- personal pronouns, 280, 480
- place
  - where, whither, whence, 263-265
  - names of towns and *domus* and *ru:s*, 266-268



- pluperfect indicative
  - active, 187.2
  - passive, 202
- pluperfect subjunctive
  - active, 361
  - passive, 363
- plu:s
  - declension of, 313
- possessive pronouns, 97, 98
- possum
  - conjugation of, 495
- predicate
  - defined, 19
- predicate adjective
  - defined, 55
- predicate noun, 75, 76
- prepositions
  - with the abl., 209
  - with the acc., 340
- present indicative, 128, 130, 147
- present stem, 126.a
- present subjunctive, 344
- primary tenses, 356
- principal parts, 183
- pronouns
  - classification of, 278
  - defined, 19.2.a
  - demonstrative, 481
  - indefinite, 297, 484-487
  - intensive, 285, 286, 481
  - interrogative, 483
  - personal, 480
  - possessive, 97, 98
  - reflexive, 281
  - relative, 220, 221
- pronunciation, 4-7
- pro:sum
  - conjugation of, 496
- purpose
  - dative of, 436, 437
  - expressed by the gerund or gerundive with *ad*, 407
  - not expressed by the infinitive, 352
  - subjunctive of, 348-350, 365-367
- quality



- gen. or abl. of, 441-445
- quam
  - with a comparative, 308
- quantity, 11-13
- questions
  - direct, 210
  - indirect, 430-432
- qui:
  - declension and use of, 220, 221, 482
- qui:dam
  - declension of, 485
- quis
  - declension and use of, 225-227, 483
- quisquam
  - declension of, 486
- quisque
  - declension of, 484
- reflexive pronouns, 281 relative clauses of characteristic or description, 389, 390 relative clauses of purpose, 348, 349 relative pronouns, 220, 221 result clauses, 384-387 reviews, 502-528 ru:s
  - constructions of, 266
- se:
  - distinguished from *ipse*, 285.a
- second conjugation, 489 second or o-declension, 71-93, 462 sentences
  - simple, complex, compound, 219
- separation
  - abl. of, 180
- separative ablative, 178-181 sequence of tenses, 356-358 space
  - extent of, expressed by the acc., 336
- specification



## Page 280

- abl. of, 398
- stems
  - of nouns, 230
  - of verbs, 184
- subject
  - defined, 19.2
  - of the infinitive, 213, 214
- subjunctive
  - formation of the present, 344
  - of the imperfect, 354
  - of the perfect, 361, 362
  - of the pluperfect, 361.c, 363
- subjunctive constructions
  - characteristic or description, 389, 390
  - indirect questions, 430-432
  - purpose, 349, 366, 372
  - result, 385, 386
  - time, cause, or concession, with *cum*, 395, 396
- subjunctive ideas, 346 subjunctive tenses, 342, 343
- subordinate clauses, 219 sui:
  - declension of, 281, 480
- sum
  - conjugation of, 494
- suus
  - use of, 98.c, 116
- syllables, 8
  - division of, 9
  - quantity of, 13
- syntax
  - rules of, 501
- temporal clauses with *cum*, 395, 396
- tense
  - defined, 120
- tense signs
  - imperfect, 133
  - future, 137, 156
  - pluperfect active, 187.2



- future perfect active, 187.3
- tenses
  - primary and secondary, 356
  - sequence of, 357, 358
- third conjugation, 490, 492
- third declension of nouns
  - classes, 231, 463
  - consonant stems, 232-238, 464
  - gender, 247
  - i-stems, 241-244, 465
  - irregular nouns, 246
- time
  - abl. of, 275
- time
  - acc. of, 336
- towns
  - rules for names of, 266, 267, 268
- transitive verb, 20.a
- tre:s
  - declension of, 479
- tu:
  - declension of, 280, 480
- tuus
  - compared with *vester*, 98. b
- u-declension of nouns, 259, 260, 466 ultima, 9. 3
- verbs
  - agreement of, 28
  - conjugation of, 126, 488-491
  - deponent, 338, 339, 493
  - irregular, 494-500
  - personal endings of, 122, 164
  - principal parts of, 183
- vester
  - compared with *tuus*, 98.b
- vi:s
  - declension of, 468
- vocabularies
  - English-Latin, pp. 332-343
  - Latin-English, pp. 299-331
  - special, pp. 283-298
- vocative case, 56.a
  - of nouns in *\_us\_* of the second declension, 73.b
  - of proper nouns in *\_ius\_* and of *fi:lius*,

88

voice

defined, 163

volo:

conjugation of, 497

vo:s

declension of, 280, 480

vowels

sounds of, 5, 6

quantity of, 12



## Page 205

<i>ally, companion</i>	<i>say</i>		
<i>pride</i>	<i>command (verb)</i>		
<i>fortify</i>	<i>theresend</i>	<i>slain</i>	
<i>sit</i>	<i>trainingalso</i>	<i>take</i>	
<i>school</i>	<i>havehear</i>	<i>to-day</i>	
<i>hurl</i>	<i>unfriendlypersuade</i>	<i>driveonly</i>	<i>favor</i>
<i>(verb)</i>			
<i>nearest</i>	<i>suitable</i>		
<i>sacred rite</i>	<i>pleasing</i>		
<i>queen</i>	<i>teachflee</i>	<i>neighboringobey</i>	
<i>destroylately</i>	<i>friendlyconstant</i>	<i>seize</i>	
<i>ornament</i>			



# Page 203

*or* (in a question)    *his own*  
*whither*                    *alone* *wagon*                    *prize* (noun)  
*townsman*                    *master* (owner)  
*wretched*                    *carefulness* *ripe*                    *plenty* *war*  
*troops* *number*                    *plan* (noun)  
*my*                    *people* *free* (adj.)                    *beautiful* *children*                    *no* (adj.)  
*wall*                    *our* *grain*                    *battle* *weapon*                    *spear* *one*  
*food*  
*plow* (verb)                    *steadiness* *this or that*                    *fatherland* *already*  
*town* *helmet*                    *fort*  
*river*                    *camp* *zeal*                    *neither* (of two)  
*any*                    *much* *he*                    *agriculture* *son*                    *other* *slave*  
*the other* (of two)  
*your* (singular)                    *hard* *she*                    *booty* *woman*  
*frequent* *horse*                    *armed*



## Page 193

F. P. hortatus ero: veritus ero: secutus ero: partitus ero:

## Page 182

16, se:decim	sextus decimus
17, septendecim	septimus decimus
18, duode:vi:ginti: (octo:decim) duode:vi:ce:nsimus	
19, u:nde:vi:ginti: (novendecim) u:nde:vi:ce:nsimus	
20, vi:ginti:	vi:ce:nsimus
21, {vi:ginti: u:nus <i>or</i>	{vi:ce:nsimus pri:mus <i>or</i>
{u:nus et vi:ginti:, <i>etc.</i>	{u:nus et vi:ce:nsimus, <i>etc.</i>
30, tri:ginta:	tri:ce:nsimus
40, quadra:ginta:	quadra:ge:nsimus
50, qui:nqua:ginta:	qui:nqua:ge:nsimus
60, sexa:ginta:	sexa:ge:nsimus
70, septua:ginta:	septua:ge:nsimus
80, octo:ginta:	octo:ge:nsimus
90, no:na:ginta:	no:na:ge:nsimus
100, centum	cente:nsimus
101, centum (et) u:nus, <i>etc.</i>	cente:nsimus (et) pri:mus, <i>etc.</i>
120, centum (et) vi:ginti:	cente:nsimus vi:ce:nsimus
121, centum (et) vi:ginti: u:nus, cente:nsimus (et) vi:ce:nsimus	
<i>etc.</i>	pri:mus, <i>etc.</i>
200, ducenti:, -ae, -a	ducente:nsimus
300, trecenti:	trecente:nsimus
400, quadringenti:	quadringente:nsimus
500, qui:ngenti:	qui:ngente:nsimus
600, sescenti:	sescente:nsimus
700, septingenti:	septingente:nsimus
800, octingenti:	octingente:nsimus
900, no:ngenti:	no:ngente:nsimus
1000, mi:lle	mi:lle:nsimus

# Page 181

<i>outer, exterior</i>	<i>outermost, last</i>	
<i>i:nferus, below</i>	<i>i:nferior, lower</i>	<i>i:nfimus, i:mus, lowest</i>
<i>posterus,</i>	<i>posterior, later</i>	<i>postre:mus, postumus,</i>
<i>following</i>	<i>last</i>	
<i>superus, above</i>	<i>superior,</i>	<i>supre:mus, summus,</i>
<i>higher</i>	<i>highest</i>	
<i>[[cis, citra:],]</i>	<i>citerior, hither</i>	<i>citimus, hithermost</i>
<i>[[on this side]]</i>		
<i>[[in, intra:],]</i>	<i>interior, inner</i>	<i>intimus, inmost</i>
<i>[[in, within]]</i>		
<i>[[prae, pro:],]</i>	<i>prior, former</i>	<i>pri:mus, first</i>
<i>[[before]]</i>		
<i>[[prope, near]]</i>	<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus, next</i>
<i>[[ultra:, beyond]]</i>	<i>ulterior, further</i>	<i>ultimus, furthest</i>



## Page 178

Dat.	deo:	domui:, -o:	vi: (rare)	itineri:
Acc.	deum	domum	vim	iter
Abl.	deo:	domo:, -u:	vi:	itinere

# Page 175

Abl. puero: agro: viro: -o: